EK-DHV11-TM-002

# DHV11
# Technical Manual

digital™

EK-DHV11-TM-002

# DHV11
# Technical Manual

Prepared by Educational Services
of
Digital Equipment Corporation

First Edition, September 1983
Second Edition, November 1985



The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Digital Equipment Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors herein.

Notice: This equipment generates, uses, and may emit radio frequency energy. The equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A computing device pursuant to Part 15 of FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such radio frequency interference when operated in a commercial environment. Operation of this equipment in a residential area may cause interference in which case the user at his own expense may be required to take measures to correct the interference.

Printed in U.S.A

The following are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

digital™

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| DEC | PDP | RT |
| DECmate | P/OS | UNIBUS |
| DECUS | Professional | VAX |
| DECwriter | Rainbow | VMS |
| DIBOL | RSTS | VT |
| MASSBUS | RSX | Work Processor |

# CONTENTS

## CHAPTER 4 TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

## CHAPTER 5 MAINTENANCE



## APPENDIX A IC DESCRIPTIONS

# FIGURES

## TABLES

# PREFACE

This document describes the installation requirements and servicing procedures for the DHV11 asynchronous multiplexer. It contains information for first-line service, field service support, and for customer engineers. A substantial programming chapter is included. Appendix C contains a glossary of terms used in this manual.

The manual is organized into five chapters plus appendices.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Chapter 1 | – | Introduction |
| Chapter 2 | – | Installation |
| Chapter 3 | – | Programming |
| Chapter 4 | – | Technical Description |
| Chapter 5 | – | Maintenance |
| Appendix A | – | Integrated Circuit Descriptions |
| Appendix B | – | Modem Control |
| Appendix C | – | Glossary of Terms |
| Appendix D | – | Automatic Flow Control |
| Appendix E | – | Installation Guide for the DHV11 Remote Distribution Panel Cabinet Kit |

The following is a list of related titles and document numbers.

| Document | Number |
|---|---|
| LSI-11 Microcomputer Interfaces Handbook | EB-20175-20 |
| LSI-11 Systems Service Manual | EK-LSIFS-SV |
| Communications Mini-Reference Guide | EK-CMINI-RM |
| Terminals and Communications Handbook | EB-20752-20 |
| Microcomputers and Memories | EB-20912-20 |
| DHV11 Print Set | MP01793 |
| DHV11 Maintenance Card | EK-DHV11-MC |

## ORDERING THIS MANUAL

### DIGITAL Personnel Ordering

Additional copies of this document and printed copies of the documents listed may be obtained from:

Digital Equipment Corporation
444 Whitney Street
Northboro, Massachusetts 01532
ATTN: Printing and Circulation Services (NR2/M15)
Customer Services Section

### Customer Ordering Information

Purchase orders for supplies and accessories should be sent to:

Digital Equipment Corporation
Accessories and Supplies Group
Cotton Road
Nashua, New Hampshire 03060

Contact your local sales office or call DIGITAL Direct Catalog Sales toll-free 800-258-1710 from 8.30 a.m. to 5.00 p.m. eastern standard time (US customers only). New Hampshire, Alaska, and Hawaii customers should dial (603)-884-6660. Terms and conditions include net 30 days and F.O.B. DIGITAL factory. Freight charges will be prepaid by DIGITAL and added to the invoice. Minimum order is $35,00. Minimum does not apply when full payment is sent in with an order. Checks and money orders should be made out to Digital Equipment Corporation.

### European Customers

European customers should order the manual from their local Accessories and Supplies Group (A and SG).

# CHAPTER 1
# INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 SCOPE

Chapter 1 provides general information and specifications. It describes how the module can be configured, and how it interfaces with the system bus and the serial data lines. Physical and functional descriptions are also included.

## 1.2 OVERVIEW

The DHV11 is an LSI-11/Q-bus option. All future references to the bus will be by the global term Q-bus. The specific terms Q16, Q18, or Q22 will be used where needed to identify versions with 16-, 18-, or 22-bit addresses.

### 1.2.1 General Description

The DHV11 option is an asynchronous multiplexer which provides eight full-duplex asynchronous serial data channels on Q-bus systems. The option can be used in many applications. These include data concentration, terminal interfacing, and cluster controlling.

The main features of the DHV11 are as follows:

- Eight full-duplex asynchronous data channels
- Direct Memory Access (DMA) or single-character programmed transfers on transmit
- Large 256-entry First-In-First-Out (FIFO) buffer for received characters, dataset status changes, and diagnostic information
- RS-423-A/V.10/X.26 and RS-232-C/V.28 compatible
- Full-duplex point-to-point or auto-answer dial-up operation
- Programmable split speed per line
- Total module throughput of 15000 characters per second
- Q16, Q18, and Q22 bus compatible
- Automatic flow control of transmitted and received data
- Self-test and background monitor diagnostics
- Programmable test facilities
- Single quad-height module (M3104)
- All functions are programmable, except for device address and vector selection which are done by hardware switches on the module.

Enough modem control is provided on all eight channels to allow auto-answer dial-up operation over the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN). Suitable modems to use this facility are the Bell models 103, 113, 212, or equivalent. The DHV11 can also be used for point-to-point operation over private lines. Modem control is implemented by software in the host.

The module provides DMA or single-character transfers from the host system to the serial lines. A 256-character FIFO buffer is provided for data received from the serial lines.

By using microcomputers (referred to as PROC 1 and PROC 2 in this manual), the DHV11 releases the host system from many of the data handling tasks.

One 8051 microcomputer controls DMA and single-character transmissions from the host system to the DHV11. A second 8051 controls four SC2681 Dual Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitters (DUARTs) which carry out the serial/parallel and parallel/serial conversion of data.

The DHV11 carries ROM-based diagnostics which are executed independently of the host. A full range of diagnostic programs is also available.

A green LED gives the GO/NO-GO status of the module. More detailed diagnostic information is also made available to the host system via the FIFO buffer. Loopback test connectors are available for use with the system-based diagnostics.

I/O addresses and interrupt vectors for the module are selected on two Dual-In-Line (DIL) switchpacks. All other DHV11 functions and configurations are programmable.

To prevent data loss at high throughput levels, the DHV11 can be programmed for automatic X-ON and X-OFF operation.

### 1.2.2 Physical Description

The option is based on a standard quad-height module (M3104). The layout of this module is shown in Figure 1-1. The dimensions are 21.6 cm x 26.5 cm (8.51 inches x 10.44 inches).

The module is connected to the Q-bus via connectors A and B. J1 and J2 are connected to the communications lines via BC05L-xx cables and H3173-A distribution panels.

On some backplanes, jumpers W1 (BIAK) and W2 (BDMG) extend the bus grant signals to the next module slot via connectors C and D.

DIL switchpacks E58 and E43 select the device address and vector address of the module.

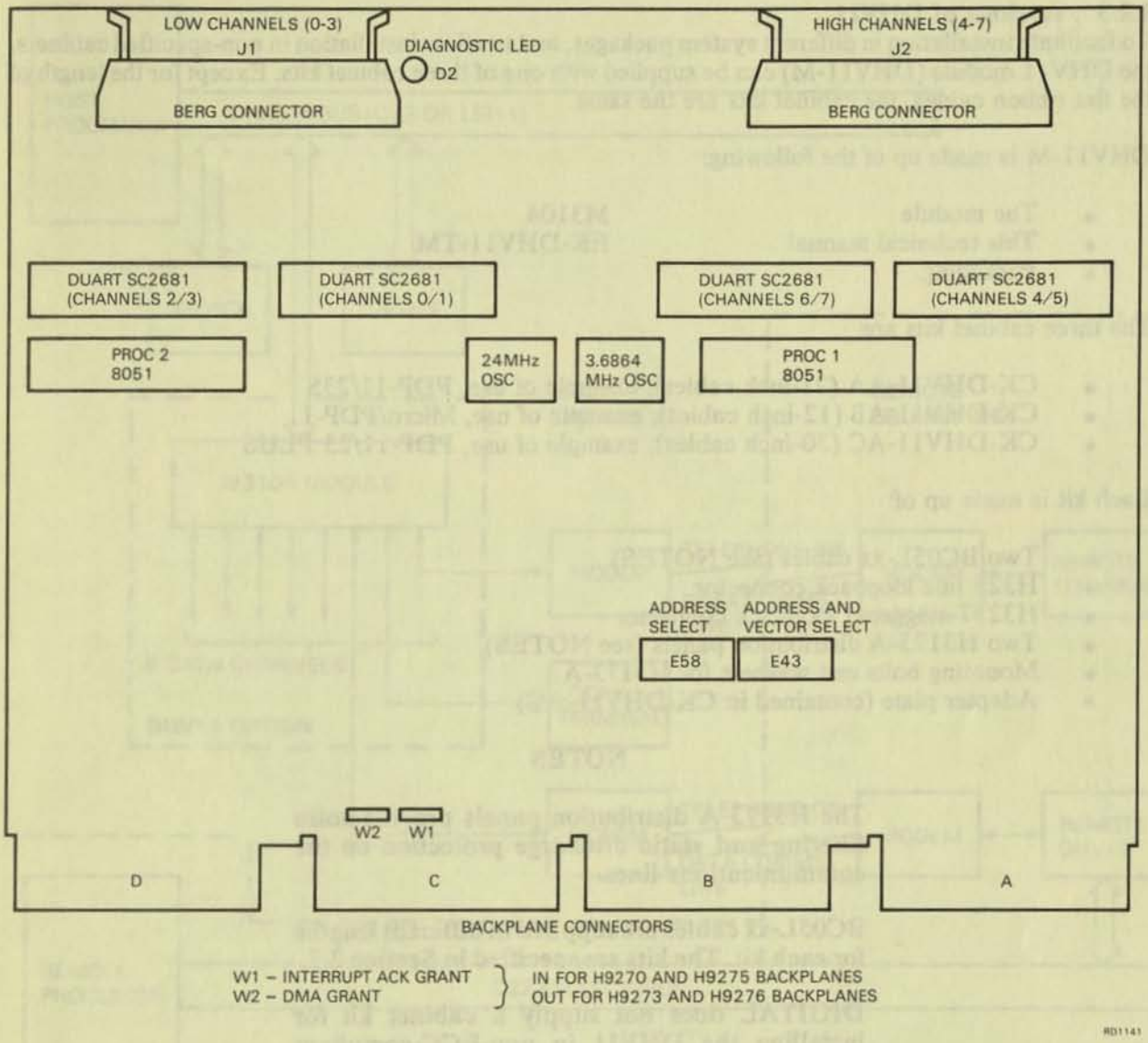



Figure 1-1 M3104 Module

### 1.2.3 Versions of DHV11

To facilitate installation in different system packages, and to allow installation in non-specified cabinets, the DHV11 module (DHV11-M) can be supplied with one of three cabinet kits. Except for the length of the flat ribbon cables, the cabinet kits are the same.

DHV11-M is made up of the following:

- The module — M3104
- This technical manual — EK-DHV11-TM
- Packaging.

The three cabinet kits are:

- CK-DHV11-AA (21-inch cables); example of use, PDP-11/23S
- CK-DHV11-AB (12-inch cables); example of use, Micro/PDP-11
- CK-DHV11-AC (30-inch cables); example of use, PDP-11/23 PLUS

Each kit is made up of:

- Two BC05L-xx cables (see NOTES)
- H325 line loopback connector
- H3277 staggered loopback connector
- Two H3173-A distribution panels (see NOTES)
- Mounting bolts and washers for H3173-A.
- Adapter plate (contained in CK-DHV11-AC)

**NOTES**

**The H3173-A distribution panels provide noise filtering and static discharge protection on the communications lines.**

**BC05L-xx cables are supplied in different lengths for each kit. The kits are specified in Section 2.2.**

**DIGITAL does not supply a cabinet kit for installing the DHV11 in non-FCC-compliant cabinets.**

The hardware is connected as in Section 1.2.5.

### 1.2.4 Configurations

Figure 1-2 shows some possible DHV11 configurations. The position of the module on the bus (backplane) determines its DMA and interrupt priorities. A guide to positioning is given in Section 2.4. Any or all of the data channels can be connected to a terminal or to a data communications line.

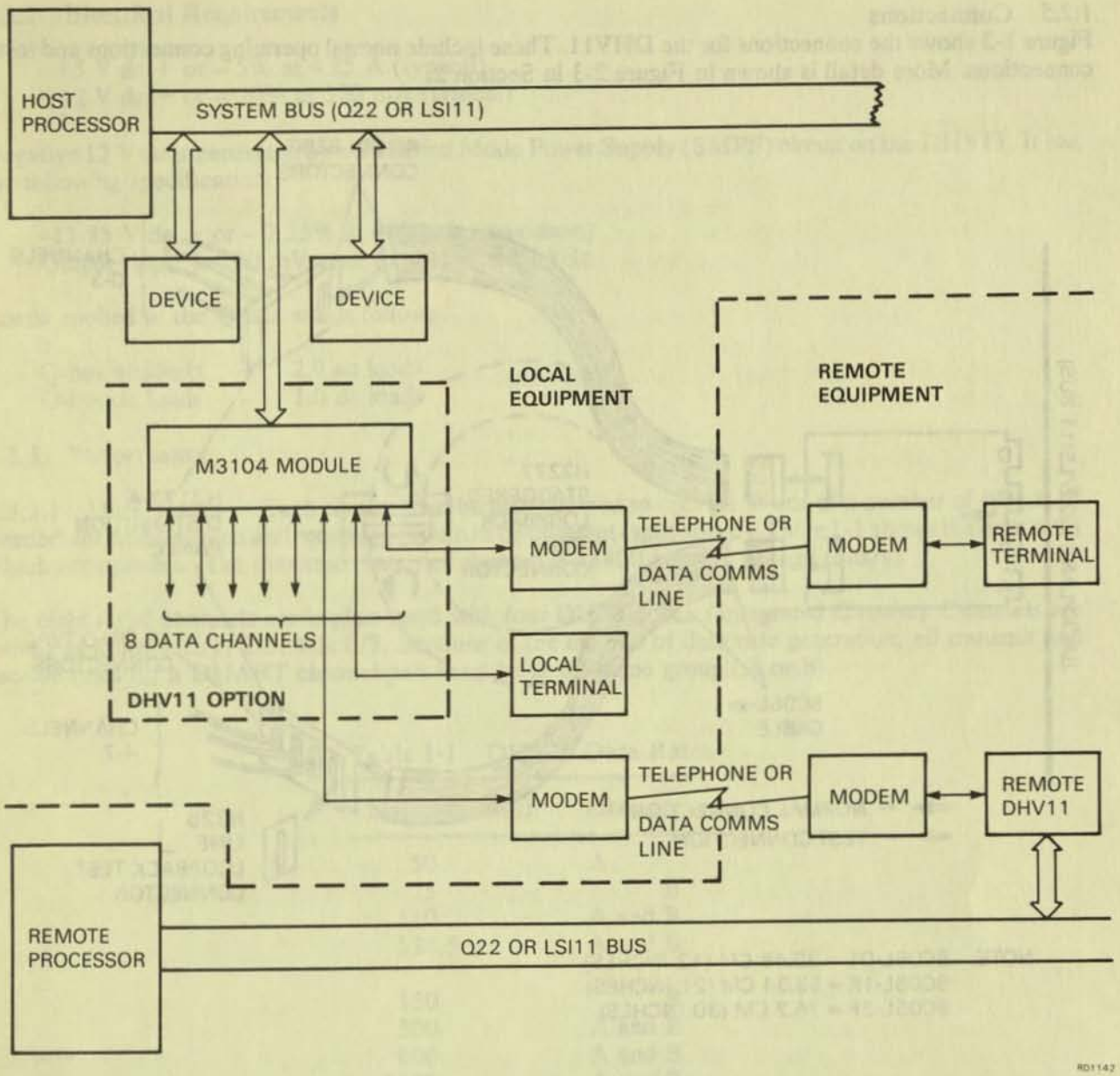
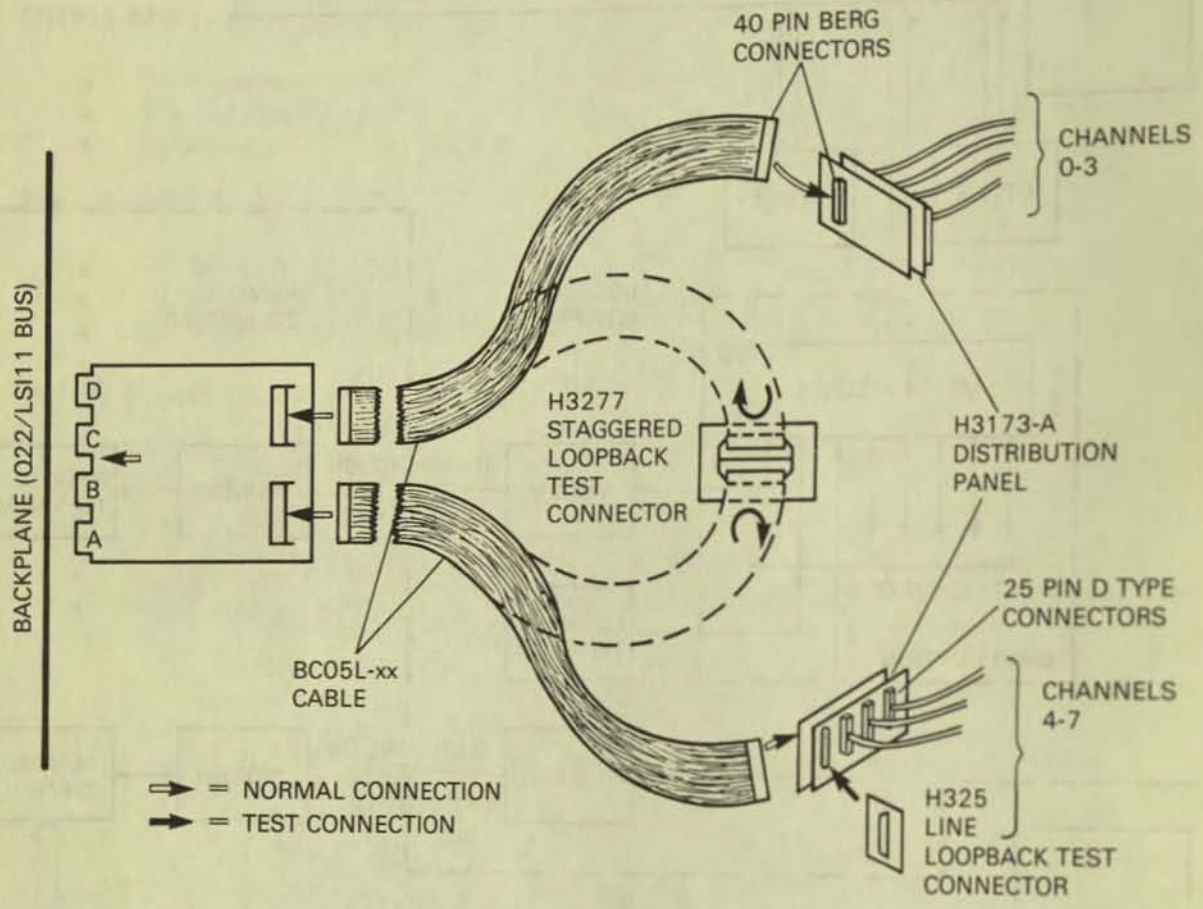



Figure 1-2 Example of DHV11 Configuration

### 1.2.5 Connections

Figure 1-3 shows the connections for the DHV11. These include normal operating connections and test connections. More detail is shown in Figure 2-3 in Section 2.




NOTE: BC05L-01 = 30.48 CM (12 INCHES)
BC05L-1K = 53.34 CM (21 INCHES)
BC05L-2F = 76.2 CM (30 INCHES)

Figure 1-3 DHV11 Connections

## 1.3 SPECIFICATION

### 1.3.1 Environment Conditions

- Storage temperature: 0°C to 66°C (32°F to 151°F)
- Operating temperature: 5°C to 60°C (41°F to 140°F)
- Relative humidity: 10% to 95% non-condensing

### 1.3.2 Electrical Requirements

+5 V dc + or – 5% at 4.25 A (typical)
+12 V dc + or – 20% at 520 mA (typical)

Negative 12 V dc is generated by a Switched Mode Power Supply (SMPS) circuit on the DHV11. It has the following specification:

–11.85 V dc + or – 7.25% at 400 mA (maximum)
Output ripple is 200 mV peak to peak at 36.7 kHz

Loads applied to the Q-bus are as follows:

Q-bus ac loads – 2.9 ac loads
Q-bus dc loads – 1.0 dc loads

### 1.3.3 Performance

1.3.3.1 Data Rates – Each channel can be programmed to operate at one of a number of speeds. If needed, the transmission and reception rates can be different (split speed). Table 1-1 shows the data rates which are possible. The maximum rate per channel is 38400 bits per second (bits/s).

The eight serial channels are implemented with four DUART ICs (Integrated Circuits). Channels are paired as follows: 0/1, 2/3, 4/5, 6/7. Because of the method of data rate generation, all transmit and receive rates for a DUART channel-pair must be in the same group (A or B).

Table 1-1 DHV11 Data Rates

| Speed (Bits/s) | Groups |
|---|---|
| 50 | A |
| 75 | B |
| 110 | A and B |
| 134.5 | A and B |
| 150 | B |
| 300 | A and B |
| 600 | A and B |
| 1200 | A and B |
| 1800 | B |
| 2000 | B |
| 2400 | A and B |
| 4800 | A and B |
| 7200 | A |
| 9600 | A and B |
| 19200 | B |
| 38400 | A |

Data rate selection is covered in Chapter 3 (Programming).

| Circuit No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 118 | Transmitted backward channel data |
| 120 | Transmit backward channel line signal |
| 119 | Received backward channel data |
| 121 | Backward channel ready |
| 122 | Backward channel received line signal detector |

1.4.2.2 **Serial Data Format** – Serial characters are made up of a coded sequence of bits which are enclosed between a start and a stop signal. The start signal is always 1 bit long but the stop signal is programmable to 1, 1.5, or 2 bits. The duration of a bit is dependent on the selected data rate.

Character codes may be 5, 6, 7, or 8 bits long, optionally followed by a parity bit. Parity can be programmed as even, odd, or no parity.

On serial data channels controlled via the DHV11, the data line is held marking when inactive. Transfer of each character begins with a start bit (space) and ends with one or more stop bits (mark).

Figure 1-4 shows the reception of an 8-bit character with parity. The Least-Significant Bit (LSB) of the character code is transmitted first. If another character is not ready for transmission, the line will stay marking. The figure shows 1, 1.5, and 2 stop bits.

**NOTE**

**This description applies to signals at the DUART pins. Signals measured on the interchange circuits will have the opposite polarity to those shown.**

The data rate clock which times the serial data, is 16 times the programmed data rate. Arrows show when the bits are tested for polarity.

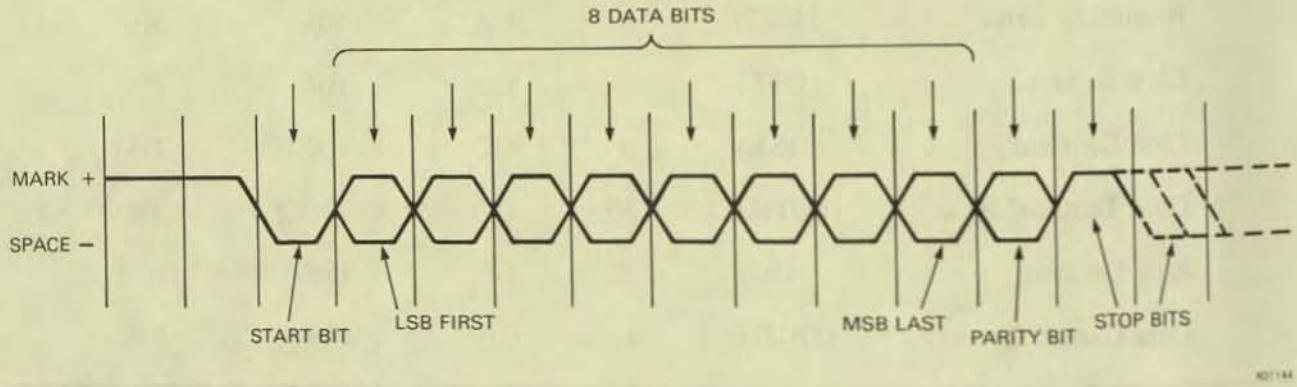



Figure 1-4 Serial Character Format

The DHV11 allows the following serial character formats:

- Characters of 5, 6, 7, or 8 bits with or without parity and with 1 stop bit
- Characters of 6, 7, or 8 bits with or without parity and with 2 stop bits
- Characters of 5 bits with or without parity and with 1.5 stop bits.

1.4.2.3 **Line Receivers** – The serial line receivers used in this module are 9637AC or equivalent. They convert the EIA input signals to TTL levels suitable for the DUARTs.

Signals are inverted by the receivers.

1.4.2.4 **Line Transmitters** – The serial line transmitters used in this module are 9636AC or equivalent. They convert TTL level signals from the DUARTs to EIA levels on the data lines.

Signals are inverted by the transmitters.

1.4.2.5 **Speed/Distance Considerations** – The maximum data rate which can be used on a line depends upon a number of factors. These are:

1. The characteristics of the line transmitters and receivers
2. The characteristics of the serial cable (or link)
3. The length of the cable
4. Noise (interference) which affects the line.

A 'speed against distance' table for typical conditions is provided in Section 2.6.6.

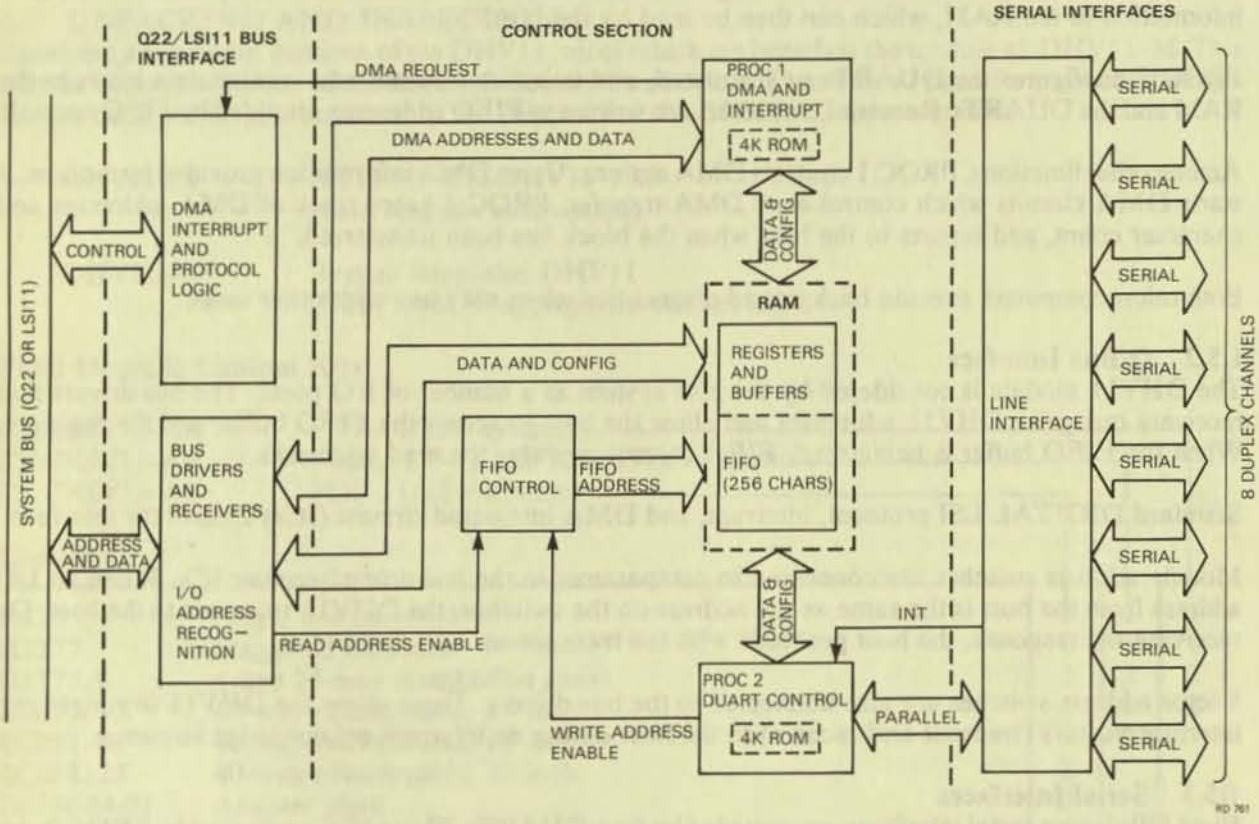



Figure 1-5 DHV11 Functional Block

## 1.5 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

### 1.5.1 Control Function

In the DHV11 module (Figure 1-5), data is transferred by three methods:

1. By DMA. Blocks of data are transferred from system memory to the serial interface. DMA data is routed via the bus receivers, PROC1, the RAM, and PROC2.

2. In the non-DMA mode, single characters can be transferred from the host system to the serial interface. The route for single characters is via the bus receivers, the RAM, PROC1, the RAM, and PROC2.

3. Single characters can be transferred from the serial interface to the host system. The route for received characters is via PROC2, the FIFO buffer, and the bus drivers.

At the center of the control section is a 1K-word RAM. By writing control words to registers in the RAM, the host can indirectly configure and command the module. The host can also write data bytes to registers in the RAM.

Two microcomputers (PROC 1 and PROC 2), which contain their own programs in internal ROM, scan the RAM in order to detect a new configuration, or data to be transferred. They also write status information to the RAM, which can then be read by the host.

PROC 2 configures the DUARTs as instructed, and transfers transmit and receive data between the RAM and the DUARTs. Received characters are written to FIFO addresses provided by FIFO control.

Among other functions, PROC 1 controls DMA actions. Using DMA information provided by the host, it starts DMA circuits which control each DMA transfer. PROC 1 keeps track of DMA addresses and character count, and reports to the host when the block has been transferred.

Both microcomputers execute background diagnostics when not busy with other tasks.

### 1.5.2 Q-Bus Interface

The DHV11 module is considered by the host system as a number of I/O ports. The bus drivers and receivers recognize DHV11 addresses and allow the host to access the FIFO buffer and the registers. When the FIFO buffer is being read, FIFO control provides the read addresses.

Standard DIGITAL LSI protocol, interrupt, and DMA integrated circuits (ICs) control the interface.

Module address switches are connected to comparators in the bus driver/receiver ICs. When an I/O address from the host is the same as the address on the switches, the DHV11 responds to the host. On receiving the response, the host proceeds with the transaction.

Vector address switches are also connected to the bus drivers. These allow the DHV11 to supply two interrupt vectors (transmit and receive) to the host during an interrupt acknowledge sequence.

### 1.5.3 Serial Interfaces

Eight full-duplex serial interfaces are provided by four DUARTs. These ICs, controlled by PROC 2, are configured as needed by the host system. They carry out the serial/parallel and parallel/serial conversion. When a received character is assembled PROC 2 is interrupted.

The status of modem control lines for each channel is polled by PROC 2. If programmed to do so, the DHV11 will report changes of modem status to the host. Such reports are made via the FIFO buffer and the device registers.

# CHAPTER 2
# INSTALLATION

## 2.1 SCOPE

This chapter contains information on how to prepare and install the DHV11 option. It contains sections on the following:

- Device and vector address selection
- Rules for backplane positioning
- Recommended cables
- Test connectors
- Floating address and vector assignment
- Testing after installation.

## 2.2 UNPACKING AND INSPECTION

There are a number of versions of the DHV11, all of which are based on the module kit DHV11-M. This may be ordered with one of the three cabinet kits listed below. Examine all parts for physical damage. Report damaged or missing items to the shipper and the DIGITAL representative.

| | |
|---|---|
| DHV11-M | M3104 + EK-DHV11-TM<br>(field upgrade base option) |
| DHV11-AP | System integrated DHV11<br>(DHV11-M + appropriate cabinet kit) |

**Field Upgrade Cabinet Kits**

| | |
|---|---|
| CK-DHV11-AA | PDP-11/23S systems |
| CK-DHV11-AB | MicroPDP-11 and MicroVAX systems |
| CK-DHV11-AC | PDP-11/23+ systems |

**Contents**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| H325 | Single line loopback | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| H3277 | Staggered loopback | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| H3173A | 4-line 25-way distribution panel | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| BC05L-1K | 40-way ribbon cable, 21 inch | | | 2 |
| BC05L-01 | 40-way ribbon cable, 12 inch | | 2 | |
| BC05L-2F | 40-way ribbon cable, 30 inch | 2 | | |
| 74-28684-01 | Adapter plate | 2 | | |
| 90-06021-01 | Bolt | 8 | 8 | 8 |
| 90-06633-00 | Washer | 8 | 8 | 8 |

## 2.3 INSTALLATION CHECKS

### 2.3.1 Address Switches

The device address for the DHV11 is set on switchpacks E58 and E43. The location of these switchpacks is shown in Figure 2-1. Figure 2-2 shows the method of setting the device address on the switchpacks. The example shown is for a Q22-bus address of $17760440_8$.

From the information contained in Figure 2-2 it can be seen that switches 5 and 8 on switchpack E58 must be set to ON for the example shown.

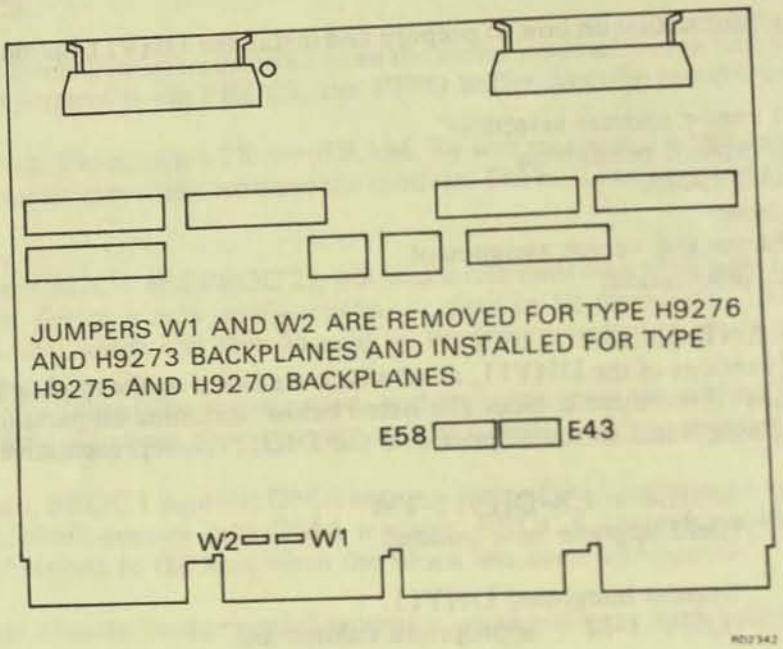



Figure 2-1 Location of Switchpacks

Use the following method to set the device address.

1. Define the octal address. This may or may not be the factory default, and will depend upon what other devices are contained within this system configuration. Refer to Table 2-4 for information on floating device address assignments.

2. Convert the octal address to a binary bit pattern. You can write this pattern on Figure 2-2, in the blank character line left for this purpose.

3. Relate the binary address to the switches on the switchpacks, and set switches to ON where they relate to binary 1.

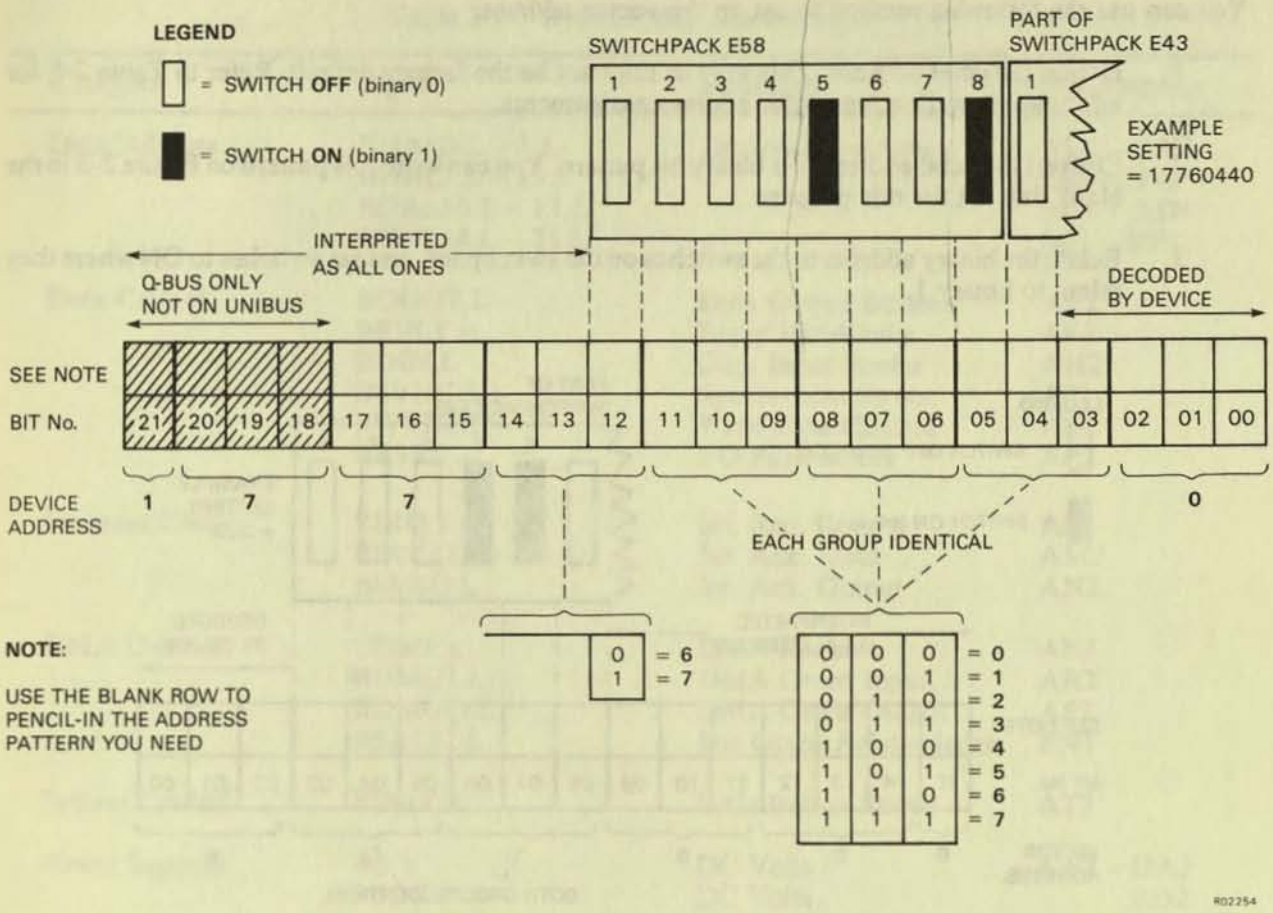



Figure 2-2 Setting the Device Address

### 2.3.2 Vector Switches

During an interrupt acknowledge sequence, the DHV11 returns a 7-bit interrupt vector to the host. The six high-order bits of this vector are derived from the settings of the last six switches of switchpack E43. The location of this switchpack is shown in Figure 2-1. Figure 2-3 provides an example of these switches set to an address of $300_8$. From the information in Figure 2-3 it can be seen that switches 4 and 5 must be set to ON for the example shown.

You can use the following method to set up the vector address.

1. Define the octal address. This may or may not be the factory default. Refer to Table 2-5 for information on floating vector address assignments.

2. Convert the octal address to a binary bit pattern. You can write this pattern on Figure 2-3 in the blank line left for this purpose.

3. Relate the binary address to the switches on the switchpack, and set switches to ON where they relate to binary 1.

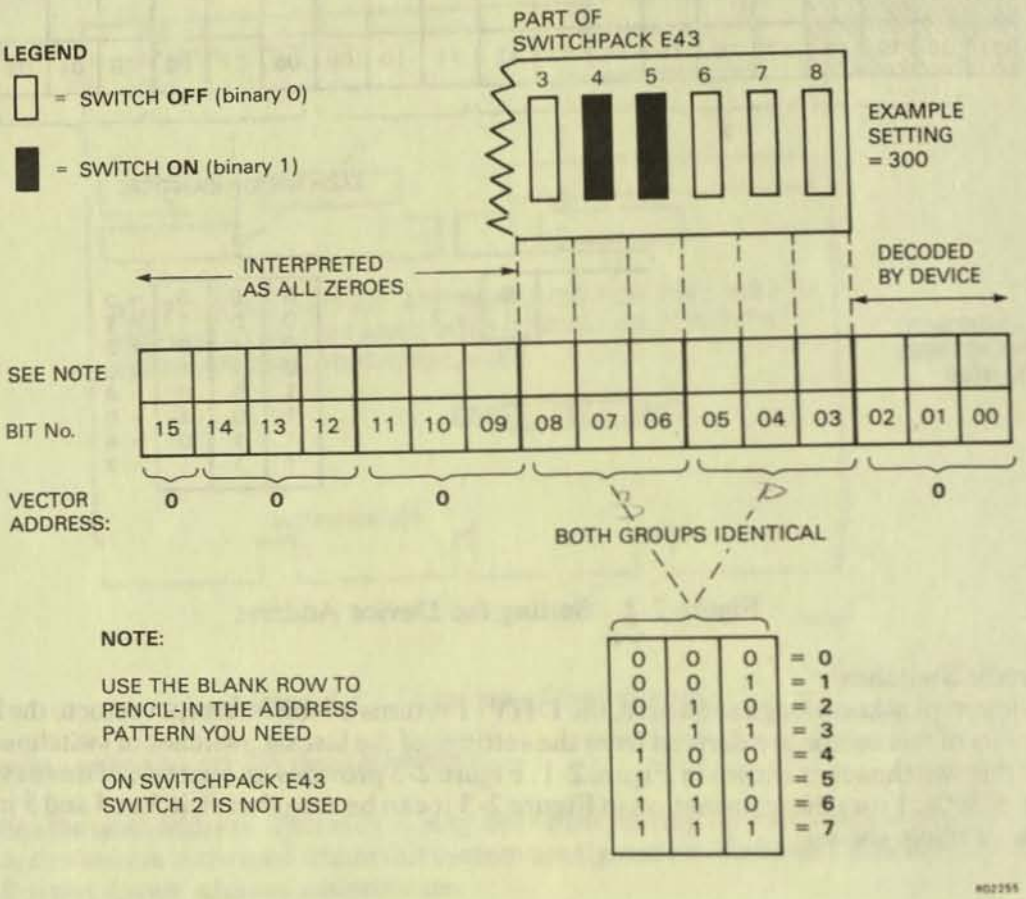



Figure 2-3 Setting the Vector Address

### 2.3.3 Backplane

**2.3.3.1 Connection to the Q Bus** – The DHV11 interfaces with the system via the Q-bus. The physical connection is made via the A, B, C, and D edge connectors on the module.

Bus signals, their categories, functions, and pin designation are listed in Table 2-1.

Table 2-1 DHV11 Bus Connections

| Category | Signal | Function | Pin Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Data/Address | BDAL0.L – 1.L | Data/Address Lines | AU2 – AV2 |
| | BDAL1.L – 15.L | | BE2 – BV2 |
| | BDAL16.L – 17.L | | AC1 – AD1 |
| | BDAL18.L – 21.L | | BC1 – BF1 |
| Data Control | BDOUT.L | Data Output Strobe | AE2 |
| | BRPLY.L | Reply Handshake | AF2 |
| | BDIN.L | Data Input Strobe | AH2 |
| | BSYNC.L | Synchronize Strobe | AJ2 |
| | BWTBT.L | Write Byte Control | AK2 |
| | BBS7.L | I/O Page Select | AP2 |
| Interrupt Control | BIRQ.L | Int. Req. Level 4 | AL2 |
| | BIAKI.L | Int. Ack. Input | AM2 |
| | BIAKO.L | Int. Ack. Output | AN2 |
| DMA Control | BDMR.L | DMA Request | AN1 |
| | BDMGI.L | DMA Grant Input | AR2 |
| | BDMGO.L | DMA Grant Output | AS2 |
| | BSACK.L | Bus Grant Acknowledge | BN1 |
| System Control | BINIT.L | Initialization Strobe | AT2 |
| Power Supplies | +5 V | DC Volts | AA2 – DA2 |
| | +12 V | DC Volts | BD2 |
| Grounds | GND | Ground Connections | AC2 – DC2 |
| | GND | Ground Connections | AT1 – DT1 |
| | GND | Ground Connections | AJ1 – BJ1 |
| | GND | Ground Connections | AM1 – BM1 |

2.3.3.2 Bus Grant Continuity Jumpers – Backplanes suitable for DHV11 fall into two groups:

Q/CD – Q-bus on A and B connectors, user-defined signals on C and D
Q/Q – Q-bus on A and B, and C and D connectors.

In Q/CD backplanes, bus grant signals pass through each installed module via the A and B connectors of each bus slot.

Q/Q backplanes are designed so that two dual-height options can be installed in a quad-height bus slot. The Q-bus lines are routed as follows:

AB, first slot
CD, first slot
CD, second slot
AB, second slot and so on.

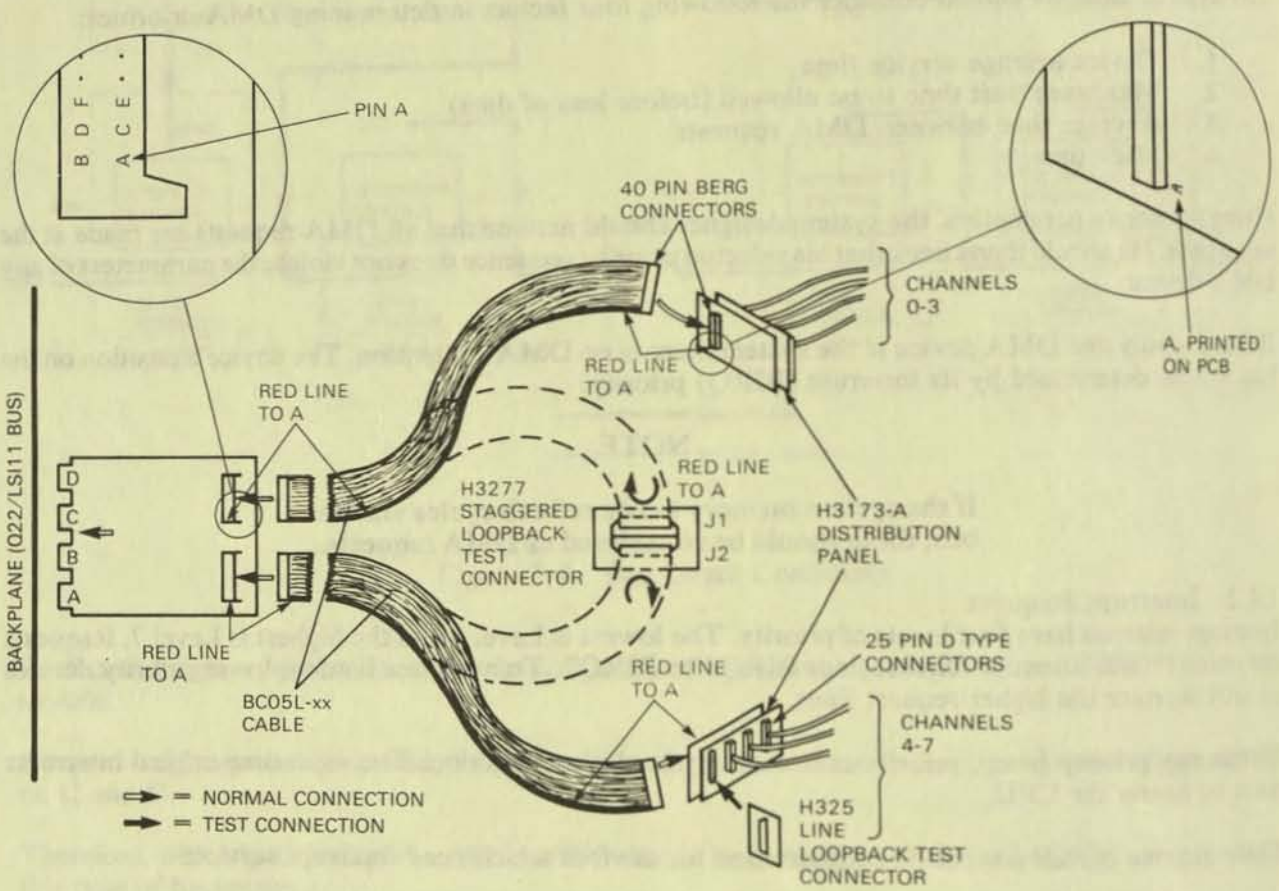
By assuming that all interrupts are raised at the same time, the system designer can check his priority sequence as for DMA requests.

## 2.5 MODULE INSTALLATION

Once the backplane position of the DHV11 has been defined, the module can be installed and the backplane checked with a testmeter.

### CAUTION

**Switch off power before inserting or removing modules. Be careful not to snag module components on the card guides or adjacent modules.**




NOTE: BC05L-01 = 30.48 CM (12 INCHES)
BC05L-1K = 53.34 CM (21 INCHES)
BC05L-2F = 76.2 CM (30 INCHES)

Figure 2-5 DHV11 Installation

1. Connect the BC05L cables to J1 and J2. Figure 2-5 shows how the parts of the option connect together.

2. Install the module in its correct backplane position as defined in Section 2.4.

3. Check that +5 V is present between AA2 and ground.

4. Check that +12 V is present between BD2 and ground.

## 2.6 CABLES AND CONNECTORS

### 2.6.1 Distribution Panel

Each H3173-A distribution panel adapts one of the DHV11's berg connectors to four subminiature D-type RS-232-C connectors. Noise filtering is provided on each pin of the RS-232-C connectors. This reduces electromagnetic radiation from the cables. It also provides the logic with some protection against static discharge.

Figure 2-6 shows the layout and Figure 2-7 shows the circuit. There is no CCITT equivalent of EIA circuit AA (protective ground). The 0-ohm link W1 can be removed to disconnect this circuit as needed.

Table 2-2 is for two distribution panels. Information in parentheses applies to channels 4 to 7.

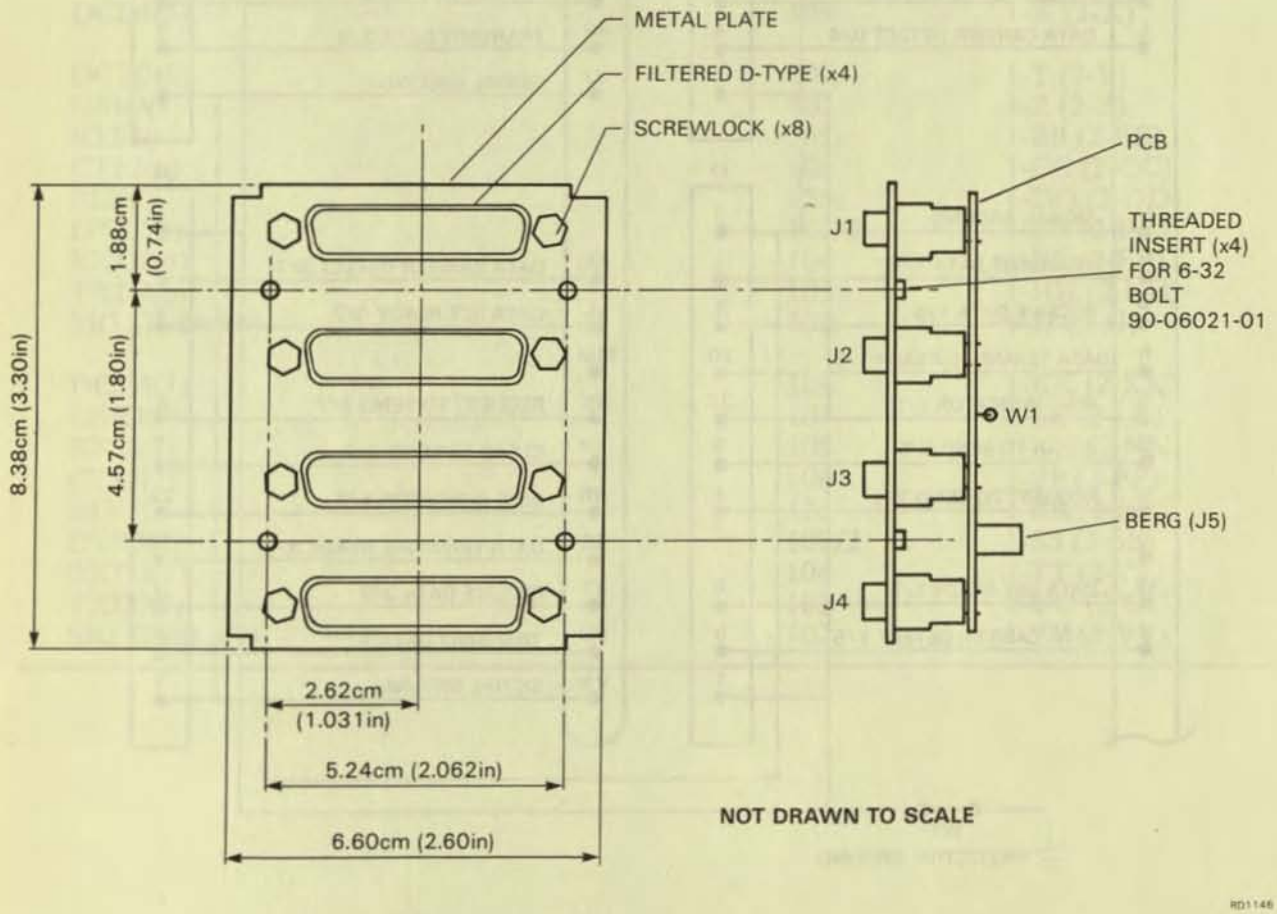



Figure 2-6 H3173-A Layout

The following is an example of the use of Table 2-2.

Signal TXD0 is the Transmitted Data line for channel 0. Its CCITT circuit number is 103. It is connected to J5 pin B on the H3173-A for channels 0 to 3.

Signal TXD4 is the Transmitted Data line for channel 4. Its CCITT circuit number is 103. It is connected to J5 pin B on the H3173-A for channels 4 to 7.

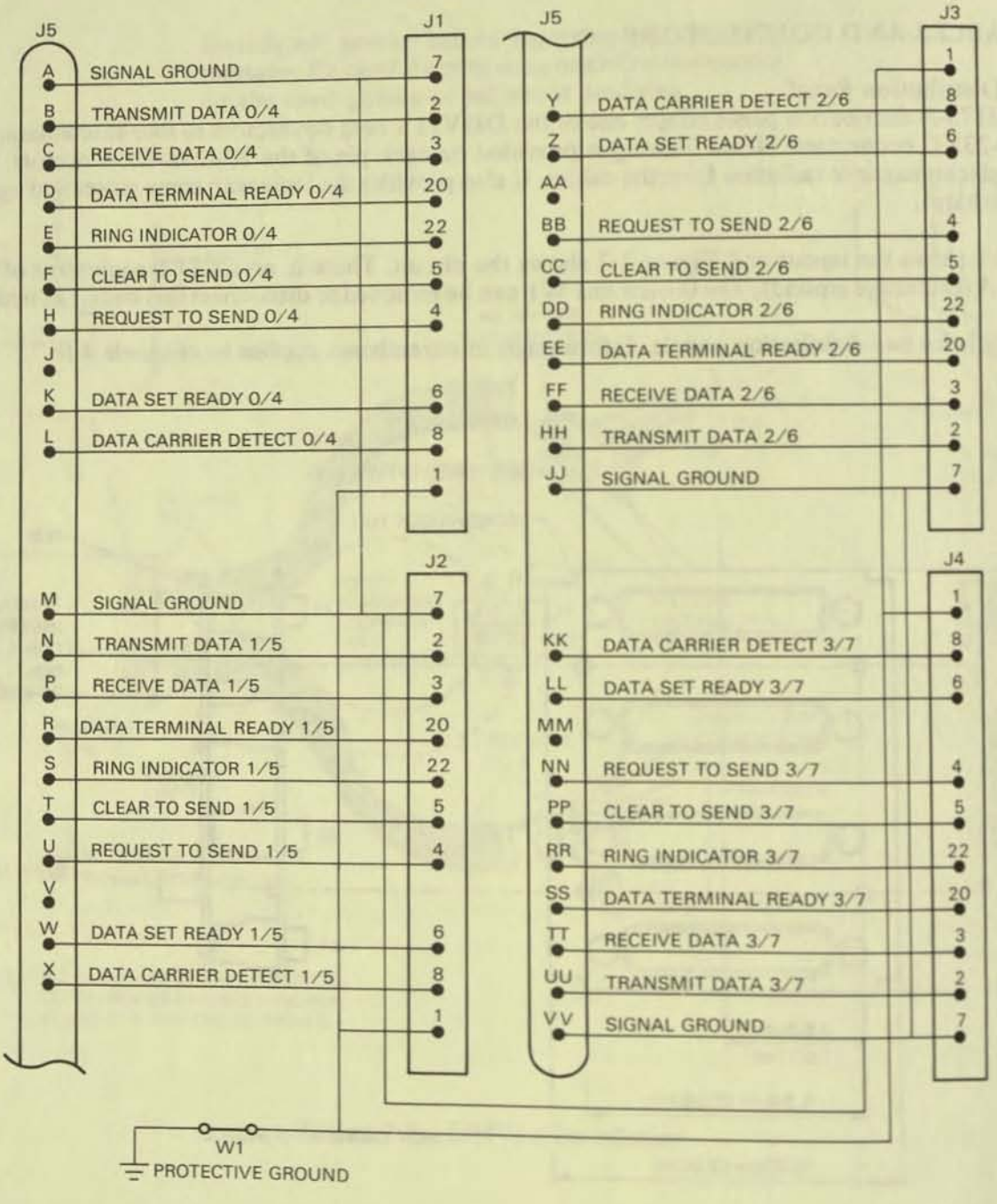



Figure 2-7 H3173-A Circuit Diagram

Table 2-2 H3173-A Connections

| Signal | Name | Circuit No. | J5 Pin No. |
|---|---|---|---|
| SIG GND 0(4) | | 102 | 1-A (2-A) |
| TXD0(4) | Transmitted Data | 103 | 1-B (2-B) |
| RXD0(4) | Received Data | 104 | 1-C (2-C) |
| DTR0(4) | Data Terminal Ready | 108/2 | 1-D (2-D) |
| RI0(4) | Ringing Indicator | 125 | 1-E (2-E) |
| CTS0(4) | Clear to Send | 106 | 1-F (2-F) |
| RTS0(4) | Request to Send | 105 | 1-H (2-H) |
| DSR0(4) | Data Set Ready | 107 | 1-K (2-K) |
| DCD0(4) | Data Carrier Detected | 109 | 1-L (2-L) |
| SIGGND 1(5) | | 102 | 1-M (2-M) |
| TXD1(5) | | 103 | 1-N (2-N) |
| RXD1(5) | | 104 | 1-P (2-P) |
| DTR1(5) | | 108/2 | 1-R (2-R) |
| RI1(5) | | 125 | 1-S (2-S) |
| CTS1(5) | | 106 | 1-T (2-T) |
| RTS1(5) | | 105 | 1-U (2-U) |
| DSR1(5) | | 107 | 1-W (2-W) |
| DCD1(5) | | 109 | 1-X (2-X) |
| DCD2(6) | | 109 | 1-Y (2-Y) |
| DSR2(6) | | 107 | 1-Z (2-Z) |
| RTS2(6) | | 105 | 1-BB (2-BB) |
| CTS2(6) | | 106 | 1-CC (2-CC) |
| RI2(6) | | 125 | 1-DD (2-DD) |
| DTR2(6) | | 108/2 | 1-EE (2-EE) |
| RXD2(6) | | 104 | 1-FF (2-FF) |
| TXD2(6) | | 103 | 1-HH (2-HH) |
| SIG GND 2(6) | | 102 | 1-JJ (2-JJ) |
| DCD3(7) | | 109 | 1-KK (2-KK) |
| DSR3(7) | | 107 | 1-LL (2-LL) |
| RTS3(7) | | 105 | 1-NN (2-NN) |
| CTS3(7) | | 106 | 1-PP (2-PP) |
| RI3(7) | | 125 | 1-RR (2-RR) |
| DTR3(7) | | 108/2 | 1-SS (2-SS) |
| RXD3(7) | | 104 | 1-TT (2-TT) |
| TXD3(7) | | 103 | 1-UU (2-UU) |
| SIG GND 3(7) | | 102 | 1-VV (2-VV) |

### 2.6.2 Staggered Loopback Test Connector H3277

(See Figure 2-8.) The H3277 test connector is used during diagnostic tests. It allows all channels to be tested. Using this connector, you can trace a channel fault to one of two channels.

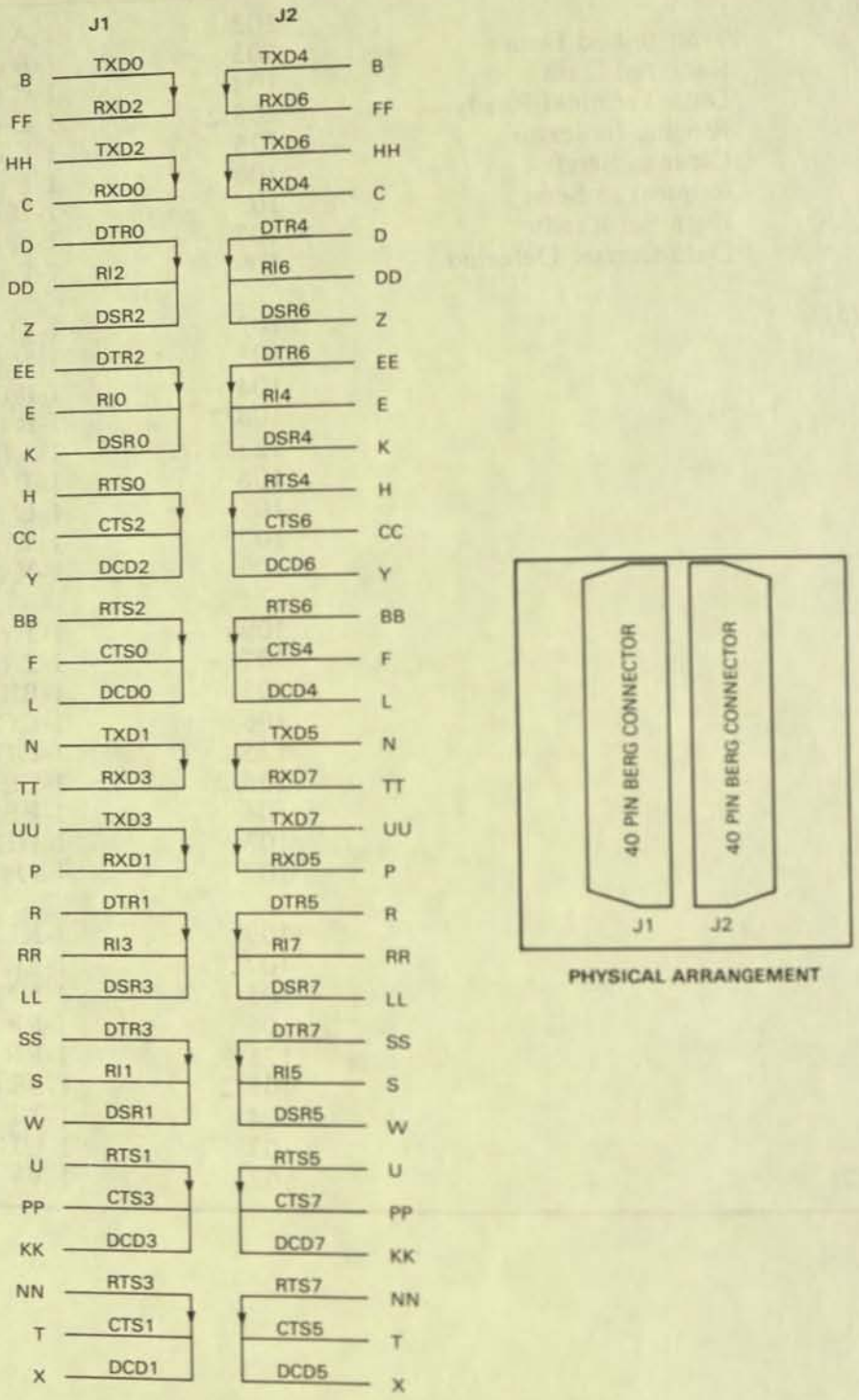



Figure 2-8 Staggered Loopback Test Connector

### 2.6.3 Line Loopback Test Connector H325

This connector is shown in Figure 2-9. It can be used during diagnostic tests to trace a fault to a single channel.

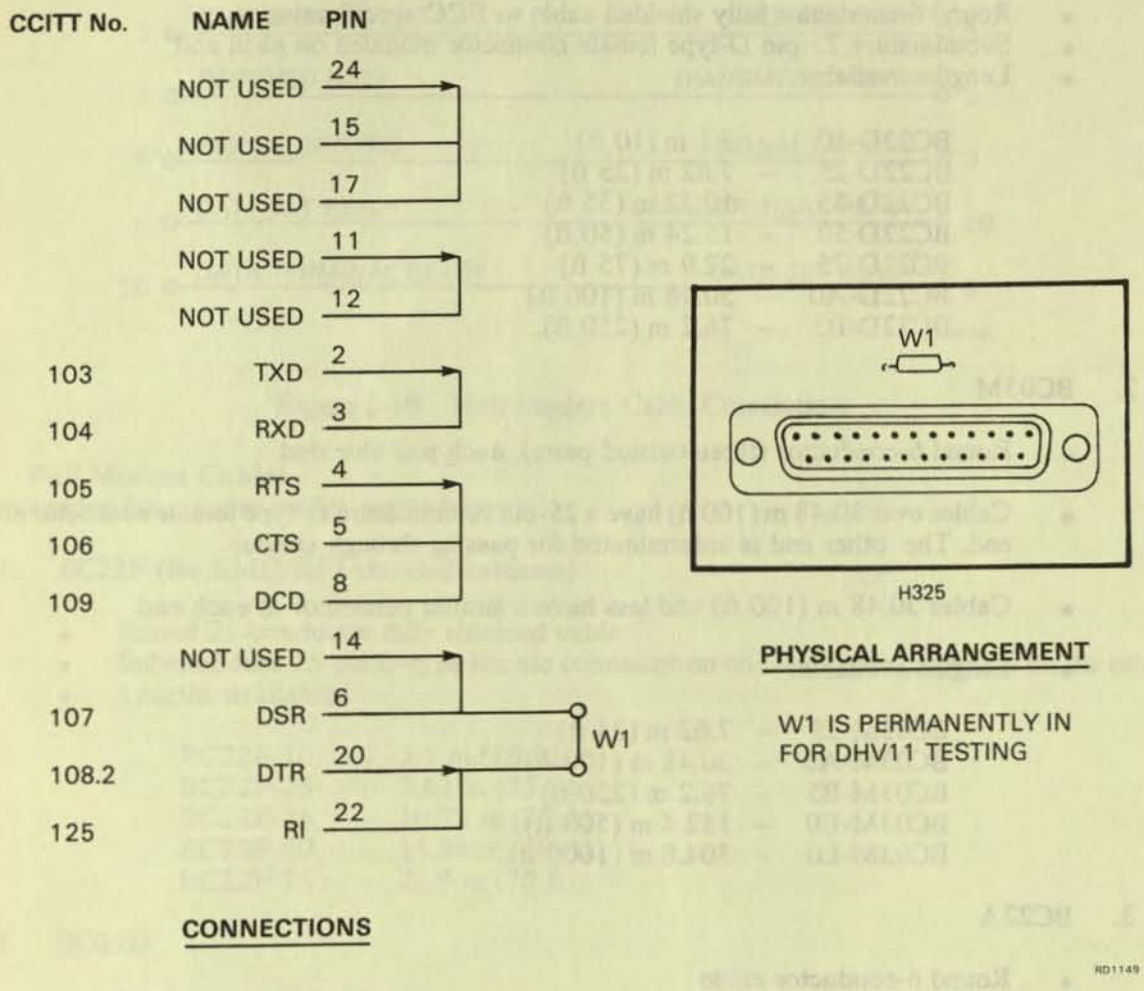



Figure 2-9 Line Loopback Test Connector

### 2.6.4 Null Modem Cables

Null modem cables are used for local RS-232-C connection. Because of Federal Communications Commission (FCC) regulations, the cable specifications for the United States and Canada are different from those for non-FCC countries. Other countries may also have similar ElectroMagnetic Interference (EMI) control regulations. EMC/RFI shielded cabinets (see glossary) are now available for systems which conform to FCC requirements.

Recommended null modem cables are as follows:

1. BC22D (for EMC/RFI shielded cabinets)

   - Round 6-conductor fully shielded cable to FCC specification
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector moulded on each end
   - Lengths available:

     BC22D-10 – 3.1 m (10 ft)
     BC22D-25 – 7.62 m (25 ft)
     BC22D-35 – 10.72 m (35 ft)
     BC22D-50 – 15.24 m (50 ft)
     BC22D-75 – 22.9 m (75 ft)
     BC22D-A0 – 30.48 m (100 ft)
     BC22D-B5 – 76.2 m (250 ft).

2. BC03M

   - Round 6-conductor (three twisted pairs), each pair shielded
   - Cables over 30.48 m (100 ft) have a 25-pin subminiature D-type female connector at one end. The other end is unterminated for passing through conduit.
   - Cables 30.48 m (100 ft) and less have a similar connector at each end.
   - Lengths available:

     BC03M-25 – 7.62 m (25 ft)
     BC03M-A0 – 30.48 m (100 ft)
     BC03M-B5 – 76.2 m (250 ft)
     BC03M-E0 – 152.4 m (500 ft)
     BC03M-L0 – 304.8 m (1000 ft).

3. BC22A

   - Round 6-conductor cable
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector moulded at each end
   - Lengths available:

     BC22A-10 – 3.1 m (10 ft)
     BC22A-25 – 7.62 m (25 ft).

Cables of groups 1, 2, and 3 are all connected as in Figure 2-10. The cables are not polarized and can therefore be connected either way.

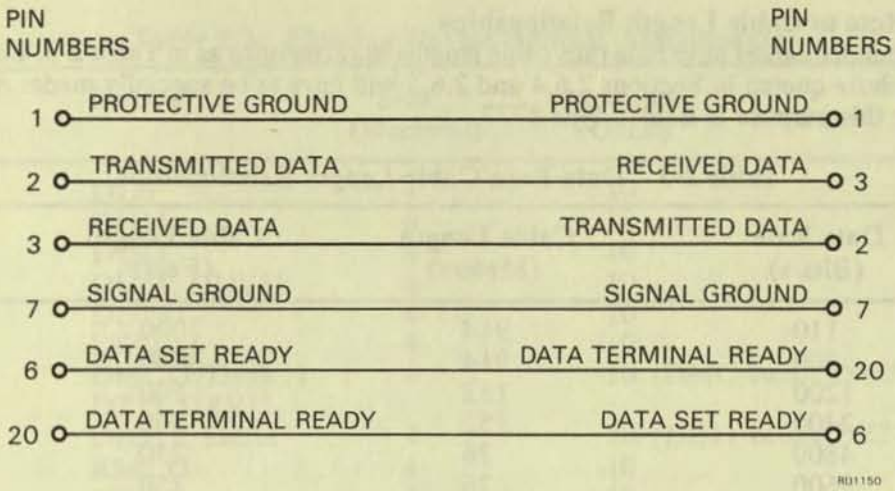



Figure 2-10 Null Modem Cable Connections

### 2.6.5 Full Modem Cables

Recommended full modem cables are as follows:

1. BC22F (for EMC/RFI shielded cabinets)

   - Round 25-conductor fully shielded cable
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector on one end, male connector on the other
   - Lengths available:

     BC22F-10 – 3.1 m (10 ft)
     BC22F-25 – 7.62 m (25 ft)
     BC22F-35 – 10.72 m (35 ft)
     BC22F-50 – 15.24 m (50 ft)
     BC22F-75 – 22.9 m (75 ft)

2. BC05D

   - Round 25-conductor cable
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector on one end, male connector on the other
   - Lengths available:

     BC05D-10 – 3.1 m (10 ft)
     BC05D-25 – 7.62 m (25 ft)
     BC05D-50 – 15.24 m (50 ft)
     BC05D-60 – 18.6 m (60 ft)
     BC05D-A0 – 30.48 m (100 ft).

**CAUTION**

**In some countries, protective hardware may be needed when connecting to certain lines. Refer to the national regulations before making a connection.**

### 2.6.6 Data Rate to Cable Length Relationships

All the recommended cables have data rate/cable length characteristics as in Table 2-3. Cables of lengths different from those quoted in Sections 2.6.4 and 2.6.5 will have to be specially made. A suitable non-FCC cable for this purpose is Belden type 8777.

Table 2-3 Data-Rate/Cable-Length Relationships

| Data Rate (Bits/s) | Cable Length (Meters) | Cable Length (Feet) |
|---|---|---|
| 110 | 914 | 3000 |
| 300 | 914 | 3000 |
| 1200 | 152 | 500 |
| 2400 | 152 | 500 |
| 4800 | 76 | 250 |
| 9600 | 76 | 250 |

**NOTE**

**Cables longer than 15.24 m (50 ft) or with a total capacitance greater than 2.5 nanofarads violate RS-232-C and V.28 specifications.**

**CAUTION**

**RS-232-C is meant for local communication. Communication devices can be damaged by induced high voltages. You can usually minimize these voltages by limiting the total cable length to 100 m (300 feet), or by installing surge-limiting devices. Do not run the cable outdoors. Keep low-voltage data wiring away from ac power wiring, as required by electrical codes of practice.**

## 2.7 MULTIPLE COMMUNICATIONS OPTIONS

### 2.7.1 Floating Device Addresses

On UNIBUS and Q-bus systems, a band of addresses (xxx60010$_8$ to xxx63776$_8$) in the top 4K words is assigned as floating address space (xxx means all top address bits = 1).

Options which can be assigned floating device addresses are listed in Table 2-4. This table gives the sequence of addresses for both UNIBUS and Q-bus options.

Having one list allows us to use one set of configuration rules and one configuration program.

Table 2-4 Floating Device Address Assignments

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | DJ11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 2 | DH11 | 8 | 20 | |
| 3 | DQ11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 4 | DU11, DUV11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 5 | DUP11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 6 | LK11A | 4 | 10 | |
| 7 | DMC11/DMR11 | 4 | 10 | (DMC before DMR) |
| 8 | DZ11/DZV11, DZS11, DZ32 | 4 | 10 | (DZ11 before DZ32) |
| 9 | KMC11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 10 | LPP11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 11 | VMV21 | 4 | 10 | |
| 12 | VMV31 | 8 | 20 | |
| 13 | DWR70 | 4 | 10 | |
| 14 | RL11, RLV11 | 4 | 10 | * |
| 15 | LPA11-K | 8 | 20 | * |
| 16 | KW11-C | 4 | 10 | |
| 17 | Reserved | 4 | 10 | |
| 18 | RX11/RX211, RXV11/RXV21 | 4 | 10 | * (RX11 before RX211) |
| 19 | DR11-W | 4 | 10 | |
| 20 | DR11-B | 4 | 10 | ** |
| 21 | DMP11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 22 | DPV11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 23 | ISB11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 24 | DMV11 | 8 | 20 | |
| 25 | DEUNA | 4 | 10 | * |
| 26 | UDA50/RQDX | 2 | 4 | * |
| 27 | DMF32 | 16 | 40 | |
| 28 | KMS11 | 6 | 20 | |
| 29 | VS100 | 8 | 20 | |
| 30 | TU81 | 2 | 4 | |
| 31 | KMV11 | 8 | 20 | |
| 32 | DHV11/DHU11 | 8 | 20 | |

* The first device of this type has a fixed address. Any extra devices have a floating address.

** The first two devices of this type have a fixed address. Any extra devices have a floating address.

NOTE

DZ11-E and DZ11-F are treated as two DZ11s.

When there are no previous floating address space options in a system, the address of the first DHV11 installed will be $760440_8$.

Devices of the same type are given addresses in sequence, so all DZV11s have addresses higher than DUV11s and lower than RLV11s.

The column Size (Decimal), in Table 2-4, shows how many words of address space are needed for each device. The column Modulus (Octal) is the modulus used for starting addresses. For example, devices with an octal modulus of 10 must start at an address which is a multiple of $10_8$. The same rule is used to select a gap address after an option, or for a nonexistent device.

The address assignment rules are as follows.

1. Addresses, starting at $17760010_8$, are assigned according to the sequence of Table 2-4.
2. Option and gap addresses are assigned according to the octal modulus as follows:
   a. Devices with an octal modulus of 4 are assigned an address on a $4_8$ boundary (the two lowest-order address bits = 0)
   b. Devices with an octal modulus of 10 are assigned an address on a $10_8$ boundary (the three lowest-order address bits = 0)
   c. Devices with an octal modulus of 20 are assigned an address on a $20_8$ boundary (the four lowest-order address bits = 0)
   d. Devices with an octal modulus of 40 are assigned an address on a $40_8$ boundary (the five lowest-order address bits = 0)
3. Address space equal to the device's modulus must be allowed for each device which is connected to the bus
4. A 1-word gap, assigned according to rule 2, must be allowed after the last device of each type. This gap could be bigger when rule 2 is applied to the following rank
5. A 1-word gap, assigned according to rule 2, must be allowed for each unused rank on the list if a device with a higher address is used. This gap could be bigger when rule 2 is applied to the following rank.

If extra devices are added to a system, the floating addresses may have to be reassigned in agreement with these rules.

In the following example, a brief description of address assignment is given. Note that the list includes floating vector addresses. These are explained in Section 2.7.2.

Example: One DUV11, one RLV11, and two DHV11s

| Address (Octal) | | Vector |
|---|---|---|
| xxx60010 | DJ11 gap | |
| xxx60020 | H11 gap | |
| xxx60030 | DQ11 gap | |
| xxx60040 | DUV11 | 300 |
| xxx60050 | DUV11 gap | |

| Address (Octal) | | Vector |
|---|---|---|
| xxx60060 | DUP11 gap | |
| xxx60070 | LK11A gap | |
| xxx60100 | DMC11 gap | |
| xxx60110 | DZV11 gap | |
| xxx60120 | KMC11 gap | |
| xxx60130 | LPP11 gap | |
| xxx60140 | VMV21 gap | |
| xxx60160 | VMV31 gap | |
| xxx60170 | DWR70 gap | |
| xxx60200 | RLV11 | 310 |
| xxx60210 | RLV11 gap | |
| xxx60220 | LPA11-K gap | |
| xxx60230 | KW11-C gap | |
| xxx60240 | reserved gap | |
| xxx60250 | RXV11 gap | |
| xxx60260 | DR11-W gap | |
| xxx60270 | DR11-B gap | |
| xxx60300 | DMP11 gap | |
| xxx60310 | DPV11 gap | |
| xxx60320 | ISB11 gap | |
| xxx60340 | DMV11 gap | |
| xxx60350 | DEUNA gap | |
| xxx60354 | UDA50 gap | |
| xxx60400 | DMF32 gap | |
| xxx60420 | KMS11 gap | |
| xxx60440 | VS100 gap | |
| xxx60444 | reserved | |
| xxx60460 | KMV11 gap | |
| xxx60500 | 1st DHV11 | 320 |
| xxx60520 | 2nd DHV11 | 330 |
| xxx60540 | DHV11 gap | |

The first floating address is xxx60010. As the DJ11 has a modulus of $10_8$, its gap can be assigned to xxx60010. The next available location becomes xxx60012.

As the DH11 has a modulus of $20_8$, it cannot be assigned to xx60012. The next modulo 20 boundary is xxx60020, so the DH11 gap is assigned to this address. The next available location is therefore xxx60022.

A DQ11 has a modulus of $10_8$. It cannot be assigned to xxx60022. Its gap is therefore assigned to xxx60030. The next available location is xxx60032.

A DUV11 has a modulus of $10_8$. It cannot be assigned to xxx60032. It is therefore assigned to xxx60040. As the 'size' of DUV11 is four words, the next available address is xxx60050.

There is no second DUV11, so a gap must be left to indicate that there are no more DUV11s. As xxx60050 is on a $10_8$ boundary, the DUV11 gap can be assigned to this address. The next available address is xxx60052.

And so on.

### 2.7.2 Floating Vectors

Addresses between $300_8$ and $774_8$ are designated as the floating vector space. These addresses are assigned in sequence as in Table 2-5.

Each device needs two 16-bit locations for each vector. For example, a device with one receive and one transmit vector needs four words of vector space.

The vector assignment rules are as follows:

1. Each device occupies vector address space equal to 'Size' words. For example, the DLV11-J occupies 16 words of vector space. If its vector was $300_8$, the next available vector would be at $340_8$.

2. There are no gaps, except those needed to align an octal modulus.

An example of floating vector address assignment is given in Section 2.7.1.

**Table 2-5 Floating Vector Address Assignments**

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | DC11 | 4 | 10 |
| 1 | TU58 | 4 | 10 |
| 2 | KL11 | 4 | 10 |
| 2 | DL11-A | 4 | 10 |
| 2 | DL11-B | 4 | 10 |
| 2 | DLV11-J | 16 | 10 |
| 2 | DLV11, DLV11-F | 4 | 10 |
| 3 | DP11 | 4 | 10 |
| 4 | DM11-A | 4 | 10 |
| 5 | DN11 | 2 | 4 |
| 6 | DM11-BB/BA | 2 | 4 |
| 7 | DH11 modem control | 2 | 4 |
| 8 | DR11-A, DRV11-B | 4 | 10 |
| 9 | DR11-C, DRV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 10 | PA611 (reader + punch) | 8 | 10 |
| 11 | LPD11 | 4 | 10 |
| 12 | DI07 | 4 | 10 |
| 13 | DX11 | 4 | 10 |
| 14 | DL11-C to DLV11-F | 4 | 10 |
| 15 | DJ11 | 4 | 10 |

Table 2-5 Floating Vector Address Assignments (Cont)

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 16 | DH11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 17 | VT40 | 8 | 10 | |
| 17 | VSV11 | 8 | 10 | |
| 18 | LPS11 | 12 | 10 | |
| 19 | DQ11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 20 | KW11-W, KWV11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 21 | DU11, DUV11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 22 | DUP11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 23 | DV11 + modem control | 6 | 10 | |
| 24 | LK11-A | 4 | 10 | |
| 25 | DWUN | 4 | 10 | |
| 26 | DMC11/DMR11 | 4 | 10 | (DMC before DMR) |
| 27 | DZ11/DZS11/DZV11, DZ32 | 4 | 10 | (DZ11 before DZ32) |
| 28 | KMC11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 29 | LPP11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 30 | VMV21 | 4 | 10 | |
| 31 | VMV31 | 4 | 10 | |
| 32 | VTV01 | 4 | 10 | |
| 33 | DWR70 | 4 | 10 | |
| 34 | RL11/RLV11 | 2 | 4 | * |
| 35 | TS11, TU80 | 2 | 4 | * |
| 36 | LPA11-K | 4 | 10 | |
| 37 | IP11/IP300 | 2 | 4 | * |
| 38 | KW11-C | 4 | 10 | |
| 39 | RX11/RX211 RXV11/RXV21 | 2 | 4 | * (RX11 before RX211) |
| 40 | DR11-W | 2 | 4 | |
| 41 | DR11-B | 2 | 4 | * |
| 42 | DMP11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 43 | DPV11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 44 | ML11 | 2 | 4 | (MASSBUS device) |
| 45 | ISB11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 46 | DMV11 | 4 | 10 | |
| 47 | DEUNA | 2 | 4 | * |
| 48 | UDA50/RQDX1 | 2 | 4 | * |
| 49 | DMF32 | 16 | 4 | |
| 50 | KMS11 | 6 | 10 | |
| 51 | PCL11-B | 4 | 10 | |
| 52 | VS100 | 2 | 4 | |

* The first device of this type has a fixed vector. Any extra devices have a floating vector.

Table 2-5 Floating Vector Address Assignments (Cont)

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 53 | TU81 | 2 | 4 |
| 54 | KMV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 55 | KCT32 | 4 | 10 |
| 56 | IEX | 4 | 10 |
| 57 | DHV11/DHU11 | 4 | 10 |

NOTE

A KL11 or DL11 used as the console has a fixed vector.

ML11 is a MASSBUS device which can connect to UNIBUS via a bus adapter.

## 2.8 INSTALLATION TESTING

All individual device diagnostics should be run without error before DECX/11 is used.

### 2.8.1 Testing in PDP-11 Systems

The following tests should be run after installation:

1. Internal loopback
2. Staggered loopback
3. Line loopback
4. Modem loopback.
5. Keyboard echo (CVDHC only)

The self-test runs automatically when the bus or DHV11 is reset. If no fault is found, the diagnostic LED will flash OFF/ON/OFF and then come ON permanently. The first off state is very short and may not be seen. However, if the LED goes off before coming on permanently the diagnostic has found no faults. This does not prove that the option is serviceable.

During the self-test diagnostic operation, bytes are written to the FIFO. By reading these bytes, the engineer can receive more detailed information about the state of the DHV11. Diagnostic bytes and their interpretation are described in Section 3 of this document. The self-test can take up to 2.5 seconds.

CVDHB? and CVDHC? have four modes of operation:

1. Internal loopback
2. Staggered loopback
3. Line loopback
4. Modem loopback.

The mode can be selected by answering a prompt from the diagnostic program. A summary of the use of the diagnostic supervisor is provided in Chapter 5.

Test the module in the following sequence. There is a test flowchart in Section 5.9 of this manual.

1. Switch on power, or reset the system. Check the diagnostic LED sequence.

2. Run the CVDH?? diagnostics for one error-free pass (CVDHB? and CVDHC? in the internal loopback mode). Any fault message indicates a defective module.

3. Connect the H3277 staggered loopback connector and run CVDHB? and CVDHC? for one error-free pass in the staggered loopback mode. Any fault message indicates a defective DHV11 or cable. Swap cables (as in Figure 5-2, configuration C) and repeat the test in order to find the defective component.

4. Connect the BC05L-xx cables as for normal operation. Install an H325 line loopback connector at line number 0 of the distribution panel. Run CVDHB? and CVDHC? in line loopback mode on line number 0 for one error-free pass. Repeat for all lines.

5. Run the DECX/11 exerciser to verify that the DHV11 will run with other options of the system.

NOTES

**The DHV11 should now be ready for connection to external equipment. See Section 2.6 if necessary, for recommended modem and null-modem cables.**

**The CVDH?? diagnostics can be used, in modem loopback mode, to check the communications link. The modem must be set up manually. The diagnostic will test to the point where the line is looped back.**

### 2.8.2 Testing in MicroVAX I Systems

The following diagnostic tests are available for testing a DHV11 in MicroVAX I systems.

| | |
|---|---|
| EHXDH | DHV11 Test |
| EHKMZ | Macroverify-MicroVAX System Test |

Macroverify is a standalone diagnostic which contains a DHV11 test module. Further information is contained in Chapter 5. Chapter 5 also contains information on testing in MicroVAX II systems.

Test the option as follows:

1. Boot from the MicroVAX system diskette (number 2 of 2). Attach and select the DHV11 which you want to test.

2. Run EHXDH for three error-free passes of the internal (default) test.

3. Install the H3277 staggered loopback connector on the M3104 ribbon cables (see Figure 2-5). Run EHXDH for three error-free passes of the staggered test.

4. Remove the H3277 and configure the DHV11 for normal operation.

5. If you want to test the operation of a terminal link, connect the terminal line to the distribution panel. Run the EHXDH echo test on that line until the link is proven. Depending on the type of terminal, you may need a null modem for this test. Press CTRL/Z to exit from the echo test.

6. Remove all external cables and connectors from the distribution panel. Boot the CPU tests diskette (number 1 of 2). The Macroverify diagnostic runs automatically when the boot process is complete. When the test completes, the status of all options is displayed.

7. If no device has a TEST FAILED status, the DHV11 is now ready for connection to external equipment. If the connection is to a local terminal, you must use a null modem cable assembly. Use the BC22A, BC22D, or BC03P null modem cables for connection between the option and the terminal. You can also use the H312-A null modem unit in place of null modem cables.

Use a BC22E or BC05D cable to connect the option and a modem.

Because they are not components of a DHV11 option, all of the referenced cables must be ordered separately.

### 2.8.3 Testing in MicroVAX II Systems

Refer to Section 5.7 of Chapter 5, and run the maintenance version of the diagnostic as described in Section 5.7.3. Run the DHV11 test for three error-free passes.

If you want to test the operation of a terminal link, you can select the appropriate echo test from the menus.

When the echo test has completed, run the first part of the MicroVAX II diagnostic; this is option 1 on the main menu. When this test has completed, refer to step 7 of Section 2.8.2.

# CHAPTER 3
# PROGRAMMING

## 3.1 SCOPE

This chapter describes the CSR and control registers, and how they are used to control and monitor the DHV11. The chapter covers:

- The bit functions and format of each register
- Programming features available to the host.

Some programming examples are also included.

Chapter 4, Sections 4.1 to 4.6, is recommended reading for anyone programming this device.

## 3.2 REGISTERS

The host system controls and monitors the DHV11 module via several registers which are implemented in RAM.

Command words or bytes written to the registers are interpreted and executed by the firmware. Status reports and data are also transferred via the registers.

One of the functions of the microcomputers is to scan the registers for new instructions or data.

### 3.2.1 Register Access

DHV11 registers occupy eight words (16 bytes) of Q-bus, memory-mapped I/O space. However, by indexing, this is expanded on the DHV11 to 114 words.

The position of the eight words within the top 4K words of memory, is switch-selected on the DHV11. In order to access the module, bits <12:4> of an I/O address must match the address switch coding.

Table 3-1 lists the DHV11 registers and their addresses. The suffix (M) means that there are eight of these registers; one for each channel. When an (M) register is accessed, the address (Table 3-1) is indexed by the contents of CSR<3:0>.

**NOTE**

**CSR<3:0> allows 16 registers to be addressed. However, only the bottom eight registers of each block are used. Therefore CSR bit 3 must always be 0.**

The term 'Base' means the lowest I/O address on the module. That is to say, when the four low-order address bits = 0.

Table 3-1 DHV11 Registers

| Register | | Address (Octal) | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Control/Status Register | (CSR) | Base | Read/Write |
| Receive Buffer | (RBUF) | Base + 2 | Read Only |
| Transmit Character | (TXCHAR) | Base + 2 (M) | Write Only |
| Line Parameter Register | (LPR) | Base + 4 (M) | Read/Write |
| Line Status | (STAT) | Base + 6 (M) | Read Only |
| Line Control | (LNCTRL) | Base + 10 (M) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Address 1 | (TBUFFAD1) | Base + 12 (M) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Address 2 | (TBUFFAD2) | Base + 14 (M) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Count | (TBUFFCT) | Base + 16 (M) | Read/Write |

NOTE

It is physically possible to write to the line status register. However, this register must not be written by the host.

Registers are accessed by instructions which use 'base + n' as a source or destination. However, before multiple (M) registers are accessed, the channel number must be written to the CSR. The following example explains this.

To read the line status register of channel 3, the following I/O commands would be executed:

```
MOVB #CHAN,@#BASE     ;WRITE CHANNEL NUMBER (SEE BELOW) TO CSR
MOV @#BASE+6,R0       ;READ THE LINE STATUS REGISTER
```

In the above example:

CHAN = Oer00011$_2$

Where e = the RXIE bit
and r = the MRST bit (would be 0)
and 0011$_2$ = channel number 3

'Base + 6' will address a block of 16 line status registers, only eight of which are used. The DHV11 hardware will index this address by three, thereby selecting line status register number 3.

NOTE

1. Not all register bits are specified. In a write action, all unspecified bits must be written as 0s. In a read action, unspecified bits are undefined.

2. The exception to the above rule is that a bit may be written as logical 1 or 0 if it is read as logical 1. That is to say, read-modify-write instructions work correctly.

### 3.2.2 Register Bit Definitions

Register formats which precede the definitions of register bits, are coded as follows:

- Bits marked * may hold data set status, or special information from the diagnostic programs. These are covered in Section 3.3.10.
- Registers which are modified by reset sequences are coded as shown in Figure 3-1.

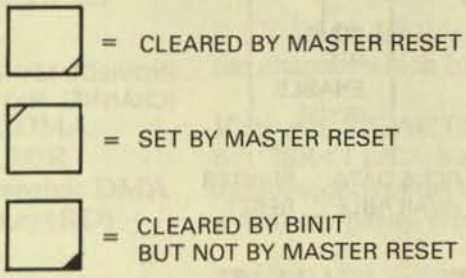
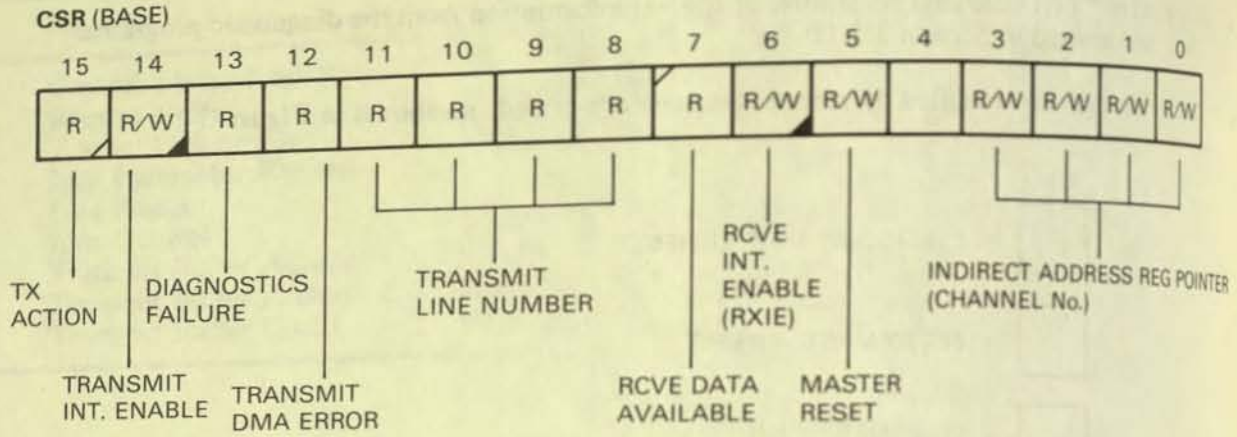



Figure 3-1 Register Coding

### 3.2.2.1 Control and Status Register (CSR) –




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <3:0> | IND.ADDR.REG (Indirect Address Register) (R/W) | These bits are used to select the wanted channel register when accessing a block of indexed (M) registers. They form the binary number of the channel which is to be accessed. |
| 5 | MASTER.RESET (Master Reset) (R/W) | Set by the host, in order to reset DHV11. Stays set while DHV11 runs a self-test diagnostic, and then performs an initialization sequence. The bit is then cleared to tell the host that the process is complete.<br><br>This bit is set by BINIT (bus initialization signal), or by the host processor setting CSR<5>.<br><br>The host should not write to this bit when it is already set. |
| 6 | RXIE (Receiver Interrupt Enable) (R/W) | When set, this bit allows the DHV11 to interrupt the host when RX.DATA.AVAIL is set. An interrupt is generated under the following conditions:<br><br>1. RXIE is set and a character is placed into an empty FIFO<br>2. The FIFO is not empty and RXIE is changed from 0 to 1.<br><br>Cleared by BINIT but not by MASTER.RESET. |
| 7 | RX.DATA. AVAIL (Received Data Available) (RD) | When set, indicates that a received character is available. This bit is clear when the FIFO is empty. It is used to request an RX interrupt.<br><br>Set after MASTER.RESET because the FIFO contains diagnostic information. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <11:8> | TX.LINE (Transmit Line Number) (RD) | If TX.ACTION is set, these bits hold the binary number of the channel which has just:<br>1. Completed a DMA block transfer<br>2. Accepted a single character for transmission<br>3. Aborted a DMA block transfer.<br><br>If TX.DMA.ERR is also set, these bits contain the binary number of the channel which has failed during a DMA transfer. |
| 12 | TX.DMA. ERROR (Transmit DMA Error) (RD) | If set with TX.ACTION also set, means that the channel indicated by CSR<11:8> has failed to transfer DMA data within 10.7 microseconds of the bus request being acknowledged, or that there is a memory parity error.<br><br>TBUFFAD1 and TBUFFAD2 registers will contain the address of the memory location which could not be accessed. TBUFFCT will be cleared. |
| 13 | DIAG.FAIL (Diagnostic Fail) (RD) | When set, indicates that DHV11 internal diagnostics have detected an error. The error may have been detected by the self-test diagnostic or by the BMP.<br><br>This bit is associated with the diagnostic-passed LED. When it is set, the LED will be off. When it is cleared, the LED will be on.<br><br>The bit is set by MASTER.RESET. It is cleared after the internal diagnostic programs have been run successfully.<br><br>It is only valid after the MASTER.RESET bit CSR<5> has been cleared. |
| 14 | TXIE (Transmit Interrupt Enable) (R/W) | When set, allows the DHV11 to interrupt the host when CSR<15> (TX.ACTION) becomes set.<br><br>Cleared by BINIT but not by MASTER.RESET. |
| 15 | TX.ACTION (Transmitter Action) (RD) | This bit is set by DHV11 when:<br>1. The last character of a DMA buffer has left the DUART<br>2. A DMA transfer has been aborted<br>3. A DMA transfer has been terminated by the DHV11 because of nonexistent memory being addressed, or because of a memory parity error |

Table 3-2 Data Rates

| Code | Data Rate (Bits/s) | Maximum Error (%) | Groups |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | 50 | 0.01 | A |
| 0001 | 75 | 0.01 | B |
| 0010 | 110 | 0.08 | A and B |
| 0011 | 134.5 | 0.07 | A and B |
| 0100 | 150 | 0.01 | B |
| 0101 | 300 | 0.01 | A and B |
| 0110 | 600 | 0.01 | A and B |
| 0111 | 1200 | 0.01 | A and B |
| 1000 | 1800 | 0.01 | B |
| 1001 | 2000 | 0.19 | B |
| 1010 | 2400 | 0.01 | A and B |
| 1011 | 4800 | 0.01 | A and B |
| 1100 | 7200 | 0.01 | A |
| 1101 | 9600 | 0.01 | A and B |
| 1110 | 19200 | 0.01 | B |
| 1111 | 38400 | 0.01 | A |

NOTE

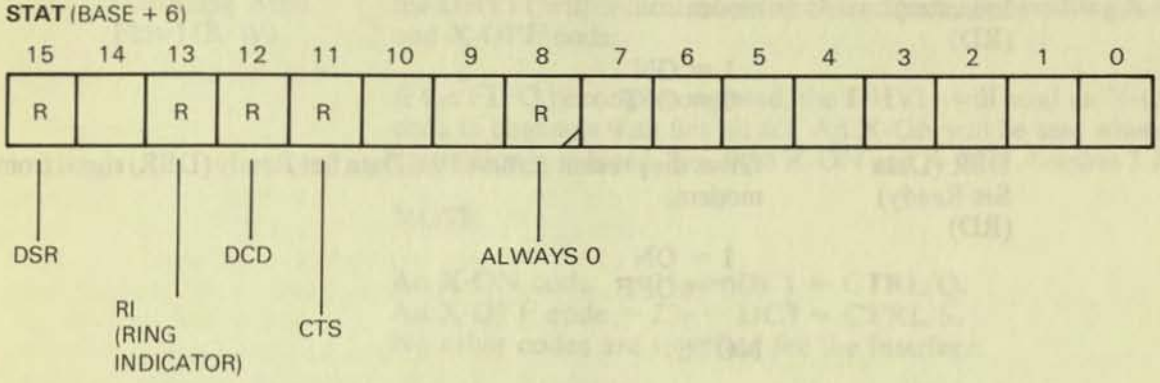
The 8-channel interface uses four dual-channel ICs. Channels 0 and 1, 2 and 3, 4 and 5, and 6 and 7 are paired. It is the responsibility of the user to select transmit and receive data rates of the same group (A or B) for any pair of channels.

Group B contains most of the commonly used rates, therefore most software could use this group only and thus avoid the problem of interaction between adjacent channels.

If the transmitter and receiver of a channel are configured in different groups, the group of the receiver is selected.

If a 'pair' of channels are configured in different groups, the group of the most recently configured channel is selected. This changes the data rate of a channel when its paired channel is reconfigured to the other group.

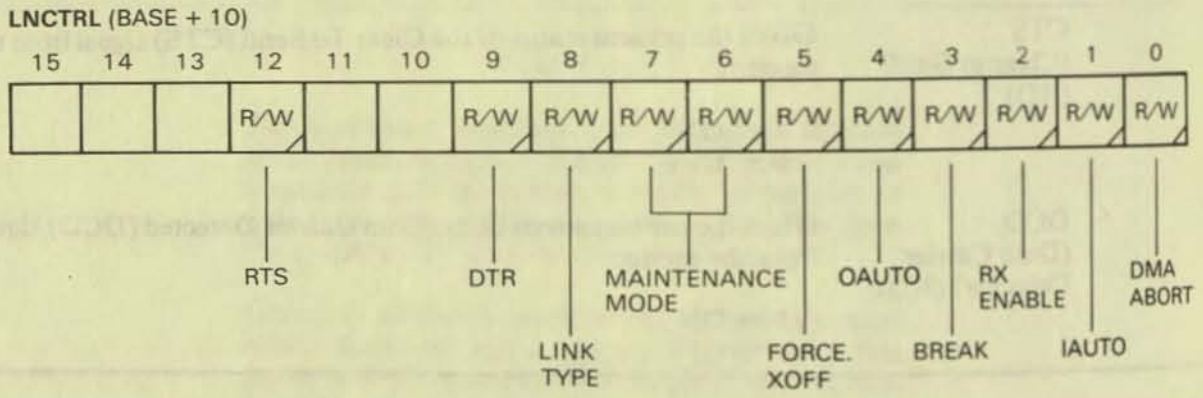
3.2.2.5 **Line Status Register (STAT)** – The high byte of this register holds modem status information. The low byte is undefined.




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | STAT<8> (Status Register, bit 8) (RD) | Permits the software to distinguish between DHV11 and DHU11.<br>0 = DHV11<br>1 = DHU11 |
| 11 | CTS (Clear to Send) (RD) | Gives the present status of the Clear To Send (CTS) signal from the modem.<br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 12 | DCD (Data Carrier Detected) (RD) | Gives the present status of the Data Carrier Detected (DCD) signal from the modem.<br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 13 | RI (Ring Indicator) (RD) | Gives the present status of the Ring Indicator (RI) signal from the modem.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 15 | DSR (Data Set Ready) (RD) | Gives the present status of the Data Set Ready (DSR) signal from the modem.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF<br><br>NOTE<br><br>In order to report a change of modem status, the DHV11 writes the high byte of STAT into the low byte of RBUF. RBUF<14:12> = 111 to tell the host that RBUF<7:0> do not hold a received character (see modem control, Section 3.3.8). |

3.2.2.6 Line Control Register (LNCTRL) – The main function of this register is to control the line interface.

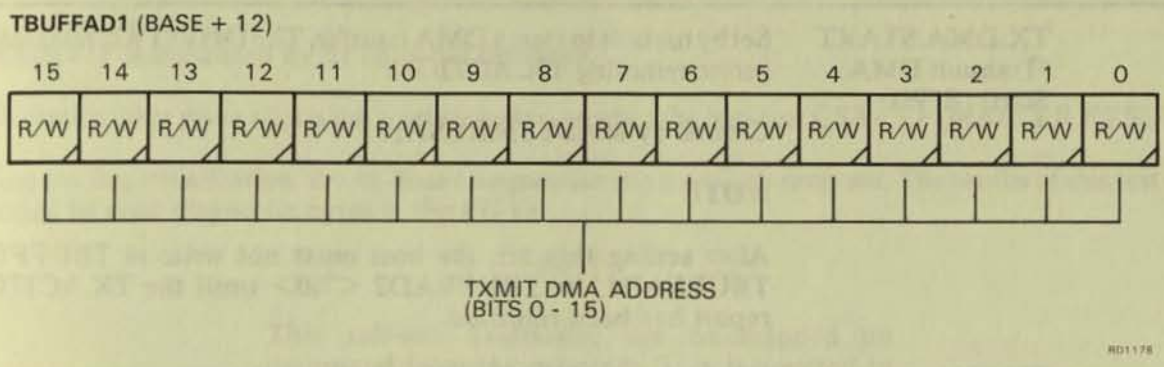



| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | TX.DMA.ABORT (Transmit DMA Abort) (R/W) | Set by the driver program to halt the transfer of a DMA buffer. The transfer can be continued by clearing TX.DMA.ABORT and then setting TX.DMA.START. No characters will be lost.<br><br>The program must make sure that TX.DMA.ABORT is clear before setting TX.DMA.START. Otherwise the transfer will be aborted before any characters are transmitted.<br><br>See Section 3.3.3.1, DMA Transfers, for the use of TX.DMA.ABORT.<br><br>Cleared by MASTER.RESET. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | IAUTO (Incoming Auto Flow) (R/W) | This is the auto-flow control bit for incoming characters. If it is set, the DHV11 will control incoming characters by transmitting X-ON and X-OFF codes.<br><br>If the FIFO becomes congested, the DHV11 will send an X-OFF code to channels with this bit set. An X-ON will be sent when the congestion is reduced. See Auto X-ON and X-OFF, Section 3.3.6.<br><br>NOTE<br><br>An X-ON code $= 21_8 =$ DC1 = CTRL/Q.<br>An X-OFF code $= 23_8 =$ DC3 = CTRL/S.<br>No other codes are specified for the interface. |
| 2 | RX.ENA (Receiver Enable) (R/W) | If set, this receiver channel is enabled.<br><br>If reset when this DUART channel is assembling a character, that character is lost.<br><br>Cleared by MASTER.RESET. |
| 3 | BREAK (Break Control) (R/W) | If set, this bit forces the transmitter of this channel to the spacing state.<br><br>Transmission is restarted when the bit is cleared.<br><br>NOTE<br><br>There is a short delay between writing the bit and the channel changing state. The delay is dependent on throughput. Because of the normal length of a BREAK signal, this should not cause problems. |
| 4 | OAUTO (Outgoing Auto Flow) (R/W) | This bit is the auto-flow control bit for outgoing characters. When set, if RX.ENA is also set, the DHV11 will automatically respond to X-ON and X-OFF codes received from a channel. The DHV11 uses the TX.ENA bit in TBUFFAD2 to stop and start the flow. See Auto X-ON and X-OFF, Section 3.3.6. |
| 5 | FORCE.XOFF (Force X-OFF) (R/W) | This bit can be set by the program to indicate that this channel is congested at the host system (for example, if the typeahead buffer is full). When it sees this bit set, the DHV11 will send an X-OFF code. Until the bit is reset, X-OFFs will be sent after every alternate character received on that channel. When the bit is reset, an X-ON will be sent unless IAUTO is set and the FIFO is critical. See Auto X-ON and X-OFF, Section 3.3.6. |

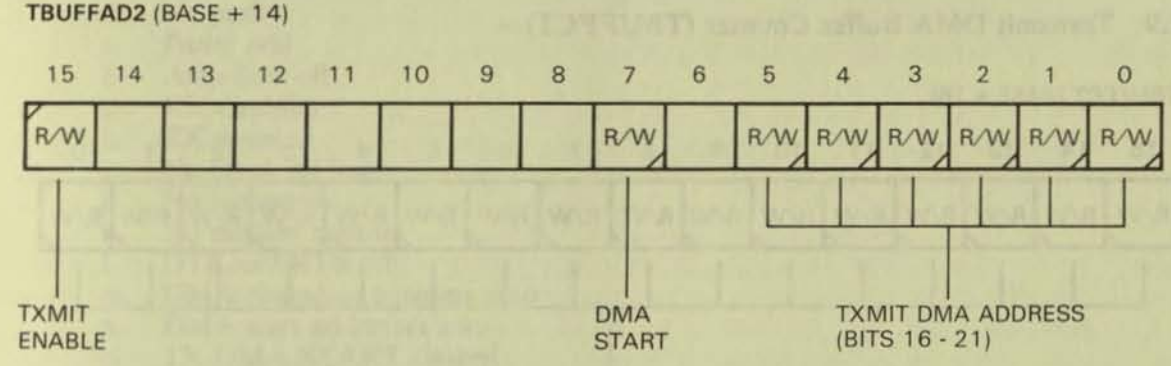
| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <7:6> | MAINT (Maintenance Mode) (R/W) | These bits can be written by the driver or test programs, in order to test the channel.<br><br>The coding is as follows:<br><br>00 = Normal operation<br><br>01 = Automatic echo mode – Received data is retransmitted (regardless of the state of TX.ENA) at the data rate selected for the receiver. The received characters are processed normally and placed in the received character FIFO. In this mode, the DHV11 will not transmit any characters (this includes internally generated flow-control characters). The RX.ENA bit must be set when operating in this mode.<br><br>10 = Local loopback – The DUART channel output is internally connected to the input. Normal received data is ignored and the transmit data line is held marking. In this mode, flow-control characters will be looped back instead of being transmitted. The data rate selected for the transmitter is used for both transmission and reception. The TX.ENA bit still controls transmission in this mode. The RX.ENA bit is ignored.<br><br>11 = Remote loopback – In this mode, received data is retransmitted at a clock rate equal to the received clock rate. The data is not placed in the receiver FIFO. The state of TX.ENA is ignored. The RX.ENA bit must be set on the respective channel. |
| 8 | LINK.TYPE (Link Type) (R/W) | This bit must be set if the channel is to be connected to a modem. When the bit is set, any change in modem status will be reported via the FIFO as well as the STAT register.<br><br>If this bit is reset, this channel becomes a 'data leads only' channel. Modem status information is loaded in the high byte of STAT but is not placed in the FIFO. |
| 9 | DTR (Data Terminal Ready) (R/W) | This bit controls the Data Terminal Ready (DTR) signal.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 12 | RTS (Request To Send) (R/W) | This bit controls the Request To Send (RTS) signal.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |

### 3.2.2.7 Transmit Buffer Address Register Number 1 (TBUFFAD1) –




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <15:0> | TBUFFAD<15:0> (Transmit Buffer Address [Low]) (R/W) | Bits <15:0> of the DMA address (see Section 3.2.2.8). |

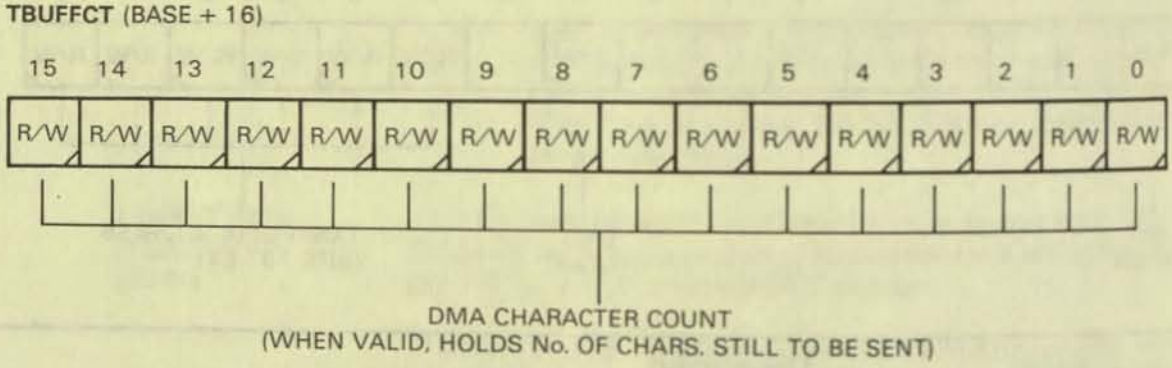
### 3.2.2.8 Transmit Buffer Address Register Number 2 (TBUFFAD2) –




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <5:0> | TBUFFAD<21:16> (Transmit Buffer Address [High]) (R/W) | Bits <21:16> of the DMA address.<br><br>Before a DMA transfer, TBUFFAD1 and the low byte of TBUFFAD2 are loaded with the start address of the DMA buffer. This address is not valid during a DMA transfer. When TX.ACTION is returned, the address will be valid. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | TX.DMA.START (Transmit DMA Start) (R/W) | Set by the host to start a DMA transfer. The DHV11 will reset the bit before returning TX.ACTION.<br><br>Cleared by MASTER.RESET.<br><br>NOTE<br><br>After setting this bit, the host must not write to TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, or TBUFFAD2 <7:0> until the TX.ACTION report has been returned. |
| 15 | TX.ENA (Transmitter Enable) (R/W) | When set, the DHV11 will transmit all characters.<br><br>When cleared, the DHV11 will only transmit internally generated flow-control characters.<br><br>Set by MASTER.RESET.<br><br>In the OAUTO mode, this bit is used by the DHV11 to control outgoing characters. See Auto X-ON and X-OFF, Section 3.3.6. |

### 3.2.2.9 Transmit DMA Buffer Counter (TBUFFCT) –




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <15:0> | TX.CHAR.CT (Transmit Character Count) (R/W) | Loaded with the number of characters to be transferred by DMA.<br><br>The number of characters is specified as a 16-bit unsigned integer.<br><br>After a DMA transfer has been aborted, this location will hold the number of characters still to be transferred.<br><br>See also the previous NOTE. |

## 3.3 PROGRAMMING FEATURES

### 3.3.1 Initialization

The DHV11 is initialized by its on-board firmware.

Initialization takes place after a bus reset sequence, or when the host sets CSR<5> (MASTER.RESET).

Before starting initialization, the on-board diagnostics run a self-test program. The results of this test are reported by eight diagnostic bytes in the FIFO.

NOTE

**This self-test diagnostic can be skipped on command from the program. This is covered in Section 3.3.10.3.**

The DHV11 state, after a successful self-test, is as follows:

1. Eight diagnostic codes are placed in the FIFO
2. The diagnostic fail bit (CSR<13>) is reset
3. All channels set for:

    a. Send and receive 9600 bits/s
    b. Eight data bits
    c. One stop bit
    d. No parity
    e. Parity odd
    f. Auto-flow off
    g. RX disabled
    h. TX enabled
    i. No break on line
    j. No loopback
    k. No modem control
    l. DTR and RTS off
    m. DMA character counters zero
    n. DMA start addresses zero
    o. TX.DMA.START cleared
    p. TX.DMA.ABORT cleared.

The DHV11 clears the MASTER.RESET bit (CSR<5>) when initialization and self-test are complete.

### 3.3.2 Configuration

After DHV11 self-initialization, the driver program can configure the DHV11 as needed. This is done via the LPR and LNCTRL registers.

By writing to the associated LPR and LNCTRL the program can select data rate, character length, parity, and stop bit length for each channel. Individual receivers and transmitters can be enabled and auto-flow selected.

For operation with any device which uses modem-type signals, LINK.TYPE of the associated LNCTRL register should be set.

**NOTE**

**If RX.ENA is reset while a receive character is being assembled, that character will be lost**

**Writing to the LPR or LNCTRL registers of any line impacts transmission performance on every line.**

### 3.3.3 Transmitting

Each channel of the DHV11 can be programmed to transmit blocks of characters by DMA, or single characters only. Such transfers are covered in the following three subsections. For data flow and timing considerations see Chapter 4, Section 4.6.

3.3.3.1 DMA Transfers – Before setting up the transfer of a DMA buffer, the program should make sure that TX.DMA.START is not set. TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2 should not be written unless TX.DMA.START is clear.

Transmission will start when the program sets TX.DMA.START.

The size of the DMA buffer, and its start address, can be written to TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2 in any order. However, TBUFFAD2 contains TX.ENA and TX.DMA.START, so it is probably simpler to write TBUFFAD2 last. By using byte operations on this register, TX.ENA and TX.DMA.START can be separated.

The DHV11 will perform the transfer and set TX.ACTION when it is complete. If TXIE is set, the program will be interrupted at the transmit vector. Otherwise, TX.ACTION must be polled. TX.ACTION is not returned until the UART has completely transmitted the last character of the DMA buffer.

To abort a DMA transfer, the program must set TX.DMA.ABORT. The DHV11 will stop transmission, and update TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2<7:0> to reflect the number of characters which have been transmitted. TX.DMA.START will be cleared. If the interrupt is enabled, TX.ACTION will interrupt the program at the transmit vector. After the TX.ACTION has been returned, if the program clears TX.DMA.ABORT and sets TX.DMA.START, the transfer can be continued without loss of characters.

If a DMA transfer fails because of a memory error, the transmission will be terminated. TBUFFAD1 and TBUFFAD2 will point to the failing location. TBUFFCT will be cleared.

3.3.3.2 Single Character Programmed Transfers – Single characters are transferred via a channel's TX.CHAR register. The character and the DATA.VALID bit must be written as defined in Section 3.2.2.3. Note that the character and the DATA.VALID bit can be written by separate MOVB instructions.

The DHV11 returns TX.ACTION when it reads the character from TX.CHAR. As with DMA transfers, this bit can be sensed via interrupt or by polling the CSR.

In single-character mode, TX.ACTION is returned when the DHV11 accepts the character, not when it has been transmitted. Each channel has a 3-character buffer. Therefore, if modem status bits or line parameters are changed immediately after the last TX.ACTION of a message, the end of the message could be lost. The program can prevent loss by adding three null characters to the end of each single-character programmed transfer message.

3.3.3.3 Methods of Control – Examples of control by polling or by the use of interrupts are given in Section 3.4, Programming Examples.

### 3.3.4 Receiving

Received characters, tagged with the channel number and DATA.VALID, are placed in the FIFO buffer (RBUF). If a character is put in an empty RBUF, the DHV11 sets RX.DATA.AVAIL. It stays set while there is valid data in there. If RXIE is set, the program will be interrupted at the receive vector. The program's interrupt routine should read RBUF until DATA.VALID is reset.

**NOTE**

**The interrupt is dynamic. It is raised as RX.DATA.AVAIL is set after RXIE, or as RXIE is set after RX.DATA.AVAIL. If the interrupt routine does not empty the FIFO, RXIE must be toggled to raise another interrupt.**

If RXIE is not set the program must poll RBUF often enough to prevent data loss.

### 3.3.5 Interrupt Control

During an interrupt request sequence, assuming that interrupts are enabled, the DHV11 can provide two vectors:

1. The 'base' vector set on the interrupt vector switches
2. 'Base' vector + 4.

The base vector is supplied each time data is put into an empty FIFO.

The 'base + 4' vector is supplied when:

1. A DMA block has been transferred.
2. A DMA transfer has been aborted, or terminated because of a memory error.
3. A single-character programmed transfer is complete.

At the two vectors, the host must provide the addresses of suitable routines to deal with the above conditions.

### 3.3.6 Auto X-ON and X-OFF

X-ON and X-OFF codes are commonly used to control data flow on communications channels. To use this facility, interfaces must have suitable decoding hardware or software.

A channel which receives an X-OFF stops sending characters until it receives an X-ON. A channel which is becoming overrun by received data sends an X-OFF. It sends an X-ON when the congestion is relieved.

If the DHV11 is programmed for automatic flow control (auto-flow), it can automatically control the flow of characters. Three bits control this function:

1. IAUTO – LNCTRL<1>
2. FORCE.XOFF – LNCTRL<5>
3. OAUTO – LNCTRL<4>

IAUTO and FORCE.XOFF both control incoming characters. IAUTO is an enable bit which allows the state of the FIFO counters to control the generation of XOFF and XON codes. The FORCE.XOFF bit is a direct command from the program.

1. The DHV11 hardware recognizes when the FIFO is three-quarters full and half full. The firmware uses these states for auto-flow control.

   If the program sets a channel's IAUTO bit, the DHV11 will send that channel an X-OFF if it receives a character after the FIFO becomes three-quarters full. If the channel does not respond to X-OFF, the DHV11 will send an X-OFF in response to every alternate character received. An X-ON will be sent when the FIFO becomes less than half full, unless FORCE.XOFF for that channel is set. X-ONs are only sent to channels to which an X-OFF has been sent.

   By inserting X-ON and X-OFF characters into the data stream, the program can perform flow control directly. However, if the DHV11 is in the IAUTO mode, the results will be unpredictable.

   In IAUTO mode, if RX.ENA is set, X-ONs and X-OFFs will be transmitted even if TX.ENA is cleared.

2. When FORCE.XOFF is set, the DHV11 sends an X-OFF and then acts as if IAUTO is set and the FIFO is critical (was three-quarters full, and is not yet less than half full). When FORCE.XOFF is reset, an X-ON will be sent unless the FIFO is critical and IAUTO is set.

3. If the program sets OAUTO, the DHV11 will automatically respond to X-ON and X-OFF characters from the channel. It does this by clearing and setting the TX.ENA bit.

   The program may also control the TX.ENA bit, so in this case it is important to keep track of received X-ON AND X-OFF characters.

   Received X-ON and X-OFF characters will always be reported via the FIFO. It is possible during read/modify/write operations by the program, for the DHV11 to change the TX.ENA bit between the read and the write action. For this reason, if DMA transfers are started while OAUTO is set, it is advisable to write to the low byte of TBUFFAD2 only.

## NOTES

1. The DHV11 may change the state of TX.ENA for up to 20 microseconds after OAUTO is cleared by the program.

2. When checking for flow-control characters, the DHV11 only checks characters which do not contain transmission errors. The parity bit is stripped and the remaining bits are checked for X-ON ($21_8$) and X-OFF ($23_8$) codes.

Further information on automatic flow control for the DHV11 is contained in Appendix D.

### 3.3.7 Error Indication

The program is informed of transmission and reception errors by means of four bits:

1. TX.DMA.ERR – CSR<12>. See Section 3.2.2.1
2. PARITY.ERR – RBUF<12>. See Section 3.2.2.2
3. FRAME.ERR – RBUF <13>. See Section 3.2.2.2
4. OVERRUN.ERR – RBUF <14>. See Section 3.2.2.2.

RBUF<14:12> are also used to identify a diagnostic or modem status code.

### 3.3.8 Modem Control

Each channel of the module provides modem control bits for RTS and DTR. Also on each channel are modem status inputs CTS, DSR, RI, and DCD. These bits can be used for modem control or as general purpose outputs and inputs (see STAT register, Section 3.2.2.5).

CTS, DSR, and DCD are sampled by PROC2 every 10 ms. Therefore, for a change to be detected, these bits must stay steady for at least 10 ms after a change. RI is also sampled every 10 ms, but a change is not reported unless the new state is held for three consecutive samples. There are no hardware controls between the modem control logic and the receiver and transmitter logic. Any coordination should be done under program control. Modem status change reports are placed in the received character FIFO at the correct position relative to the received characters.

By setting LINK.TYPE (LNCTRL<8>), a channel can be selected for modem operation. Any change of the modem status inputs will be reported to the program via the received character FIFO. Modem control bits must be driven by the program's communication routines. Control bits are written to LNCTRL.

Appendix B gives more detail of modem control.

By clearing LINK.TYPE the channel is selected as a 'data lines only' channel. Modem control and status bits can still be managed by the program but status bits must be polled at the line status register. Changes of modem status will not be reported to the program.

NOTE

When transmitting by the single-character programmed transfer method, up to three characters can be buffered in DHV11 hardware. If modem control bits are to be changed at the end of a transmission, three null characters should be added. When TX.ACTION is set after the third null character, the last true character has left the UART.

Status change reporting is done via the FIFO as follows:

- When OVERRUN.ERR, FRAME.ERR, and PARITY.ERR are all set, the eight low-order bits contain either status change or diagnostic information. In this case:
  - If RBUF<0> = 0, RBUF<7:1> holds STAT<15:9> (see Section 3.2.2.5).
  - If RBUF<0> = 1, RBUF<7:1> holds diagnostic information (see Section 3.3.10).

### 3.3.9 Maintenance Programming

As well as using on-board and external diagnostic programs, the host can also test each channel directly. Bits 7 and 6 of LNCTRL allow each channel to be configured in normal, automatic echo, local loopback, and remote loopback modes (see LNCTRL Section 3.2.2.6).

The host must provide suitable software to test these configurations.

### 3.3.10 Diagnostic Codes

**3.3.10.1 Self-Test Diagnostic Codes** – After bus reset or master reset, the DHV11 executes a self-test and initialization sequence. At the end of the sequence, eight diagnostic codes are put in the FIFO. RX.DATA.AVAIL is set and MASTER.RESET is cleared.

After an error-free test, DIAG.FAIL will be reset. The 'diagnostic passed' LED will be on. If an error is detected, DIAG.FAIL will be set and the LED will be off.

An example program which reads and checks the diagnostic codes from RBUF, is included in Section 3.4.

**3.3.10.2 Interpretation of Self-Test Codes** – The high byte of diagnostic codes in RBUF can be interpreted as in Section 3.2.2.2, except that bits <11:8> are not the line number. They indicate the sequence of the diagnostic byte. That is to say, 0 = first byte, 1 = second byte, and so on.

Figure 3-2 shows how the diagnostic code in the low byte of RBUF, should be interpreted. Table 3-3 gives the meaning of each implemented diagnostic byte.

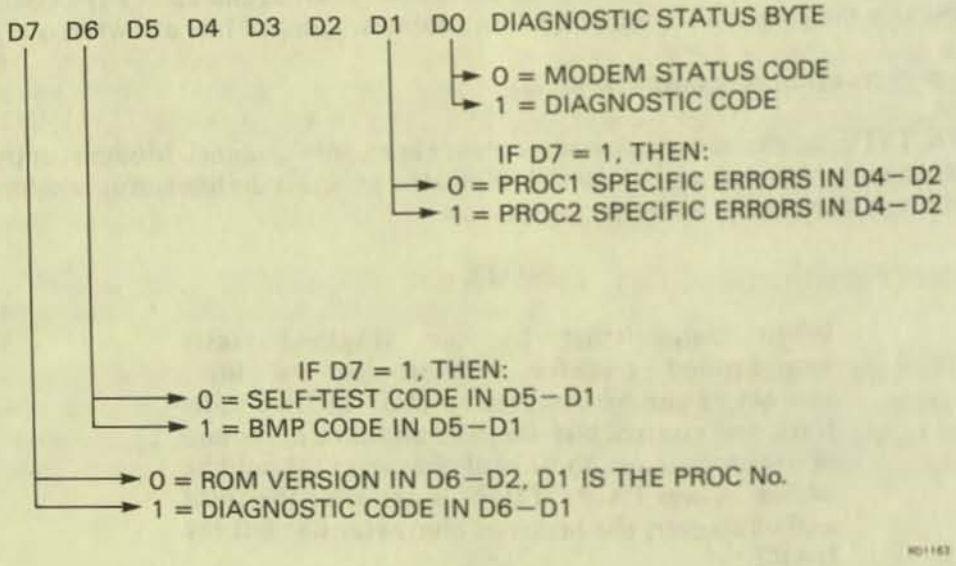



Figure 3-2 Diagnostic/Status Byte

Table 3-3 DHV11 Self-Test Error Codes

| Code (Octal) | Test |
|---|---|
| 201 | Self-test null code (used as a filler) |
| 203 | Self-test skipped |
| 211 | Basic data path error from PROC2 |
| 213 | Undefined UART error |
| 217 | Received character FIFO, logic error |
| 225 | PROC1 to common RAM error |
| 227 | PROC2 to common RAM error |
| 231 | PROC1 internal RAM error |
| 233 | PROC2 internal RAM error |
| 235 | PROC1 ROM error |
| 237 | PROC2 ROM error |

If D7 = 0 and D0 = 1, ROM version number is in D6 – D2.

D1 = PROC number (0 = PROC1)

NOTE

**Codes not shown in this table indicate undefined errors.**

After self-test, the eight codes in the FIFO will consist of six diagnostic codes and two ROM version codes. If there are less than six errors to report, null codes ($201_8$) fill the unused places.

After an error-free test, six null codes and two ROM version codes will be returned.

If self-test is skipped (see next section), six $203_8$ codes and two ROM version codes will be returned.

3.3.10.3 **Skipping Self-Test** – Self-test takes up to 2.5 seconds to complete. Depending on system software, this may cause a 2.5-second hangup. The Skip Self-Test facility allows the program to bypass the self-test diagnostic.

Skipping self-test is done as follows:

1. The program resets the DHV11
2. The diagnostic firmware writes $125252_8$ throughout the common RAM within eight milliseconds (ms) of reset
3. The program waits 10 ms (+ or – 1 ms) after issuing reset. It then writes $052525_8$ throughout the control registers (not the CSR), within the next 4 ms

4. The diagnostic firmware waits until 16 ms after reset. It then checks for a $052525_8$ code in common RAM.

   If it finds the code, self-test is skipped. The DIAG.FAIL bit is cleared and control is passed to the communications firmware which starts initialization.

   If the code is not found, self-test starts.

**NOTE**

**The program must not write to the CSR or the control registers during the period starting 15 ms after reset and ending when the MASTER.RESET bit is cleared. This could cause a diagnostic fail condition.**

3.3.10.4 Background Monitor Program(BMP) – When not busy with other tasks, the DHV11's microcomputers perform background tests on the option. This is done by checking the timer-generated interrupts used by the firmware (one interrupt in PROC1 and two in PROC2). One of two codes is returned to the FIFO:

$305_8$ – DHV11 running
$307_8$ – DHV11 defective.

A single diagnostic word is returned via the FIFO. The low byte contains the diagnostic code. In the high byte, OVERRUN.ERR, FRAME.ERR, and PARITY.ERR are all set to indicate that bits<7:0> do not hold a normal character. The line number (RBUF<11:8>) = 0.

If PROC2 stops running, PROC1 will set DIAG.FAIL and will turn off the LED. The LED will stay off, even if the fault clears. If PROC1 stops running, PROC2 will load a 307 code into the FIFO.

Normally, the BMP will only report when it finds an error. However, if the program suspects that the DHV11 is not working it can get a BMP report at any time. This is done by setting DIAG (LPR<2:1>) of any channel to 01. The line number returned is that of the LPR used to request the report.

On completion of the check, the BMP will clear the 01 code in DIAG. The host should not write to the LPR of that channel until DIAG has been cleared.

## 3.4 PROGRAMMING EXAMPLES

This section contains programming examples. They are not given as the only method of driving the option. These programs are not guaranteed or supported.

### 3.4.1 Resetting the DHV11

In the following example:

- DIAG is a routine to check the diagnostic codes. It returns with CARRY set if it detects an error code (see Section 3.3.10).

- The loop at 1$ can take up to 2.5 seconds, so the programmer could poll via a timer or poll at interrupt level zero.

```
;
; A ROUTINE TO RESET THE DHV11 AND CHECK THAT IT IS FUNCTIONING
; CORRECTLY.
;
;
; NOTE: A SOPHISTICATED PROGRAM WOULD TIME OUT AFTER 3 SECONDS
;       IF THE RESET DID NOT COMPLETE.
;

DHVRES::
        MOV     #40,@#DHVCSR            ; SET MASTER.RESET AND
                                        ; CLEAR INTERRUPT ENABLES.
1$:     BIT     #40,@#DHVCSR            ; WAIT FOR MASTER.RESET TO
        BNE     1$                      ; CLEAR.
        BIT     #20000,@#DHVCSR         ; CHECK THE DIAGNOSTICS FAIL
        BNE     DIAGER                  ; BIT.
                                        ; NOTE: TEST INSTRUCTION IS
                                        ;       OK BECAUSE THERE ARE
                                        ;       NO TX.ACTS PENDING.
        MOV     #8.,R5                  ; PROCESS THE EIGHT SELF
                                        ; TEST CODES.
2$:     MOV     @#RBUFF,R0              ; GET NEXT DIAGNOSTIC CODE.
        JSR     PC,DIAG                 ; PROCESS IT.
        BCS     DIAGER                  ; CARRY SET - MUST HAVE BEEN
                                        ; AN ERROR.
        SOB     R5,2$                   ; GO BACK FOR NEXT CODE.

        RTS     PC                      ; RETURN - CARD IS RESET.

;
; DHV11 HAS FAILED TO RESET PROPERLY, SO HALT AND WAIT FOR
; THE FIELD SERVICE ENGINEER.
;

DIAGER: HALT
        BR      DIAGER
```

### 3.4.2 Configuration

This routine sets the characteristics of channel 1 as follows:

1. Transmit and receive at 300 bits/s
2. Seven data bits with even parity and one stop bit
3. Transmitters and receivers enabled
4. No modem control
5. No automatic flow control.

```
;
; SET CHARACTERISTICS OF CHANNEL 1 TO THE FOLLOWING STATE:-
;
;
;       1)      TRANSMIT AND RECEIVE AT 300 B.P.S.
;
;       2)      7 DATA BITS WITH EVEN PARITY AND ONE STOP BIT.
;
;       3)      TRANSMITTERS AND RECEIVERS ENABLED.
;
;       4)      NO MODEM CONTROL.
;
;       5)      NO AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL.
;
```

```
SETUP::
        MOV     #1,@#DHVCSR             ; SELECT THE LINE WE'RE
                                        ; INTERESTED IN.
        MOV     #052560,@#LPR           ; DATA RATE, STOP BITS,
                                        ; PARITY AND LENGTH
        MOV     #4,@#LNCTRL             ; ENABLE THE RECEIVER.
        MOVB    #200,@#TBFAD2+1         ; ENABLE THE TRANSMITTER.

        RTS     PC                      ; RETURN - CHANNEL 1 DONE.
```

### 3.4.3 Transmitting

**3.4.3.1 Single Character Programmed Transfer** – This is a program to send a message on channel 1. The message (MESS) is an ASCII string with a null character as terminator.

Polling is used but a TX.ACTION interrupt could also be used.

This program would function on a DHV11 with only this channel active. Otherwise it would lose TX.ACTION reports of other channels. However, a program to control all channels would be too big to use as an example.

```
;
; A ROUTINE TO WRITE A MESSAGE TO CHANNEL 1 USING SINGLE CHARACTER
; MODE.
;
SINGOT::
        MOV     #1,@#DHVCSR             ; POINT TO CHANNEL WE WISH
                                        ; TO TALK TO.
        MOV     #MESS,R0                ; POINT TO MESSAGE.
1$:
        MOVB    (R0)+,@#TXCHAR          ; MOVE CHARACTER TO TRANSMIT BUFFER
        BEQ     3$                      ; GO RETURN IF ALL CHARACTERS GONE.
        MOVB    #200,@#TXCHAR+1         ; SET DATA VALID BIT TO START.
2$:
        MOV     @#DHVCSR,R1             ; WAIT FOR TX.ACT
        BPL     2$

        BIC     #170377,R1              ; ISOLATE CHANNEL NUMBER.
        CMP     #000400,R1
        BNE     2$                      ; IGNORE THE TX.ACT IF ITS
                                        ; NOT OURS (SHOULDN'T HAPPEN)
        BR      1$                      ; GO BACK FOR NEXT CHARACTER.

3$:
        RTS     PC                      ; MESSAGE SENT.

MESS:   .ASCIZ  /A SINGLE CHARACTER MESSAGE FOR CHANNEL 1/
        .EVEN
```

### 3.4.3.2 DMA Transfer –

```
;
; THIS PROGRAM SENDS A MESSAGE OUT ON EACH LINE OF THE DHV11 AND
; HALTS THE MACHINE WHEN ALL TRANSMISSIONS HAVE COMPLETED.
;
; THE MESSAGES ARE TRANSMITTED USING DMA MODE, AND INTERRUPTS ARE
; USED TO SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPLETION.
;

DMAINT::
        MOV     #TXINT,@#TXVECT         ; SET UP THE INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,@#TXPSW            ; INTERRUPT PRIORITY FOUR.

        MOV     #8.,R0                  ; EIGHT LINES TO START.
        CLR     R1                      ; START AT LINE ZERO.
1$:
        MOVB    R1,@#DHVCSR             ; SELECT THE REGISTER BANK.
        MOV     #DMASIZ,@#TBFCNT        ; SET LENGTH OF MESSAGE.
        MOV     #DMAMES,@#TBFAD1        ; SET LOWER 16 ADDRESS BITS.
        MOV     #100200,@#TBFAD2        ; START DMA WITH TRANSMITTER
                                        ; ENABLED (ASSUME UPPER ADDRESS
                                        ; BITS ARE ZERO).
        INC     R1                      ; POINT TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$                   ; REPEAT FOR ALL LINES.

        CLR     R5                      ; R5 IS USED BY INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
        MOVB    #100,@#DHVCSR+1         ; ENABLE TRANSMITTER INTERRUPTS.
2$:
        CMP     #8.,R5                  ; WAIT FOR ALL LINES TO FINISH.
        BNE     2$
3$:
        HALT                            ; ALL DONE, SO STOP.
        BR      3$

;
; TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;
; R5 IS INCREMENTED AS EACH LINE COMPLETES.
;

TXINT::
        MOV     @#DHVCSR,R0             ; GET LINE NUMBER OF FINISHED LINE.
        BIT     #10000,R0               ; CHECK FOR DMA FAILURE.
        BNE     4$                      ; GO HALT - MEMORY PROBLEM.

        INC     R5                      ; FLAG THAT ANOTHER LINE HAS FINISHED.
        RTI
4$:
        HALT                            ; MEMORY PROBLEM
        BR      4$

DMAMES: .ASCII  <15><12><7><7><7>/SYSTEM CLOSING DOWN NOW/
DMASIZ  =       .-DMAMES
        .EVEN
```

### 3.4.3.3 Aborting a DMA Transfer –

```
;
; THIS ROUTINE IS CALLED TO ABORT A DMA TRANSFER IN PROGRESS ON A
; SPECIFIED LINE.  THIS ROUTINE MAKES THE (RATHER RASH) ASSUMPTION
; THAT THERE ARE NO OTHER TRANSFERS IN PROGRESS.
;
; ON ENTRY, R0 CONTAINS THE NUMBER OF THE LINE TO BE ABORTED.
;

DMABRT::
        MOV     R0,@#DHVCSR             ; POINT TO THE CHANNEL TO BE ABORTED.
        BIS     #1,@#LNCTRL             ; SET THE DMA ABORT BIT.
1$:
        MOV     @#DHVCSR,R1             ; WAIT FOR THE TX.ACT
        BPL     1$                      ; CHECK ITS OUR LINE.
        SWAB    R1
        BIC     #177760,R1
        CMP     R0,R1
        BNE     1$                      ; IGNORE IT IF ITS NOT (OUR
                                        ; ASSUMPTION WAS WRONG!)

        BIC     #1,@#LNCTRL             ; CLEAR DOWN THE ABORT FLAG
                                        ; FOR NEXT TIME.

        RTS     PC                      ; BUFFER COMPLETELY ABORTED,
                                        ; THE DMA REGISTERS REFLECT
                                        ; WHERE THE DHV11 GOT TO.
```

### 3.4.4 Receiving

```
;
; THIS ROUTINE PROCESSES RECEIVED CHARACTERS UNDER INTERRUPT CONTROL.
; IF AN XOFF IS RECEIVED, THE TRANSMITTER FOR THAT CHANNEL IS TURNED
; OFF. IF AN XON IS RECEIVED, THE TRANSMITTER IS TURNED BACK ON.  ALL
; OTHER CHARACTERS ARE IGNORED.
;
; THIS IS JUST AN EXAMPLE, A BETTER WAY TO PERFORM FLOW CONTROL IS TO
; USE THE AUTOMATIC CAPABILITIES OF THE DHV11.
;

RXAUTO::
        MOV     #RXINT,@#RXVECT         ; SET UP THE INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,@#RXPSW            ; PRIORITY LEVEL FOUR.

        MOV     #8.,R0                  ; ENABLE ALL THE RECEIVERS,
        CLR     R1                      ; STARTING AT CHANNEL ZERO,
1$:
        MOVB    R1,@#DHVCSR             ; SELECT THE LINE.
        BIS     #4,@#LNCTRL             ; ENABLE THIS RECEIVER.
        INC     R1                      ; SET POINTER TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$

        MOVB    #100,@#DHVCSR           ; ENABLE THE RECEIVER INTERRUPTS.

        RTS     PC                      ; RETURN - INTERRUPTS DO THE RESET.

;
; INTERRUPT ROUTINE TO DO THE MAIN TASK.
;
```

```
RXINT::
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE CALLERS REGISTERS.
RXNXTC:
        MOV     @#RBUFF,R0              ; GET THE CHARACTER.
        BPL     RXIEND                  ; IF NO DATA VALID, WE'VE FINISHED.
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; CHECK FOR ERRORS, MODEM AND
        BIC     #107777,(SP)+           ; DIAGNOSTICS CODES.
        BNE     RXNXTC                  ;  - JUST IGNORE THEM.

        BIC     #170200,R0              ; REMOVE UNNECESSARY BITS.
        SWAB    R0                      ; POINT TO THIS CHARACTERS LINE.
        BIS     #100,R0                 ; (ADD THE INTERRUPT ENABLE BIT.)
        MOVB    R0,@#DHVCSR
        SWAB    R0                      ; PUT CHARACTER BACK IN LOWER BYTE.
        CMPB    #21,R0                  ; WAS IT AN "XON"?
        BNE     1$                      ; NO - GO CHECK FOR AN "XOFF"

        BISB    #200,@#TBFAD2+1         ; ENABLE THE TRANSMITTER.
        BR      RXNXTC                  ; GO CHECK FOR MORE CHARACTERS.
1$:
        CMPB    #23,R0                  ; WAS IT AN "XOFF"?
        BNE     RXNXTC                  ; NO - GO CHECK FOR MORE CHARACTERS.

        BICB    #200,@#TBFAD2+1         ; DISABLE THE TRANSMITTER.
        BR      RXNXTC                  ; GO CHECK FOR MORE CHARACTERS.

RXIEND:
        MOV     (SP)+,R0                ; RESTORE THE DESTROYED REGISTER.
        RTI
```

### 3.4.5 Auto X-ON and X-OFF

```
;
; THIS PROGRAM SENDS A MESSAGE OUT ON EACH LINE OF THE DHV11 AND
; HALTS THE MACHINE WHEN ALL TRANSMISSIONS HAVE COMPLETED.
;
; THE MESSAGES ARE TRANSMITTED USING DMA MODE, AND INTERRUPTS ARE
; USED TO SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPLETION.
;
; AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL IS ENABLED ON THE OUTGOING DATA.
;
TXAUTO::
        MOV     #ATOINT,@#TXVECT        ; SET UP THE INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,@#TXPSW            ; INTERRUPT PRIORITY FOUR.

        MOV     #8.,R0                  ; EIGHT LINES TO START.
        CLR     R1                      ; START AT LINE ZERO.
1$:
        MOVB    R1,@#DHVCSR             ; SELECT THE REGISTER BANK.
        BIS     #24,@#LNCTRL            ; ENABLE AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL
                                        ; ON THE TRANSMITTED DATA.
        MOV     #AUTOSZ,@#TBFCNT        ; SET LENGTH OF MESSAGE.
        MOV     #AUTOMS,@#TBFAD1        ; SET LOWER 16 ADDRESS BITS.
        MOV     #100200,@#TBFAD2        ; START DMA WITH TRANSMITTER
                                        ; ENABLED (ASSUME UPPER ADDRESS
                                        ; BITS ARE ZERO).
        INC     R1                      ; POINT TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$                   ; REPEAT FOR ALL LINES.

        CLR     R5                      ; R5 IS USED BY INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
        MOVB    #100,@#DHVCSR+1         ; ENABLE TRANSMITTER INTERRUPTS.
```

```
2$:
        CMP     #8.,R5                  ; WAIT FOR ALL LINES TO FINISH.
        BNE     2$
3$:                                     ; ALL DONE, SO STOP.
        HALT
        BR      3$

;
; TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;
; R5 IS INCREMENTED AS EACH LINE COMPLETES.
;

ATOINT::
        MOV     @#DHVCSR,R0             ; GET LINE NUMBER OF FINISHED LINE.
        BIT     #10000,R0               ; CHECK FOR DMA FAILURE.
        BNE     4$                      ; GO HALT - MEMORY PROBLEM.

        INC     R5                      ; FLAG THAT ANOTHER LINE HAS FINISHED.
        RTI
4$:
        HALT                            ; MEMORY PROBLEM
        BR      4$

AUTOMS: .ASCII  <15><12><7><7><7>/SYSTEM CLOSING DOWN NOW/
AUTOSZ  =       .-AUTOMS
        .EVEN
```

### 3.4.6 Checking Diagnostic Codes

```
;
; THIS ROUTINE CHECKS THE DIAGNOSTICS CODES RETURNED FROM THE DHV11.
;
; ON ENTRY, R0 CONTAINS THE CHARACTER RECEIVED FROM THE DHV11.
;
; ON EXIT, THE CARRY BIT WILL BE CLEAR FOR SUCCESS, SET FOR FAILURE.
;

DIAG::
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE THE CODE FOR LATER.

        BIC     #107776,R0              ; CHECK THAT IT'S A DIAG. CODE.
        CMP     #070001,R0
        BNE     DIAGEX                  ; IF NOT, JUST EXIT NORMALLY.

        MOV     (SP),R0                 ; GET THE CODE BACK.

        BITB    #200,R0                 ; CHECK FOR ROM VERSION NUMBER.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
        CMPB    #201,R0                 ; SELF TEST NULL CODE.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
        CMPB    #203,R0                 ; SELF TEST SKIPPED CODE.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
        CMPB    #305,R0                 ; DHV RUNNING CODE.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
                                        ; ALL THE REST ARE ERROR CODES.

        SEC                             ; AN ERROR CODE WAS RECEIVED, SO
        BR      DIAGXX                  ; SET THE CARRY FLAG.
```

```
DIAGEX:
        CLC                             ; EVERYTHING OK, SO CLEAR CARRY.
DIAGXX:
        MOV     (SP)+,R0                ; RESTORE THE CHARACTER/INFO.
        RTS     PC
```

### 3.4.7 Modem Control

```
;
; THIS ROUTINE WILL ANSWER A MODEM CALL, PRINT OUT A MESSAGE AND
; HANG UP THE PHONE.
;
; DMA MODE IS USED. IF SINGLED CHARACTER MODE WERE USED, THEN
; THE MESSAGE WOULD NEED TO BE PADDED OUT WITH THREE NULLS DUE
; TO INTERNAL BUFFERING OF THE DHV11.
;

MODEM::
        MOV     #8.,R0                  ; SET UP ALL CHANNELS FOR MODEMS.
        CLR     R1
1$
        MOVB    R1,@#DHVCSR             ; POINT TO CHANNEL TO BE SET UP.
        MOVB    #125,@#LPR+1            ; 300 BPS DATA RATE.
        MOV     #400,@#LNCTRL           ; SET MODEM  DISABLE RECEIVER.
        INC     R1                      ; POINT TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$                   ; SET UP ALL CHANNELS.

        MOV     #MRXINT,@#RXVECT        ; SET UP INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,@#RXPSW            ; (INTERRUPT LEVEL FOUR)
        MOV     #MTXINT,@#TXVECT
        MOV     #200,@#TXPSW
        MOV     #40100,@#DHVCSR         ; ENABLE THE INTERRUPTS.
2$
        BR      2$                      ; LET INTERRUPT ROUTINES DO EVERYTHING

;
; TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;

MTXINT:
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE THE REGISTER WE USE.
        MOV     @#DHVCSR,R0             ; GET INTERRUPTING LINE NUMBER.
        SWAB    R0                      ; SELECT THIS CHANNELS REGISTERS.
        BIC     #177760,R0
        BIS     #100,R0                 ; (RETAIN INTERRUPT ENABLE)
        MOVB    R0,@#DHVCSR
        MOV     #400,@#LNCTRL           ; DROP DTR, RTS AND CLEAR ABORT.
        MOV     (SP)+,R0                ; RESTORE THE REGISTER WE USED.
        RTI
```

```
;
; RECEIVER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;
MRXINT::
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE THE REGISTER WE USE.
MRXLOP:
        MOV     @#RBUFF,R0              ; GET INTERRUPTING LINE.
        BPL     MRXEND                  ; EXIT IF ALL DONE.
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE FOR LATER USE.
        BIC     #107776,R0              ; TEST FOR MODEM INFO.
        CMP     #070000,R0
        BNE     MRXNXT                  ; SKIP IF NOT.
        MOV     (SP),R0                 ; SELECT REGISTERS FOR THIS LINE.
        SWAB    R0
        BIC     #177760,R0
        BIS     #100,R0                 ; (RETAIN INTERRUPT ENABLE)
        MOVB    R0,@#DHVCSR

        MOV     (SP),R0                 ; CHECK FOR READY FOR TRANSMISSION.
        BIC     #177547,R0
        CMP     #230,R0
        BNE     1$                      ; DSR, DCD & CTS NOT SET, TRY START.
        BIC     #1,@#LNCTRL             ; CLEAR DOWN ABORT BIT (IN CASE WE
                                        ; SET IT WITHOUT A DMA IN PROGRESS).
        MOVB    #23,@#LNCTRL+1          ; ASSERT RTS IN CASE CTS AND DSR
                                        ; WERE ASSERTED AT THE SAME TIME.
        MOV     #NOSYSZ,@#TBFCNT        ; OUTPUT MESSAGE.
        MOV     #NOSYS,@#TBFAD1         ; (TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE
        MOV     #100200,@#TBFAD2        ;  CLEARS DOWN THE CALL.)
        BR      MRXNXT                  ; GO LOOK FOR MORE.
1$:
        BIT     #200,R0                 ; CHECK FOR DSR.
        BEQ     2$                      ; NO - GO CHECK FOR NEW CALL.
        MOVB    #23,@#LNCTRL+1          ; ASSERT RTS.
        BR      MRXNXT                  ; GO LOOK FOR MORE.
2$:
        BIT     #40,(SP)                ; CHECK FOR RING INDICATOR.
        BEQ     3$                      ; NO - GO CLOSEDOWN CALL.
        MOVB    #3,@#LNCTRL+1           ; ASSERT DTR.
        BR      MRXNXT                  ; GO LOOK FOR MORE.
3$:
        BISB    #1,@#LNCTRL             ; ABORT ANY CURRENT DMA TRANSFERS.
        MOVB    #1,@#LNCTRL+1           ; DROP MODEM SIGNALS.
MRXNXT:
        TST     (SP)+                   ; REMOVE SIGNALS FROM THE STACK.
        BR      MRXLOP                  ; GO ROUND AGAIN.
MRXEND:
        MOV     (SP)+,R0                ; RESTORE THE REGISTER WE USED.
        RTI

NOSYS:  .ASCII  <15><12><7><7><7>/SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE, PLEASE TRY LATER/
NOSYSZ  =       .-NOSYS
        .EVEN
```

# CHAPTER 4
# TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

## 4.1 SCOPE

This chapter describes:

- Operation of the main hardware blocks
- Data flow
- Control of address and data
- Operation of the microcomputers
- Use and control of the RAM
- Internal diagnostics.

The chapter starts with a description at block diagram level. This is followed by a section on data flow, and then specific areas are described in more detail. A basic description of the DHV11's ROM-based diagnostics completes the chapter.

It is assumed that the reader has read Chapter 3, Sections 1, 2, and 3 of this document.

Refer to Figure 4-1 throughout this description.

## 4.2 Q-BUS INTERFACE

The simplified block of the Q-bus interface in Figure 1-5 is expanded in Figure 4-1. The interface is made up of all the components between the external and internal buses.

DC005 bus transceivers control the address and data lines BDAL<17:0> and BAL<21:18>. Bus transceivers also:

1. Recognize device addresses
2. Provide vectors during interrupt sequences.

When (1) the DHV11 is bus slave, access to the DHV11 is allowed when BBS7 is asserted (I/O operation) and BDAL<12:4> 'matches' the address on the module address switches. By this means, the DHV11 recognizes a valid device register address. Transceiver direction is controlled by BDIN and BDOUT, which indirectly generate XMIT.H and REC.H. The 'match' condition generates the signal MATCH.

In an interrupt acknowledge cycle (2), the DC003 interrupt IC responds to BIAKI. The signal VECTOR enables the vector switches onto the BDAL lines via the DC005s. VECT.2.H is the low bit of the vector address. It identifies a receive (0) or transmit (1) interrupt vector. VECTOR also generates BRPLY via DC004 protocol logic.

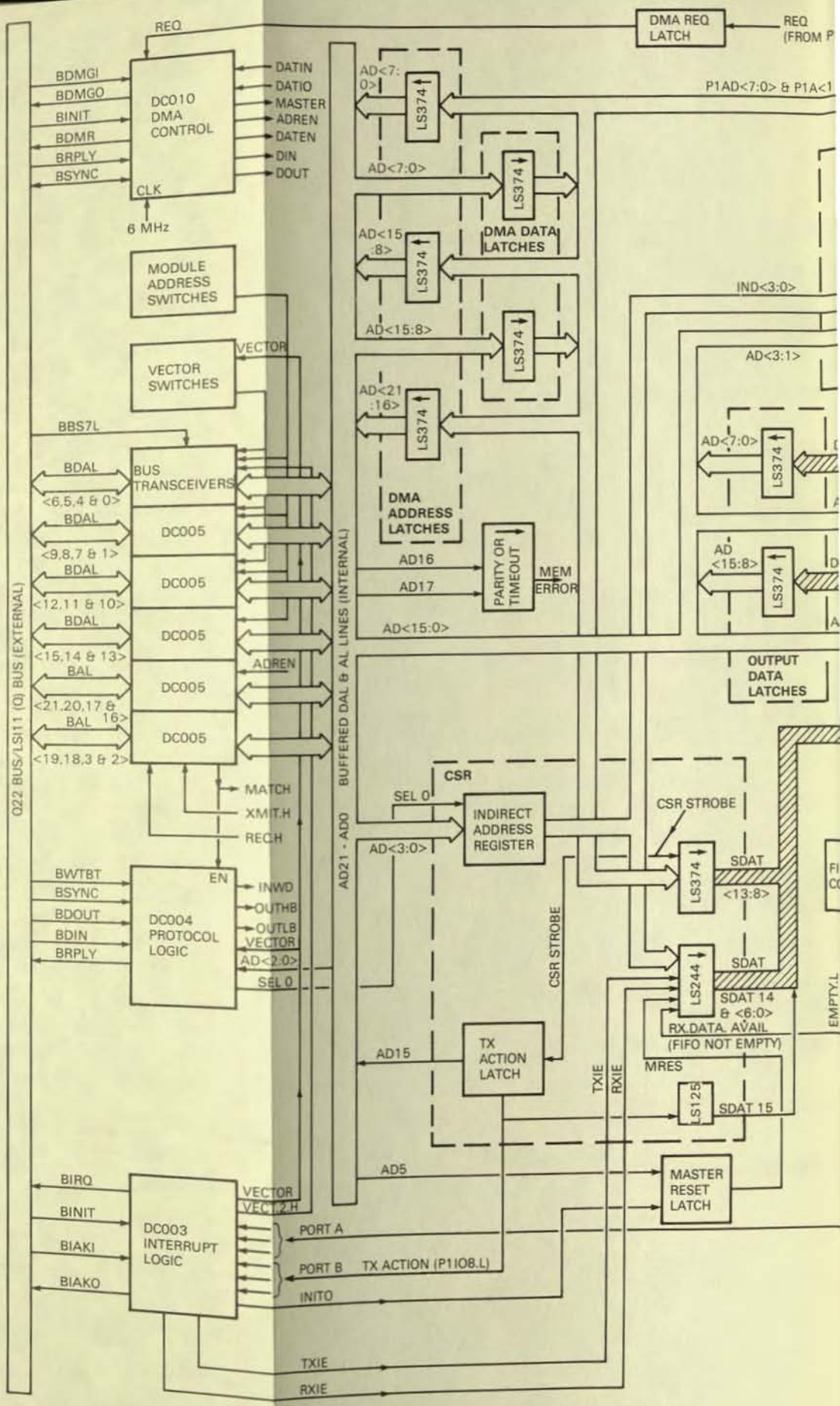
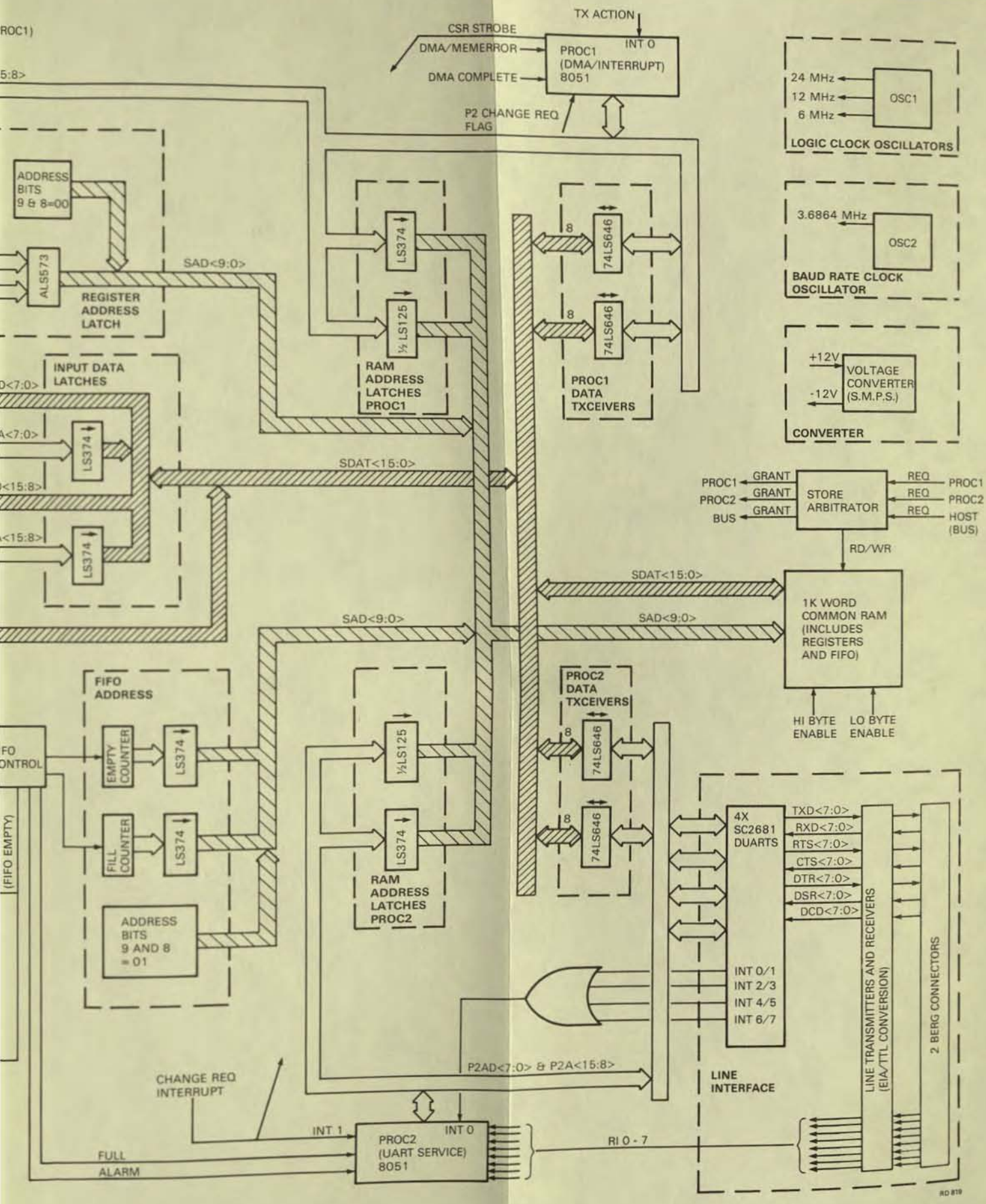



Figure 4-1 DHV11 Block Diagram


ROC1)
5:8>
TX ACTION
CSR STROBE
DMA/MEMERROR
DMA COMPLETE
PROC1
(DMA/INTERRUPT)
8051
INT 0
P2 CHANGE REQ
FLAG
24 MHz
12 MHz
6 MHz
OSC1
LOGIC CLOCK OSCILLATORS
3.6864 MHz
OSC2
BAUD RATE CLOCK
OSCILLATOR
+12V
-12V
VOLTAGE
CONVERTER
(S.M.P.S.)
CONVERTER
ADDRESS
BITS
9 & 8=00
AL5573
REGISTER
ADDRESS
LATCH
SAD<9:0>
LS374
½ LS125
RAM
ADDRESS
LATCHES
PROC1
74LS646
PROC1
DATA
TXCEIVERS
INPUT DATA
LATCHES
SDAT<15:0>
PROC1 GRANT
PROC2 GRANT
BUS GRANT
STORE
ARBITRATOR
REQ PROC1
REQ PROC2
REQ HOST
(BUS)
RD/WR
1K WORD
COMMON RAM
(INCLUDES
REGISTERS
AND FIFO)
HI BYTE
ENABLE
LO BYTE
ENABLE
FIFO
ADDRESS
EMPTY
COUNTER
FILL
COUNTER
ADDRESS
BITS
9 AND 8
= 01
PROC2
DATA
TXCEIVERS
4X
SC2681
DUARTS
TXD<7:0>
RXD<7:0>
RTS<7:0>
CTS<7:0>
DTR<7:0>
DSR<7:0>
DCD<7:0>
INT 0/1
INT 2/3
INT 4/5
INT 6/7
LINE TRANSMITTERS AND RECEIVERS
(EIA/TTL CONVERSION)
2 BERG CONNECTORS
P2AD<7:0> & P2A<15:8>
LINE
INTERFACE
CHANGE REQ
INTERRUPT
INT 1
INT 0
PROC2
(UART SERVICE)
8051
FULL
ALARM
RI 0 - 7

```
;
; RECEIVER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;
MRXINT::
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE THE REGISTER WE USE.
MRXLOP:
        MOV     @#RBUFF,R0              ; GET INTERRUPTING LINE.
        BPL     MRXEND                  ; EXIT IF ALL DONE.
        MOV     R0,-(SP)                ; SAVE FOR LATER USE.
        BIC     #107776,R0              ; TEST FOR MODEM INFO.
        CMP     #070000,R0
        BNE     MRXNXT                  ; SKIP IF NOT.
        MOV     (SP),R0                 ; SELECT REGISTERS FOR THIS LINE.
        SWAB    R0
        BIC     #177760,R0
        BIS     #100,R0                 ; (RETAIN INTERRUPT ENABLE)
        MOVB    R0,@#DHVCSR

        MOV     (SP),R0                 ; CHECK FOR READY FOR TRANSMISSION.
        BIC     #177547,R0
        CMP     #230,R0
        BNE     1$                      ; DSR, DCD & CTS NOT SET, TRY START.
        BIC     #1,@#LNCTRL             ; CLEAR DOWN ABORT BIT (IN CASE WE
                                        ; SET IT WITHOUT A DMA IN PROGRESS).
        MOVB    #23,@#LNCTRL+1          ; ASSERT RTS IN CASE CTS AND DSR
                                        ; WERE ASSERTED AT THE SAME TIME.
        MOV     #NOSYSZ,@#TBFCNT        ; OUTPUT MESSAGE.
        MOV     #NOSYS,@#TBFAD1         ; (TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE
        MOV     #100200,@#TBFAD2        ;  CLEARS DOWN THE CALL.)
        BR      MRXNXT                  ; GO LOOK FOR MORE.
1$:
        BIT     #200,R0                 ; CHECK FOR DSR.
        BEQ     2$                      ; NO - GO CHECK FOR NEW CALL.
        MOVB    #23,@#LNCTRL+1          ; ASSERT RTS.
        BR      MRXNXT                  ; GO LOOK FOR MORE.
2$:
        BIT     #40,(SP)                ; CHECK FOR RING INDICATOR.
        BEQ     3$                      ; NO - GO CLOSEDOWN CALL.
        MOVB    #3,@#LNCTRL+1           ; ASSERT DTR.
        BR      MRXNXT                  ; GO LOOK FOR MORE.
3$:
        BISB    #1,@#LNCTRL             ; ABORT ANY CURRENT DMA TRANSFERS.
        MOVB    #1,@#LNCTRL+1           ; DROP MODEM SIGNALS.
MRXNXT:
        TST     (SP)+                   ; REMOVE SIGNALS FROM THE STACK.
        BR      MRXLOP                  ; GO ROUND AGAIN.
MRXEND:
        MOV     (SP)+,R0                ; RESTORE THE REGISTER WE USED.
        RTI

NOSYS:  .ASCII  <15><12><7><7><7>/SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE, PLEASE TRY LATER/
NOSYSZ  =       .-NOSYS
        .EVEN
```

# CHAPTER 4
# TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

## 4.1 SCOPE

This chapter describes:

- Operation of the main hardware blocks
- Data flow
- Control of address and data
- Operation of the microcomputers
- Use and control of the RAM
- Internal diagnostics.

The chapter starts with a description at block diagram level. This is followed by a section on data flow, and then specific areas are described in more detail. A basic description of the DHV11's ROM-based diagnostics completes the chapter.

It is assumed that the reader has read Chapter 3, Sections 1, 2, and 3 of this document.

Refer to Figure 4-1 throughout this description.

## 4.2 Q-BUS INTERFACE

The simplified block of the Q-bus interface in Figure 1-5 is expanded in Figure 4-1. The interface is made up of all the components between the external and internal buses.

DC005 bus transceivers control the address and data lines BDAL<17:0> and BAL<21:18>. Bus transceivers also:

1. Recognize device addresses
2. Provide vectors during interrupt sequences.

When (1) the DHV11 is bus slave, access to the DHV11 is allowed when BBS7 is asserted (I/O operation) and BDAL<12:4> 'matches' the address on the module address switches. By this means, the DHV11 recognizes a valid device register address. Transceiver direction is controlled by BDIN and BDOUT, which indirectly generate XMIT.H and REC.H. The 'match' condition generates the signal MATCH.

In an interrupt acknowledge cycle (2), the DC003 interrupt IC responds to BIAKI. The signal VECTOR enables the vector switches onto the BDAL lines via the DC005s. VECT.2.H is the low bit of the vector address. It identifies a receive (0) or transmit (1) interrupt vector. VECTOR also generates BRPLY via DC004 protocol logic.

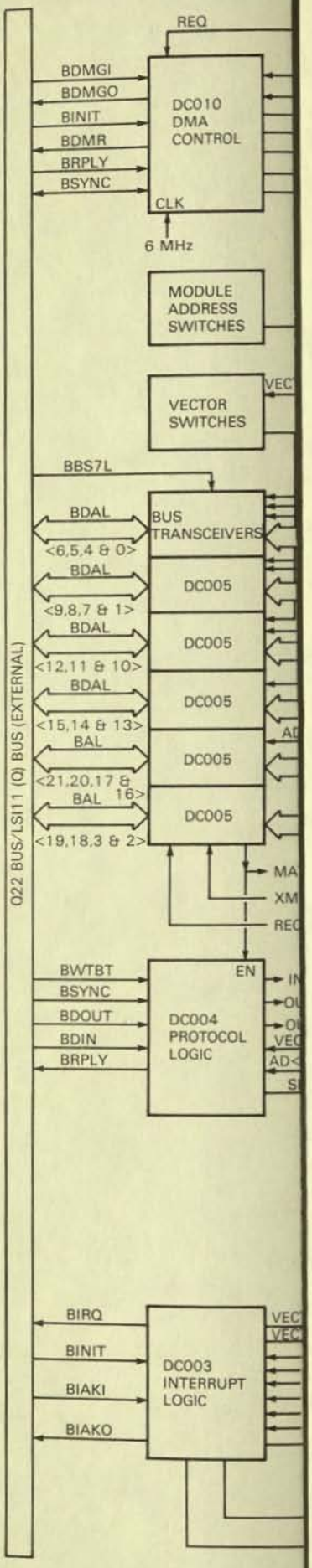



Figure 4-1 DHV11 Block

When the bus transceivers recognize a valid device register address, the DC004 is enabled. MATCH allows BDIN or BDOUT to generate BRPLY. The external bus signals are decoded by the DC004 which generates the following as necessary:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| INWD | – | Word transfer, DHV11 to the bus master |
| OUTLB | – | Low byte (AD<7:0>) transfer, bus master to DHV11 |
| OUTHB | – | High byte (AD<15:8>) transfer, bus master to DHV11. |

Both OUTHB and OUTLB are generated to transfer a word to DHV11.

The DC004 also decodes the low address lines to generate a number of register select (SEL) signals. SEL0 is the signal which selects the CSR.

If a condition which needs interrupt service occurs, the DC003 interrupt logic interrupts the host (BIRQ). When the acknowledge signal (BIAKI) is returned, VECTOR and VECT.2 are generated as previously described. BIAKO provides bus grant continuity.

BINIT is the bus initialize signal. It resets the DHV11 to a known state.

The DC010 is a DMA controller used by the DHV11 to perform a DMA transfer. A hardware DMA request enables the IC, which then makes a request via BDMR (bus DMA request) for control of the bus. The DC010 provides the appropriate bus-control signals to transfer a word of data to DHV11. After each transfer the bus is released. Another DMA request is needed for the transfer of the next word. DMA data does not pass through the DC010.

Figures 4-2 and 4-3 show the DATI (INWD), DATOB (OUTLB or OUTHB), and DATO (OUTLB and OUTHB) handshake sequences. In each case the DHV11 is bus slave.

Figure 4-4 shows an interrupt request/acknowledge sequence which requests the host processor to read an interrupt vector from the DHV11. This sequence is followed by a DATI operation which transfers the vector.

In Figure 4-5, a DMA request/grant sequence is shown. Note that when bus grant (BDMGO) is received, the DC010 becomes bus master. It generates the signals for an INWD transfer from system memory to the DMA data latches.

**NOTE**

**A DATIO or DATIOB sequence is made up of a DATI followed by DATO or DATOB.**

**NOTE**

**On Q-bus systems, BDAL<17:16> are used to provide data parity information to the bus master. To prevent the DHV11 from generating false parity information, AD<17:16> are only enabled onto the BDALs when the DHV11 is bus master. ADREN from the DMA controller performs the enable function.**

A description of DC003, DC004, DC005, and DC010 is included in Appendix A.

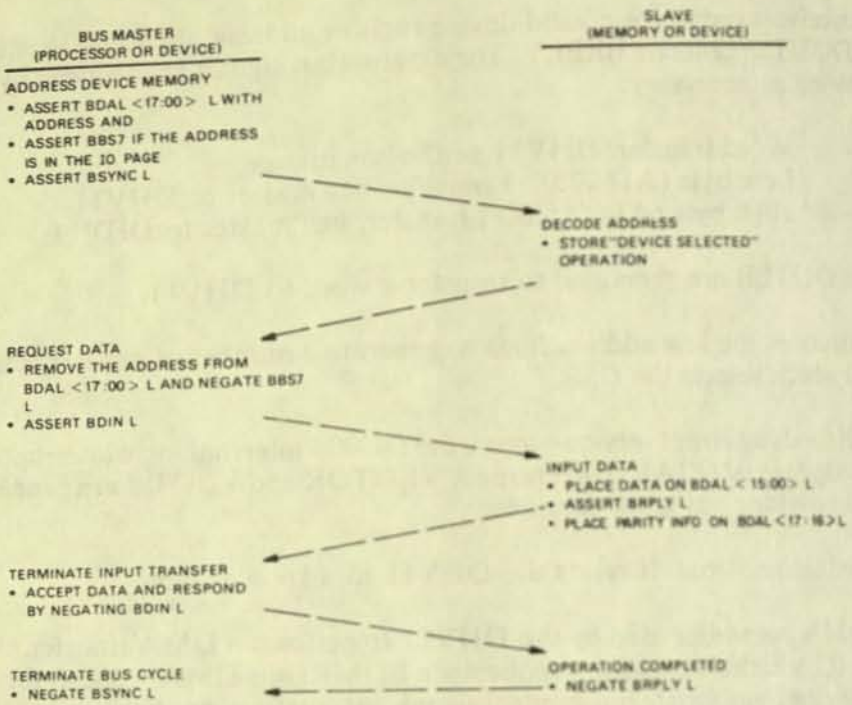



Figure 4-2 DATI Bus Cycle

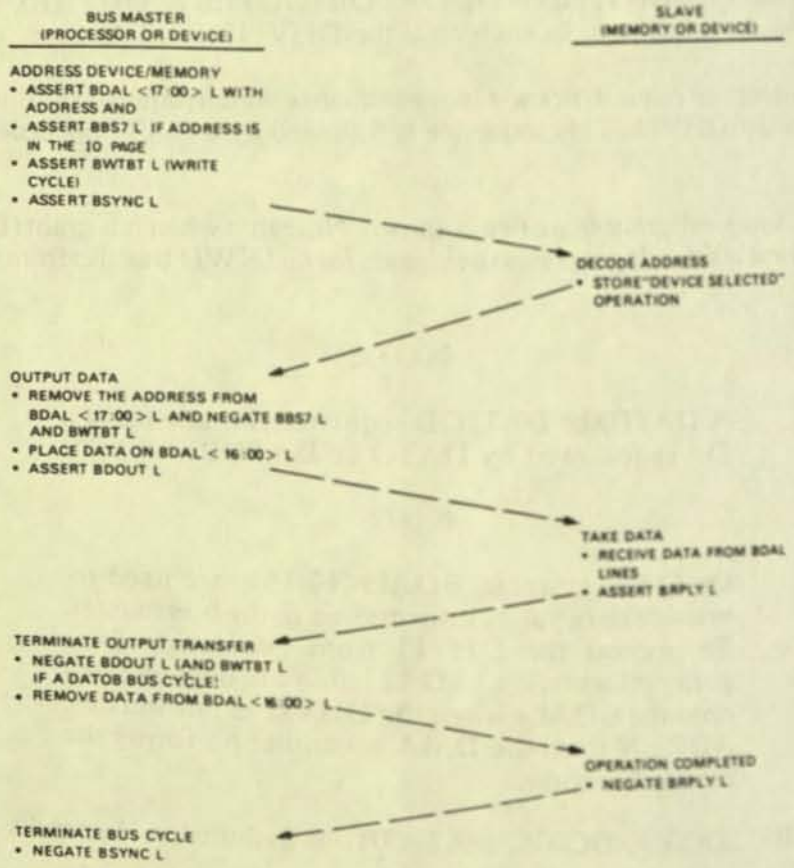



Figure 4-3 DATO or DATOB Bus Cycle

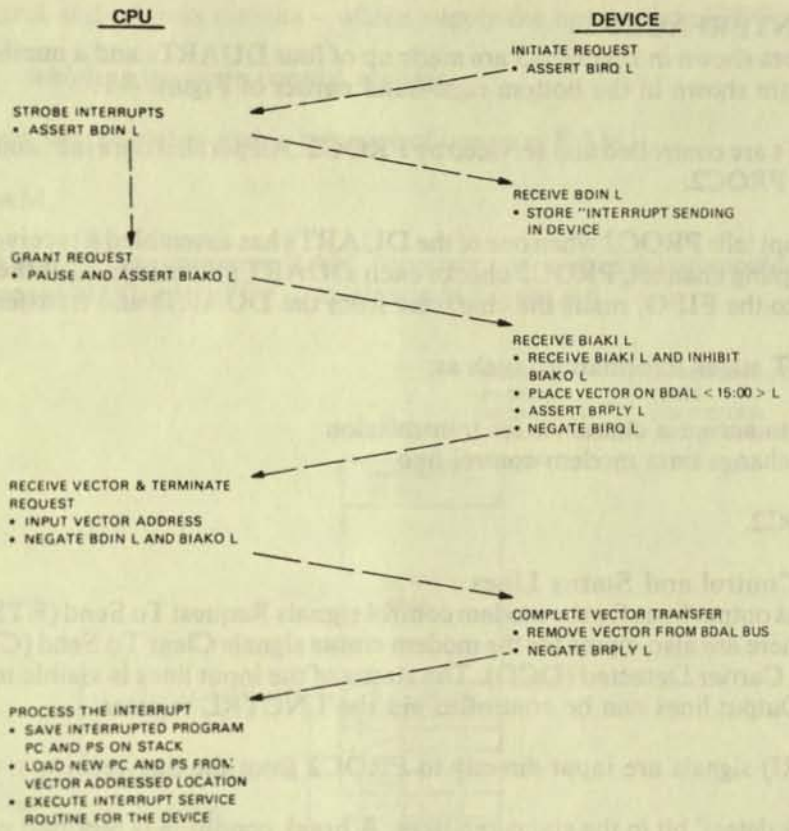



Figure 4-4 Interrupt Request/Acknowledge Sequence

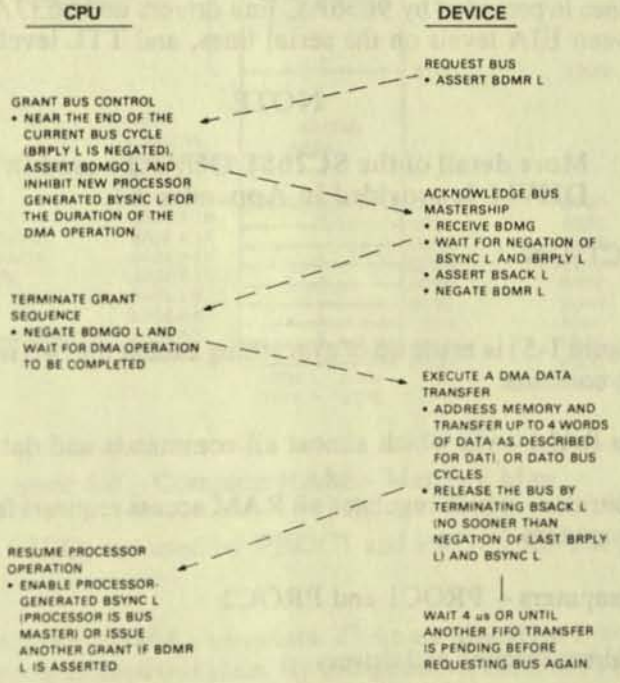



Figure 4-5 DMA Request/Grant Sequence

## 4.3 SERIAL INTERFACES

The serial interfaces shown in Figure 1-5 are made up of four DUARTs and a number of line drivers and receivers. These are shown in the bottom right-hand corner of Figure 4-1.

The four DUARTs are controlled and serviced by PROC2. All parallel data into and out of the DUARTs is transferred via PROC2.

A common interrupt tells PROC2 when one of the DUARTs has assembled a received character. It then constructs a vector to find the interrupting channel, PROC2 checks each DUART status in turn. It then constructs the character byte, transfers it to the FIFO, reads the character from the DUART, and transfers that to the FIFO.

All other DUART status information, such as:

- Ready to accept a character for transmission
- Status change on a modem control line

is polled by PROC2.

### 4.3.1 Modem Control and Status Lines

Each DUART has output lines for the modem control signals Request To Send (RTS) and Data Terminal Ready (DTR). There are also inputs for the modem status signals Clear To Send (CTS), Data Set Ready (DSR), and Data Carrier Detected (DCD). The status of the input lines is visible to the host through the STAT register. Output lines can be controlled via the LNCTRL register.

Ring Indicator (RI) signals are input directly to PROC2 from the line receivers.

There is no 'break detect' bit in the status registers. A break condition is reported via the FIFO as a character with the framing error bit set.

### 4.3.2. EIA/TTL Level Conversion

Interface to the serial lines is provided by 9636AC line drivers and 9637AC receivers. These are amplifiers convert between EIA levels on the serial lines, and TTL levels at the DUARTs.

**NOTE**

**More detail of the SC2681 DUARTs used in the DHV11 is provided in Appendix A3.**

## 4.4 CONTROL SECTION

### 4.4.1 General

The control section (Figure 1-5) is made up of everything except the two interfaces which have already been described. This section contains:

- The common RAM – via which almost all commands and data are routed
- The store arbitrator – which regulates all RAM access requests from the host and the two microcomputers
- The microcomputers – PROC1 and PROC2
- Data and address latches and drivers

- FIFO control and address circuits – which supply the appropriate FIFO addresses
- The CSR – which is the main control register.

The CSR is a separate set of latches and is not part of common RAM.

### 4.4.2 Common RAM

**4.4.2.1 Memory Map** – The common RAM (common to both microcomputers) is mapped to microcomputer addresses $8000_{16}$ to $87FF_{16}$ as shown in Figure 4-6.

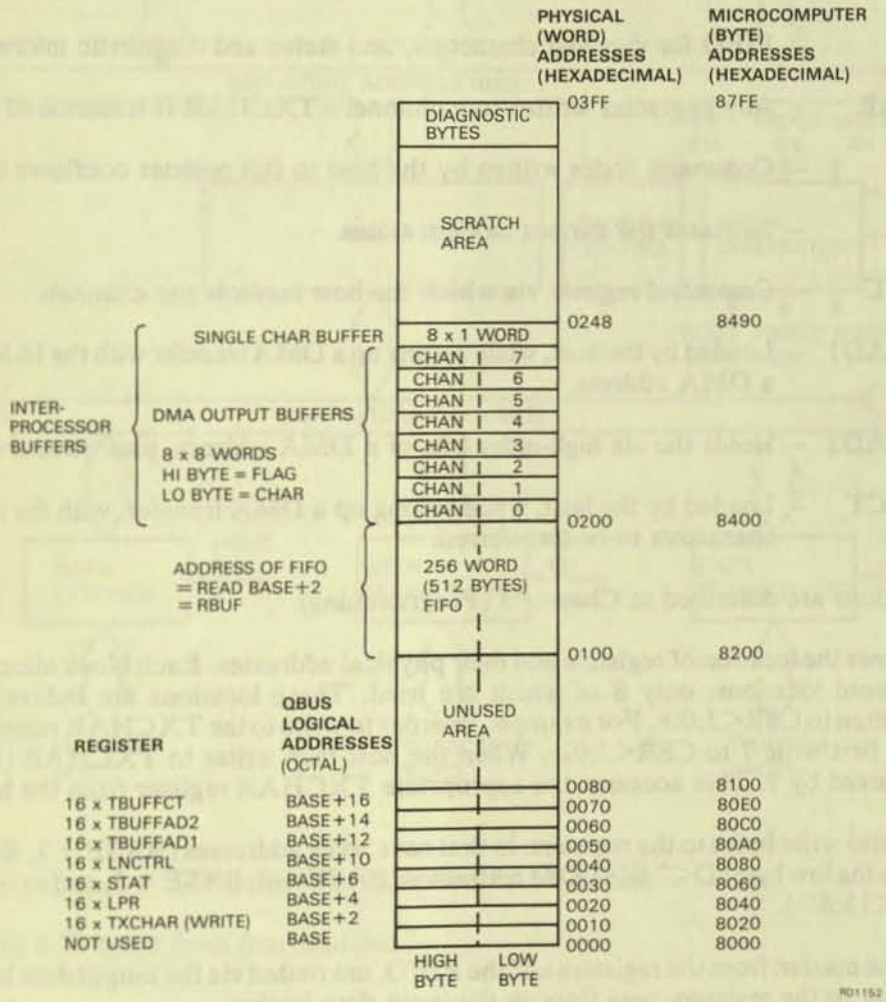



Figure 4-6 Common RAM – Memory Map

The top 1K bytes (above the FIFO) are used by PROC1 and PROC2 for interprocessor buffers and a scratch area.

Each channel has an 8-word buffer for DMA characters. There are also eight 1-word buffers (one for each channel) for single-character programmed transfers. By using buffers, the DHV11 is able to transmit more efficiently. Buffers are filled by PROC1 and emptied by PROC2.

Each word of a buffer has a flag byte (D<15:8>) and a character byte (D<7:0>). When PROC1 transfers a character to a buffer, it sets the flag byte to a non-zero condition. When PROC2 transfers a character to a UART, it clears the flag byte to zero. In this way, the flag byte is used as a handshake between PROC1 and PROC2.

The top eight words are reserved for self-test diagnostic bytes.

4.4.2.2 Registers – The DHV11 is controlled via registers. There are seven for each channel, plus the FIFO (RBUF) and a common CSR. The functions of registers are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| CSR | – Main control register for channel selection, important flags, and control bits |
| RBUF | – FIFO for received characters, and status and diagnostic information |
| TXCHAR | – Any character written to a channel's TXCHAR is transmitted on that channel |
| LPR | – Command codes written by the host to this register configure the channel |
| STAT | – Indicates the current modem status |
| LNCTRL | – Command register via which the host controls the channels |
| TBUFFAD1 | – Loaded by the host, while setting up a DMA transfer with the 16 low-order bits of a DMA address |
| TBUFFAD2 | – Holds the six high-order bits of a DMA address, plus control bits |
| TBUFFCT | – Loaded by the host, while setting up a DMA transfer, with the number of DMA characters to be transferred. |

Register functions are described in Chapter 3 (Programming).

Figure 4-6 shows the location of registers and their physical addresses. Each block allocated to a register contains 16 word locations, only 8 of which are used. These locations are indexed by an address previously written to CSR<3:0>. For example, in order to write to the TXCHAR register for channel 7, the host must first write 7 to CSR<3:0>. When the host then writes to TXCHAR (BASE + 2), the address is indexed by 7. This accesses the appropriate TXCHAR register from the block of 16.

The host can also write bytes to the registers. In that case, even addresses (BASE + 2, BASE + 4, and so on) will access the low byte (D<7:0>). Odd addresses (BASE + 3, BASE + 5, and so on) will access the high byte (D<15:8>).

Transfers to the master, from the registers and the FIFO, are routed via the output data latches. Transfers from the master to the registers pass through the input data latches.

4.4.2.3 FIFO – This 256-word RAM area usually contains received characters and status information. When the host reads from BASE + 2(RBUF), the oldest word in the FIFO is transferred.

There is only one received character buffer (RBUF). The index bits (CSR<3:0>) are ignored during a read action from RBUF.

### 4.4.3 RAM Access

(See Figure 4-7.) The common RAM can be accessed by the host, or by each of the DHV11 microcomputers. Therefore, it is a 3-port memory.

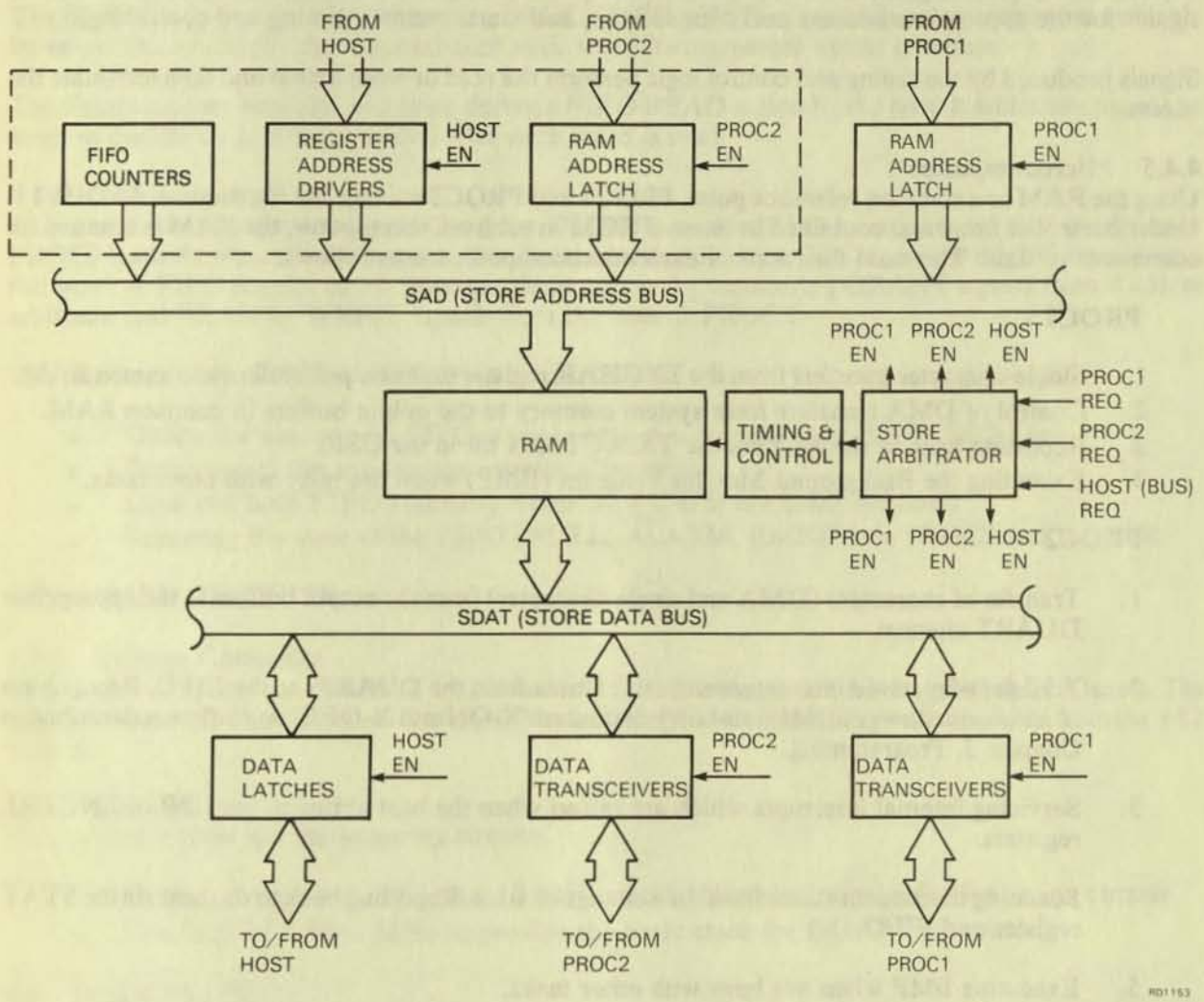



Figure 4-7 Common RAM Access

Addresses (Figure 4-7) come from four sources:

- PROC1
- PROC2
- The host processor (via translation logic)
- The FIFO Fill and Empty counters.

During a write to FIFO (by PROC2) or a read from FIFO (by the host), the RAM address is given by one of the FIFO counters. Dotted lines in Figure 4-7 indicate that this area is oversimplified.

Figure 4-1 shows more detail of the same circuit.

### 4.4.4 Store Arbitrator

When one of the microcomputers or the host needs to access the RAM, it will generate a request for store access. The store arbitrator (Figures 4-7 and 4-1) sequentially scans the request lines. When it detects a request, that request is granted and the other two requests are locked out. The arbitrator issues enable signals for the appropriate address and data sources, and starts memory timing and control logic.

Signals produced by the timing and control logic perform the read or write action and then terminate the access.

### 4.4.5 Microcomputers

Using the RAM as a common reference point, PROC1 and PROC2 manage the functions of the DHV11. Under control of firmware, contained in internal ROM in each microcomputer, the RAM is scanned for commands or data. The main functions of each microcomputer are as follows:

PROC1

1. Single-character transfers from the TXCHAR register to the output buffers in common RAM.
2. Control of DMA transfers from system memory to the output buffers in common RAM.
3. Reporting back to the host via the TX.ACTION bit in the CSR.
4. Executing the Background Monitor Program (BMP) when not busy with other tasks.

PROC2

1. Transfer of characters (DMA and single character) from the output buffers to the appropriate DUART channel.

2. Transfer of received characters and error status from the DUARTs to the FIFO. Recognition of automatic flow control (auto-flow) characters X-ON and X-OFF. Auto-flow is described in Chapter 3, Programming.

3. Servicing internal interrupts which are raised when the host writes to the LPR or LNCTRL registers.

4. Scanning the modem status lines for a change of state. Reporting back to the host via the STAT register and FIFO.

5. Executing BMP when not busy with other tasks.

### 4.4.6 Address and Data Latches

To meet the interface timing demands, latches are used for all transfers between the host and the DHV11. For example, to transmit a single character, the host writes the character to the TXCHAR register. During this action the TXCHAR address is latched into the register address latch. The data is latched into the input data latches. The arbitration and timing and control circuits complete the transfer to TXCHAR.

Characters transferred by DMA are not routed through the TXCHAR register. Special DMA latches are provided for this purpose.

At the beginning of a DMA cycle the next DMA address is written to the DMA address latches (Figure 4-1). This generates a DMA request to the DMA control IC, DC010, which transfers the next word from host memory to the DMA data latches. PROC1 will transfer the word (two characters) from the latches to the DMA buffer area in common RAM, except at the beginning or end of an odd length buffer.

### 4.4.7 FIFO Addresses

The FIFO is implemented in common RAM. It is filled by PROC2 and emptied by the host. It is made to act like a FIFO by the action of two counters.

The Fill counter provides addresses during PROC2 FIFO WRITE actions. It points to the next available location. The counter is incremented after each word (two separate bytes) is written.

The Empty counter provides addresses during a FIFO READ action by the host. It addresses the oldest word in the FIFO. It is incremented after each word is read.

### 4.4.8 FIFO Control

Received characters are transferred from the DUARTs to the FIFO in order to be read by the host. PROC2 loads the status (high) byte and then the character (low) byte. The host reads this information as a full word. A FIFO control circuit manages these actions by monitoring GRANT signals from the store arbitrator and READ or WRITE signals from the host or PROC2.

The functions of the FIFO control circuit are as follows:

- Gating the appropriate FIFO counter onto the store address (SAD<9:0>) bus
- Incrementing the appropriate counter after access
- Disabling both FIFO addresses when the FIFO is not being accessed
- Reporting the state of the FIFO (FULL, ALARM, EMPTY) to PROC2 and the CSR.

## 4.5 OTHER CIRCUITS

### 4.5.1 Voltage Converter

Line drivers and receivers need both +12 V and –12 V in order to generate line signals at EIA levels. The voltage converter, which is a small Switched-Mode Power Supply (SMPS), produces –12 V from the +12 V supply.

### 4.5.2 Oscillators

Also on the module are the following circuits:

- Oscillator to provide 24 MHz, 12 MHz and 6 MHz clock signals for the timing circuits
- Oscillator of 3.6864 MHz to provide the basic clock for DUART data rates.

## 4.6 DATA FLOW

DHV11 firmware uses interrupt timers in PROC1 and PROC2 to enter certain routines which handle data and check the control registers. Therefore a delay, dependent on the timer interval, can be introduced into some data paths. When referring to Figures 4-8 to 4-14, these delays must be considered.

The delays are as follows:

1. TXCHAR to single-character transmit buffers:

   Every 780 microseconds PROC1 checks for characters in each TXCHAR register. If available, one character will be transferred to the buffers from each register. It is this timer which limits single character transmission to 1000 characters per second.

2. DMA data latch to DMA buffer area:

   Each time PROC1 services the single-character buffers it also checks, and services if needed, one pair of channels for DMA. The channels are serviced in rotation. This means that a specific channel is serviced every 4 × 780 microseconds = 3.12 milliseconds. PROC1 will transfer up to eight characters to each of the two DMA output buffers in common RAM (Figure 4-6).

3. Single-character or DMA output buffer to DUART:

   Every 480 microseconds PROC2 checks the interprocessor buffers for valid data. If there is data waiting, a character will be transferred to each DUART channel which is ready to take a character. It is this timer which limits DMA transmission per channel to 2000 characters per second.

4. DUART to FIFO:

   Received characters are not handled by timer-driven interrupts, but by direct interrupt from the DUART. Therefore, in comparison with transmitted characters, the delay is not significant.

5. The DMA start bit is sampled every 3.12 milliseconds. There is also a delay of up to 480 microseconds in PROC2. This gives an average delay of 1.8 milliseconds before a DMA transfer is started.

Timer dependent tasks of PROC2 may be delayed by:

1. The receive interrupt

2. The parameter change interrupt which is raised (by hardware) when the host writes to the LPR or LNCTRL registers. (It may have to change the DUART configuration or the state of modem control lines)

3. The need to monitor modem status lines. These are sampled every 10 milliseconds.

From the foregoing it should be clear that PROC2 delays are to a great extent dependent on application and on throughput.

In the following descriptions of data flow, the basic timer delays are noted against the appropriate data paths on the diagrams.

### 4.6.1 Host Read from a Register

(See Figure 4-8.) Except for RBUF or the CSR, the channel number must first be written to CSR<3:0>. This is followed by a READ from BASE + n (see Figure 4-6).

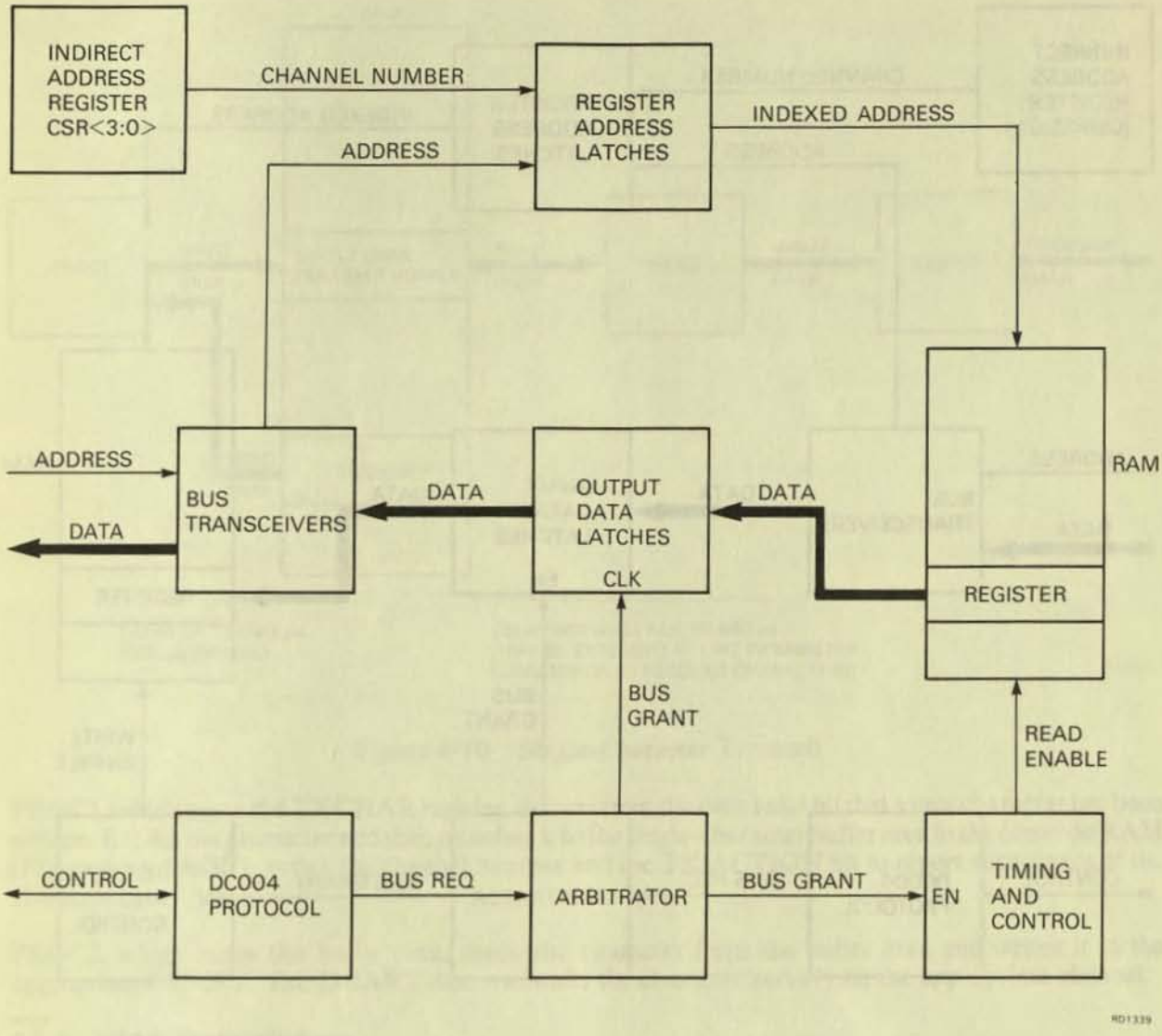



Figure 4-8 Reading from a Register

The register address is latched into the register address latches, to be applied to the RAM when bus access is granted.

The READ action from the host generates a BUS REQUEST to the store arbitrator, which generates BUS GRANT. This starts the timing signals which read a word from the addressed register. When BUS GRANT is deasserted, the data is latched into the output data latches.

BRPLY (Figure 4-2) is inhibited until data transfer to the output latches is complete. BRPLY is then asserted. READ signals on the Q-bus transfer the word to the host.

### 4.6.2 Writing to a Register

(See Figure 4-9.) In order to write to a register the channel number is first written to CSR bits <3:0>. This is followed by a WRITE to BASE + n (see Figure 4-6).

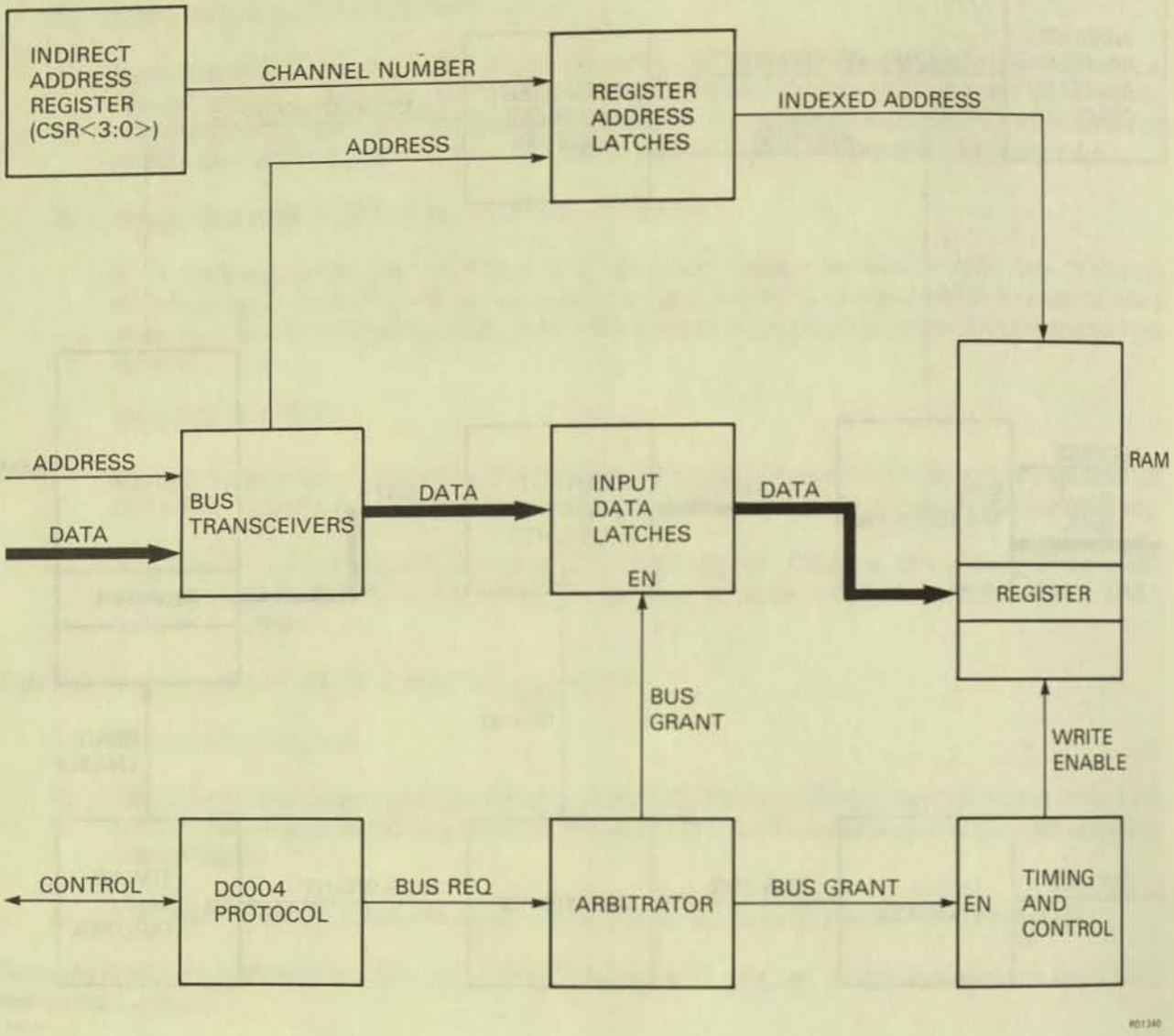



Figure 4-9 Writing to a Register

The register address is latched into the register address latches and is applied to the RAM when the bus access is granted. The data to be written is latched into the input data latches.

The WRITE action from the host generates a BUS REQUEST to the store arbitrator. BUS GRANT enables the data from the input data latches and provides RAM timing signals. Data will be written to the addressed register.

For a WRITE BYTE action, address line 0 will select the high or low byte of a word.

### 4.6.3 Single-Character Transmit

(See Figure 4-10.) To transmit a character by use of the single-character transmit facility, the character and the DATA.VALID bit can be written to the TXCHAR register. This would be done exactly as in Section 4.6.2. To transmit subsequent characters, the TX.ACTION bit for this channel must be checked by polling or via interrupts.

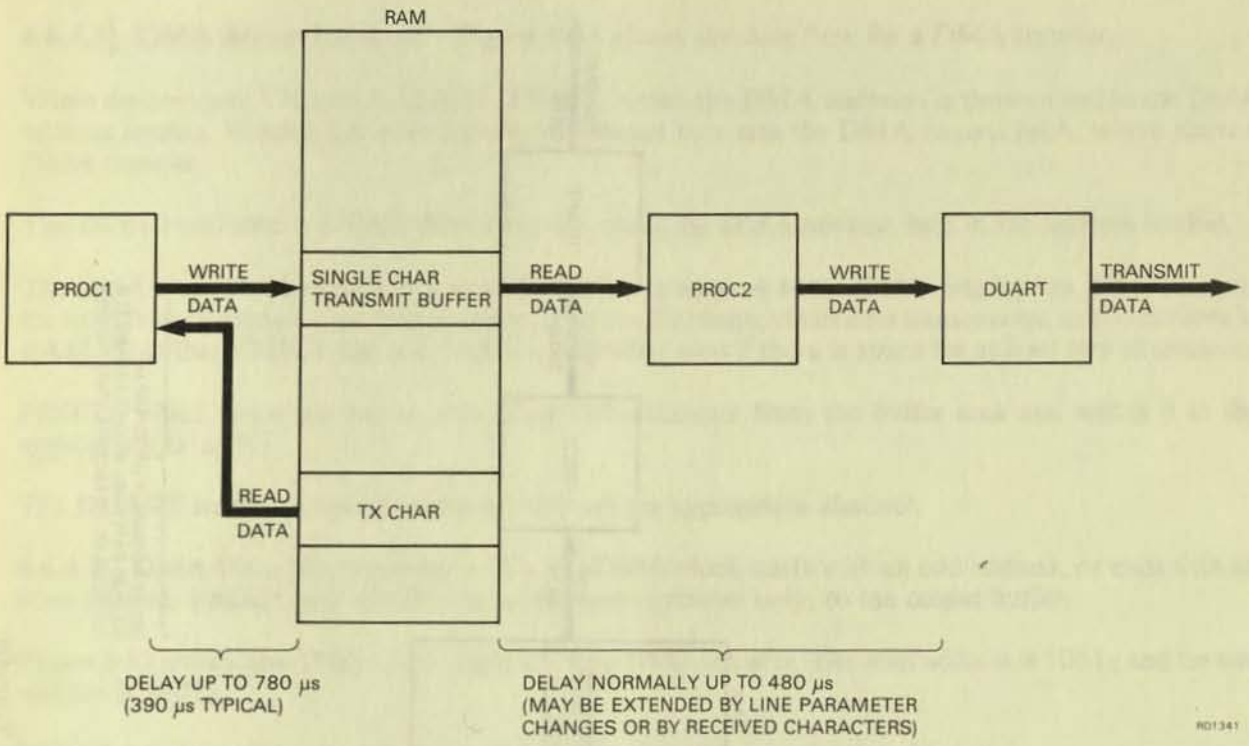



Figure 4-10 Single-Character Transmit

PROC1, which scans the TXCHAR register, detects from the data valid bit that a new character has been written. It reads the character and then transfers it to the single-character buffer area in the common RAM (Figure 4-6). PROC1 writes the channel number and the TX.ACTION bit to report acceptance of the character.

PROC2, which scans the buffer area, reads the character from the buffer area and writes it to the appropriate DUART. The DUART then transmits the character serially on the appropriate channel.

### 4.6.4 DMA Transmissions

Section 3 (Programming) describes how a DMA block transfer is set up. The host writes a DMA buffer start address, the number of characters to be transferred, and a TX.DMA.START bit to TBUFFAD1, TBUFFAD2, and TBUFFCT.

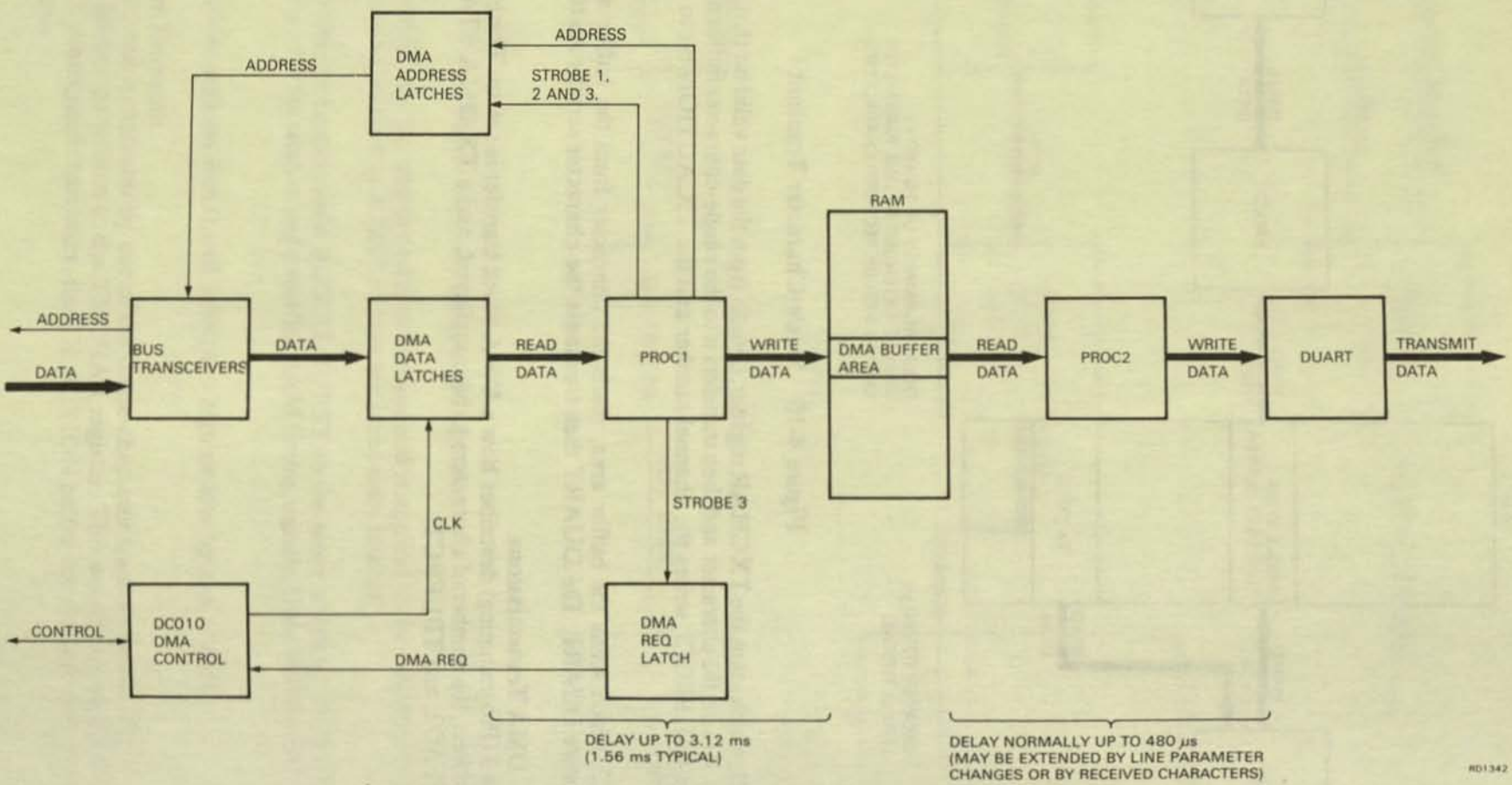



Figure 4-11 DMA Data Transfer

4.6.4.1 **DMA Block Transmit** – Figure 4-11 shows the data flow for a DMA transfer.

When the host sets TX.DMA.START, PROC1 writes the DMA address (in three bytes) to the DMA address latches. Writing the most significant address byte sets the DMA request latch, which starts a DMA transfer.

The DC010 performs a READ from memory, using the DMA address held in the address latches.

The DMA cycle always transfers a word from system memory to the DMA data latches. PROC1 reads the word (two characters) one byte at a time, and transfers them, via its data transceivers, to a buffer area in RAM. Note that PROC1 can only write to the buffer area if there is space for at least two characters.

PROC2, which scans the buffer area, reads the character from the buffer area and writes it to the appropriate DUART.

The DUART transmits the character serially on the appropriate channel.

4.6.4.2 **DMA Data Management** – When a DMA block starts with an odd address, or ends with an even address, PROC1 will transfer the addressed character only, to the output buffer.

Figure 4-12 shows how DHV11 manages a 9-byte DMA transfer. The start address is $1061_8$ and the end address is $1072_8$.

PROC2 transfers characters from the buffer area, exactly as in Section 4.6.4.1.

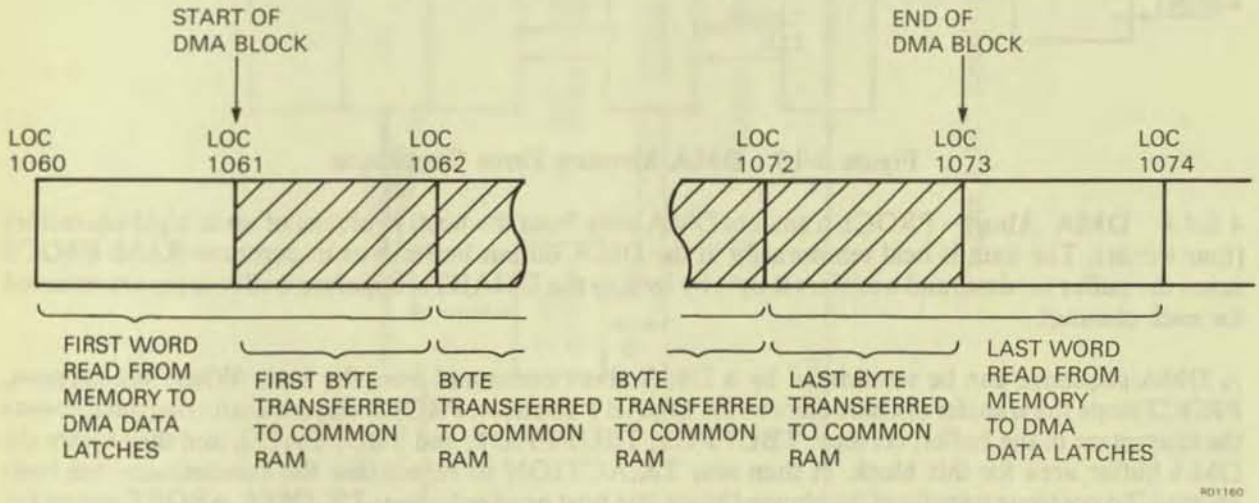



Figure 4-12 DMA Character Handling

4.6.4.3 **DMA Error Detection and Timeout** – Q-bus protocol demands that, during a bus transaction, a bus master which does not receive BRPLY within 10 microseconds of sending BSYNC should terminate the transaction. For a DMA transfer the DHV11 becomes bus master; therefore it must obey the timeout rule. The DHV11 also checks parity bits BDAL 17 and 16.

At the beginning of each DMA cycle the DMA controller uses ADREN (address enable) to gate the DMA address onto the Q-bus. The trailing edge of this signal starts a hardware counter (Figure 4-13) which will time out after 10.7 microseconds if there is no reply from the bus. The counter is cleared by its own timeout or by a bus reply.

The DMA error status is cleared by a DMA request. It will generate a DMA error signal (DMA ERROR) if the timer times out or if a memory parity error (BDAL 17 and 16 asserted) is detected. The parity error is latched when the bus reply goes false at the end of the transaction.

At the end of the DMA cycle, when the DC010 deasserts BDIN, a DMA COMPLETE signal (Section 4.7.1.2) is generated. When PROC1 detects DMA COMPLETE it checks the state of DMA ERROR. If an error is detected, the DHV11 will read the same location once more before reporting an error to the host.

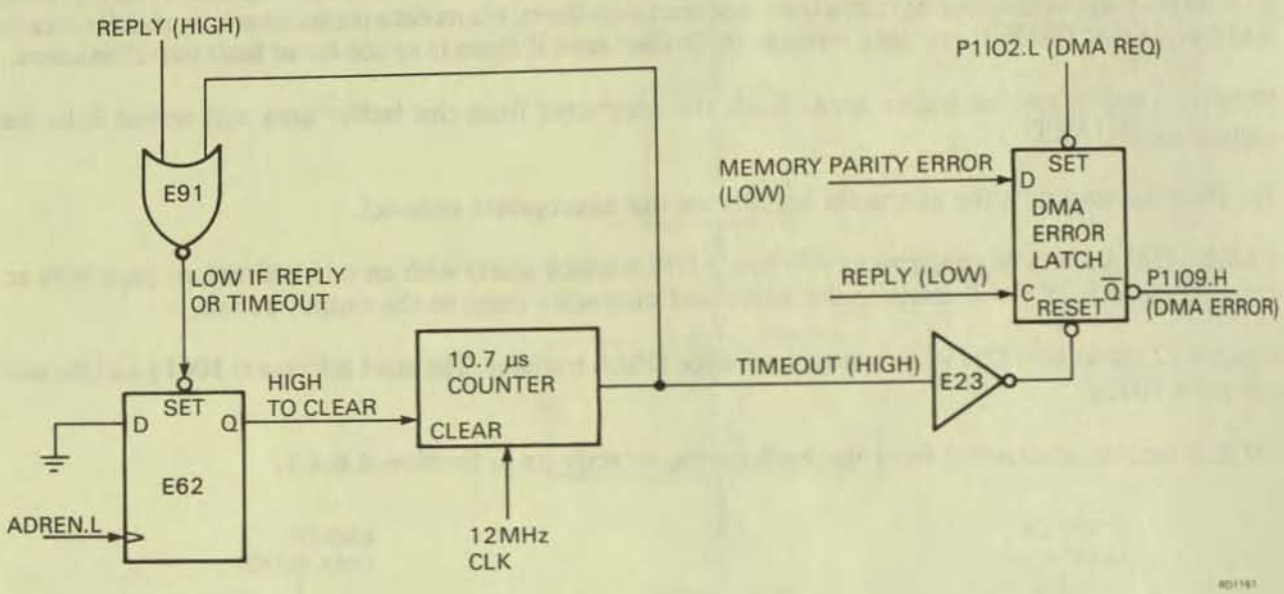



Figure 4-13 DMA/Memory Error Generation

4.6.4.4 DMA Abort – PROC1 transfers DMA data from the host, in blocks of up to eight characters (four words). The data is held temporarily in the DMA output buffer area in common RAM. PROC2 scans the buffer for data, and transfers it byte by byte to the DUARTs. Separate buffer areas are reserved for each channel.

A DMA sequence can be terminated by a DMA abort command from the host. When this happens, PROC2 stops the transfer of characters to the DUART channel. PROC1 stops transferring data, counts the characters in the buffer, corrects TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2, and then clears the DMA buffer area for this block. It then sets TX.ACTION to report that the transmission has been aborted. To continue transfer of the aborted block, the host need only clear TX.DMA.ABORT and set the TX.DMA.START bit. The transfer will continue without losing characters.

### 4.6.5 Receiving

(See Figure 4-14.) When a serial channel has assembled a character, it will raise an interrupt. PROC2 will respond by reading status from each DUART in turn. When it finds the interrupting channel, PROC2 will transfer an error/line-number status byte and the character byte to the FIFO.

PROC2 writes all receive information to a 1-word address in the RAM; C040 = low byte, C041 = high byte. These addresses are decoded and ANDed with 'PROC2 grant' to enable the FIFO Fill counter. This counter provides the actual FIFO address. The counter is incremented after each character byte is transferred. Therefore the character (low byte of RBUF) is transferred last.

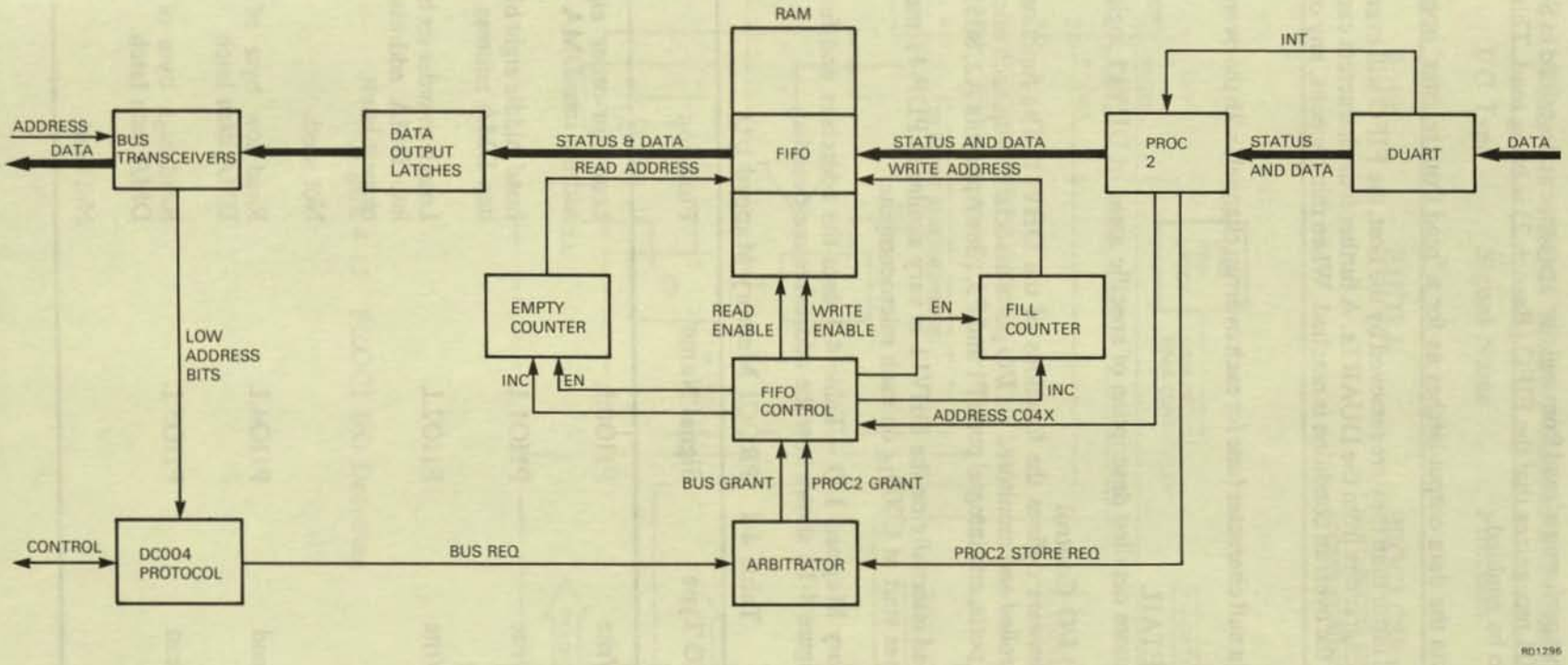



Figure 4-14 Receiving a Character

To read the FIFO, the host performs a 'read from register' sequence as described in Section 4.6.1. In this case, however, the DC004 recognizes that the FIFO (Base + 2) is being read. This causes the Empty counter and the FIFO to be enabled.

The data is transferred via the data output latches as for a 'read from register' operation.

If characters are received faster than they are removed by the host, the FIFO will eventually become full. PROC2 will stop taking characters from the DUARTs. A further four characters can be buffered in any DUART channel before the overrun condition is reached. When this happens, any overrun channel will be flushed.

When space is available, a null character (one for each overrun channel) with the overrun error bit set will be placed in the FIFO.

## 4.7 TECHNICAL DETAIL

This section provides a more detailed description of specific areas of DHV11 logic and electronics.

### 4.7.1 DHV11 Internal I/O Control

PROC1 and PROC2 firmware defines the functions of the DHV11. The functions managed by the microcomputers are controlled and monitored via I/O ports associated with each microcomputer. These are memory-mapped I/O ports, and integral ports P1 and P3. (See Appendix A2, 8051 Microcomputer.)

Memory-mapped I/O used internally on the DHV11 is very similar to PDP-11 memory-mapped I/O architecture. I/O addresses start at $C000_{16}$ on each microcomputer.

**4.7.1.1 PROC1 Memory Mapped I/O** – Table 4-1 lists the addresses and functions of PROC1 memory-mapped I/O. Figure 4-15 shows how the addresses are decoded.

Table 4-1 PROC1 Memory-Mapped I/O

| Address (Hexadecimal) | I/O Type | Signal Name | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| C000 | Write | P1IO0.L | Load low-order eight bits of DMA address into DMA address latch. |
| C001 | Write | P1IO1.L | Load middle eight bits of DMA address into DMA address latch. |
| C002 | Write | P1IO2.L | Load high-order six bits of DMA address into DMA address latch. Set DMA request latch. |
| C003 | | | Not used. |
| C004 | Read | P1IO4.L | Read low byte of DMA data from DMA data latch. |
| C005 | Read | P1IO5.L | Read high byte of DMA data from DMA data latch. |
| C006 | | | Not used. |

Table 4-1 PROC1 Memory-Mapped I/O (Cont)

| Address (Hexadecimal) | I/O Type | Signal Name | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| C007 | Write | P1IO7.L | PROC1 CSR write. Also starts a dummy store-access sequence. This is to prevent access conflicts to this register. |

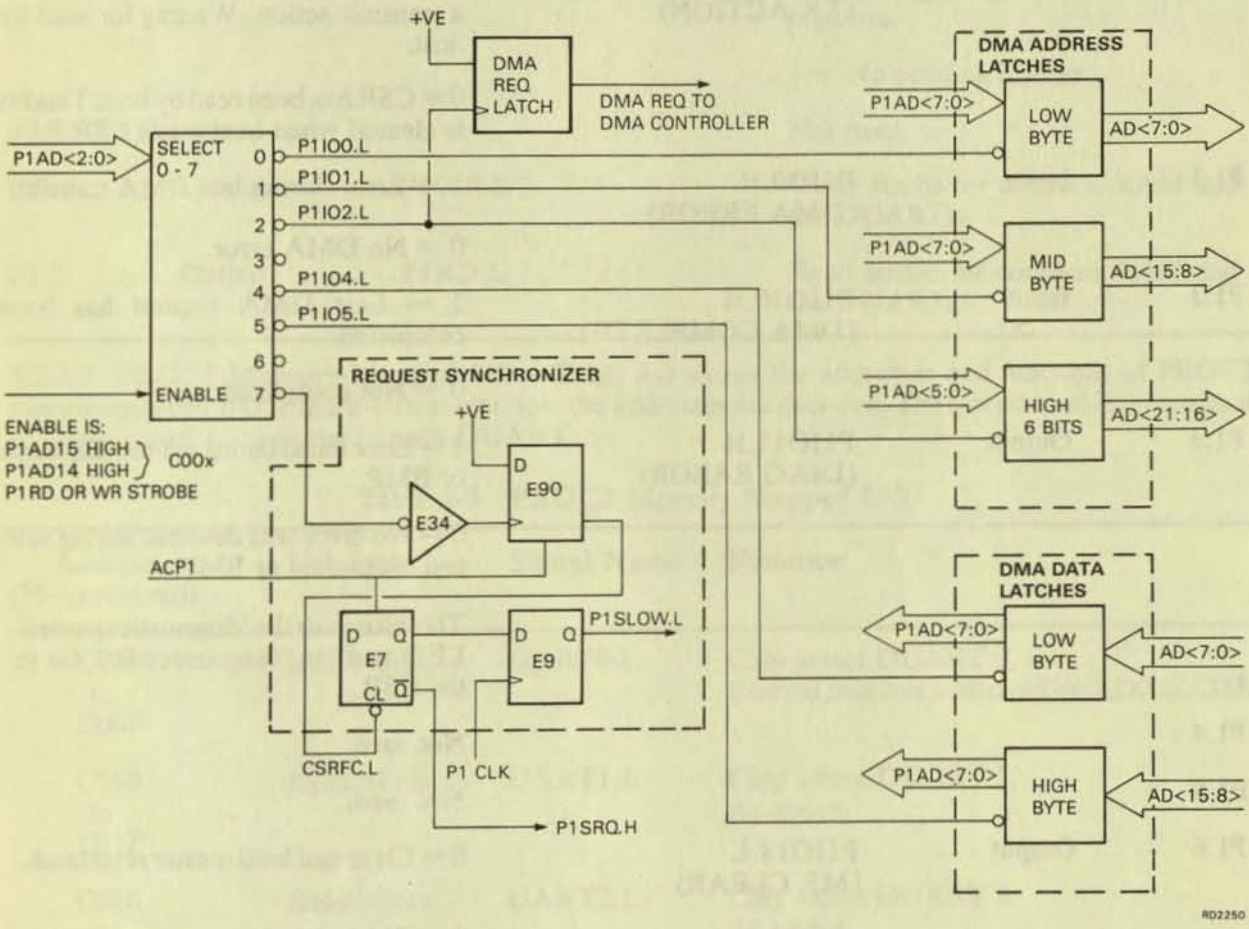



Figure 4-15 PROC1 I/O Decoding

4.7.1.2 PROC1 Integral I/O Port Functions – Table 4-2 lists the functions of the integral ports used by PROC1.

Table 4-2 PROC1 Integral I/O Port Functions

| Port | Direction | Signal Name (Explanatory Title) | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| P1.0 | Input | P1IO8.L (TX ACTION) | 1 = DHV11 has completed or terminated a transmit action. Waiting for read by host.<br>0 = CSR has been read by host. This bit is cleared when host reads CSR. |
| P1.1 | Input | P1IO9.H (DMA ERROR) | 1 = Error during last DMA transfer.<br>0 = No DMA error. |
| P1.2 | Input | P1IO10.H (DMA COMPLETE) | 1 = Last DMA request has been completed.<br>0 = Not completed. |
| P1.3 | Output | P1IO11.H (DIAG ERROR) | 1 = Error found during self-test diagnostic or BMP.<br>0 = No error was detected during self-test diagnostic or BMP.<br>This bit drives the 'diagnostics passed' LED and the 'diagnostics fail' bit in the CSR. |
| P1.4 | | | Not used. |
| P1.5 | | | Not used. |
| P1.6 | Output | P1IO14.L (MR CLEAR) | 0 = Clear and hold master reset latch.<br>1 = Release hold. |
| P1.7 | | | Not used. |
| P3.0 | Input | IPSL0 | Serial input line to PROC1 internal UART. |
| P3.1 | Output | IPSL1 | Serial output line from PROC1 internal UART.<br>The above two serial lines connect to PROC2 internal UART for direct reporting during diagnostics. |
| P3.2 | | | Not used. |

Table 4-2 PROC1 Integral I/O Port Functions (Cont)

| Port | Direction | Signal Name (Explanatory Title) | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| P3.3 | | | Not used. |
| P3.4 | Input | P2INT1.L | PROC2 interrupt monitor<br>0 = Pending change to LPR or LNCTRL registers.<br>1 = No pending change. |
| P3.5 | | | Not used. |
| P3.6 | Output | P1WR.L | Write strobe for common RAM and the DUARTs. |
| P3.7 | Output | P1RD.L | Read strobe for common RAM and the DUARTs. |

4.7.1.3 PROC2 Memory-Mapped I/O – Table 4-3 shows the addresses and functions of PROC2 memory-mapped I/O. Figure 4-16 shows how the addresses are decoded. The low address lines are used to select one of 16 registers in each DUART.

Table 4-3 PROC2 Memory-Mapped I/O

| Address (Hexadecimal) | I/O Type | Signal Name | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| C000 to C00F | Read/Write | UART0.L | Chip select DUART 0.<br>Internal registers addressed by AD0 to AD3. |
| C010 to C01F | Read/Write | UART1.L | Chip select DUART 1.<br>As above. |
| C020 to C02F | Read/Write | UART2.L | Chip select DUART 2.<br>As above. |
| C030 to C03F | Read/Write | UART3.L | Chip select DUART 3.<br>As above. |
| C040 | Write | FIWR.L | Writes the low byte of the FIFO word (usually the received character) to the FIFO.<br>The trailing edge increments the FIFO address pointer (so it is written after the status byte). AD0 = 0. |

Table 4-3 PROC2 Memory-Mapped I/O (Cont)

| Address (Hexadecimal) | I/O Type | Signal Name | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| C041 | Write | FIWR.H | Writes the high byte (status) to the FIFO. Written before the low byte. AD0 = 1. |
| C050 | Write | FICL.L | Clears the FIFO address counters at bus or DHV11 reset. (In effect empties the FIFO.) |
| C060 | | | Not used. |
| C070 | Write | INTCL.L | Clear interrupt request PROC2. When the LPR and LNCTRL registers are written, a hardware interrupt request is raised to alert PROC2. During the interrupt routine, PROC2 clears the interrupt request via INTCL.L. |

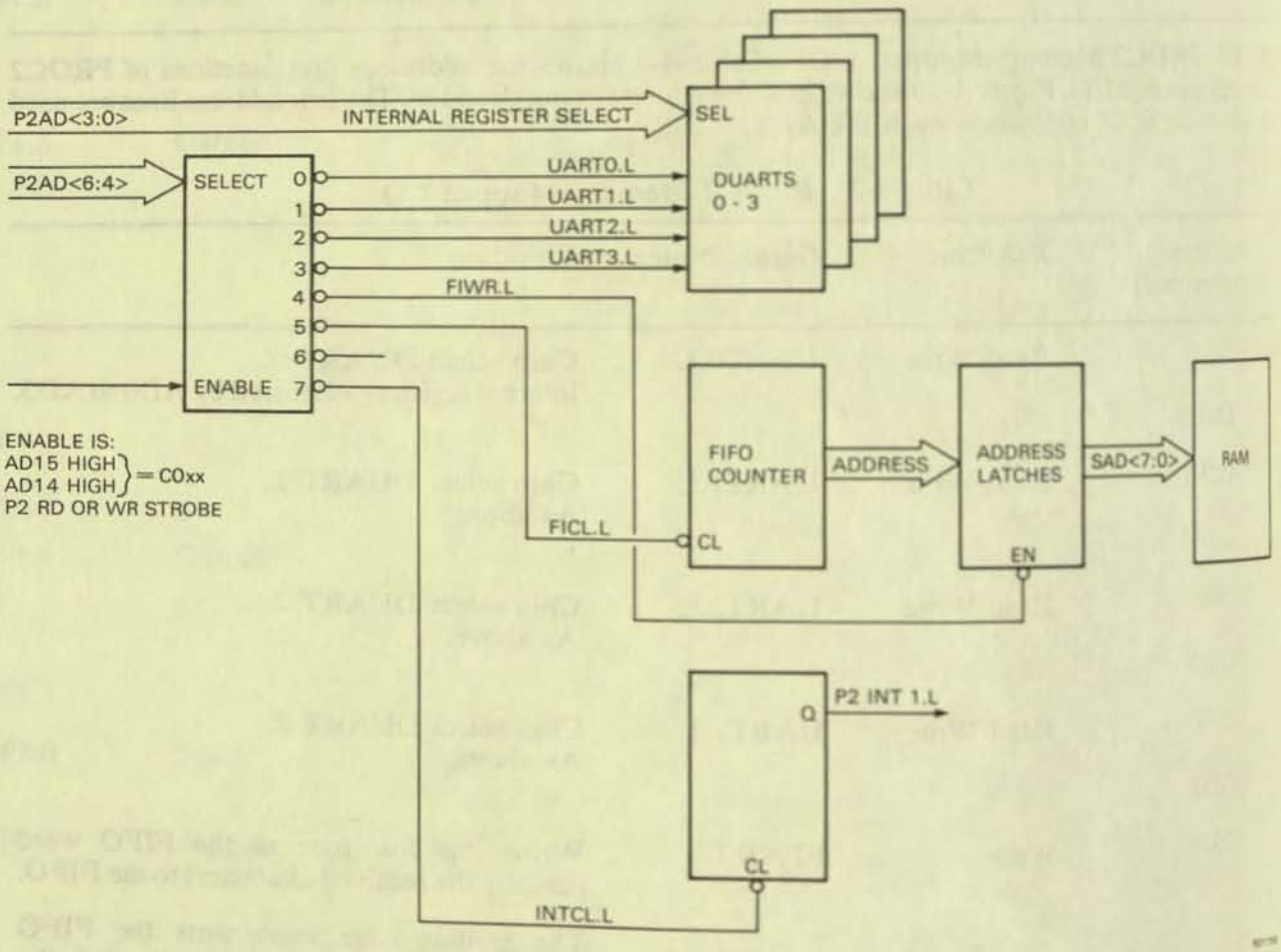



Figure 4-16 PROC2 I/O Decoding

4.7.1.4 PROC2 Integral I/O Port Functions – Table 4-4 shows the function of the integral ports used by PROC2.

Table 4-4 PROC2 Integral I/O Port Functions

| Port | Direction | Signal Name | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| P1.0 to P1.7 | Inputs | RIB0.L to RIB7.L | Indicates the state of the Ring Indicator lines 0 to 7 from modems. 0 = ON, 1 = OFF. |
| P3.0 | Input | IPSL1 | Serial input line to internal UART, PROC2. |
| P3.1 | Output | IPSL0 | Serial output line from internal UART, PROC2. The above two serial lines connect to the PROC1 internal UART for direct reporting during diagnostics. |
| P3.2 | Input | P2INT0.L | 0 = DUART service interrupt request active. 1 = Interrupt inactive. |
| P3.3 | Input | P2INT1.L | 0 = CHANGE interrupt request active. Becomes active each time the host writes to LPR or LNCTRL. 1 = Interrupt inactive. |
| P3.4 | Input | FULL.L | 0 = FIFO is full 1 = FIFO is not full |
| P3.5 | Input | ALARM.L | 0 = FIFO has reached three-quarters full condition and has not yet been emptied below half full. 1 = FIFO not in the above state. |
| P3.6 | Output | P2WR.L | Write strobe for common RAM and the DUARTs. |
| P3.7 | Output | P2RD.L | Read strobe for common RAM and the DUARTs. |

### 4.7.2 Q-Bus Interrupts

(See Figure 4-17.) The function of the DC003 interrupt logic is to make interrupt requests and to supply a vector to the host. Signal sequences for interrupt request and acknowledge are given in Figure 4-4.

If interrupts are enabled, they are generated under the following conditions:

1. When a received character is loaded into a previously empty FIFO (EMPTY.L is asserted to indicate this state)

2. When, with data in the FIFO, RXIE is changed to the enable state

3. When, during a single-character programmed transfer, a character is removed from a TXCHAR register

4. When a DMA block transfer is completed, or has been aborted, or has failed because of a DMA error.

For conditions 3 and 4, the signal TX.ACTION.H is generated.

EMPTY.L, when it goes false, causes a receive interrupt request (RQA) and TX.ACTION.H causes a transmit interrupt request (RQB).

Interrupts are enabled by writing a 1 to CSR bit 6 and/or CSR bit 14. This action generates receive interrupt enable (RXIE) and transmit interrupt enable (TXIE) respectively. The host can read the status of these lines by a CSR read action.

The enable signals are ANDed with the appropriate request, and latched to generate RQA or RQB. If both are true, priority is given to RQA.

For both RX and TX interrupts, bus interrupt request (BIRQ.L) is generated. The request is cleared again by RDIN.L at the start of an interrupt acknowledge cycle.

**NOTE**

**Both RX and TX interrupt requests are latched by a rising edge. Therefore in order to raise another interrupt request, one of the inputs to AND gates A or B must be deasserted and then asserted.**

In an interrupt acknowledge cycle, the DC003 interrupt IC responds to BIAKI.L. The signal VECTOR.H enables the vector switches onto BDAL<3:8>. VECT.2.H provides the low bit of the vector address on BDAL<2>. It identifies a receive (0) or transmit (1) interrupt vector. VECTOR.H also generates BRPLY via DC004 protocol logic. The vector is transferred to the host by a DATI sequence which follows the interrupt request/grant sequence.

### 4.7.3 Common RAM Arbitration

(See Figure 4-18.) To allow the common RAM to be accessed by the microcomputers and by the host, the DHV11 provides arbitration circuitry. However, arbitration introduces a delay into a memory access sequence. To account for this delay, the store access cycle of the requesting device must be extended.

Data addresses and control signals from the external bus are extended by delaying BRPLY.L. This signal is disabled until the store access is complete. The 8051 microcomputers, however, cannot be controlled in this way. They have no handshake signal such as WAIT, and because they are dynamic it is not possible to stop the clock.

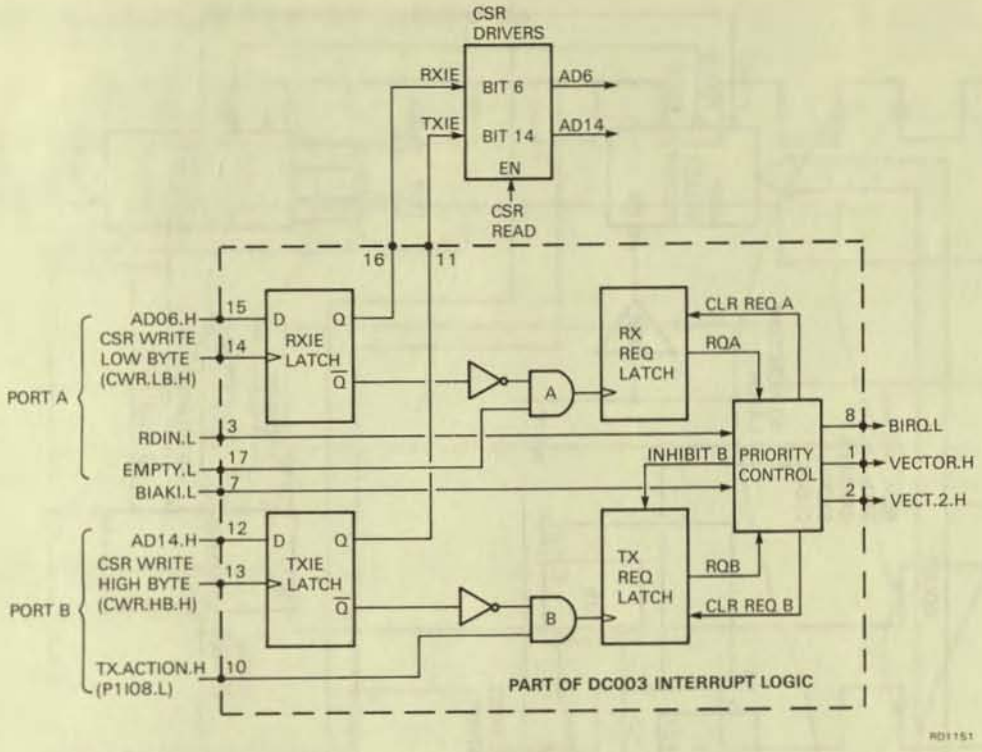



Figure 4-17 Interrupt Logic

The DHV11 solves the problem by slowing down the related microcomputer clock every time PROC1 or PROC2 tries to access the RAM. The normal clock frequency is 12 MHz. This is reduced to 1.5 MHz during RAM access. Approximately 330 nanoseconds after a store request has been granted, the normal clock frequency is enabled.

Figure 4-18 provides more information on the RAM arbitration and timing blocks. A description of the operation follows.

A 4-state scan counter (0 to 3) is driven by the 12 MHz clock. The output is used as a synchronized count for a request multiplexer and two accept decoders.

On each positive edge of the clock one of the latched store request lines (SRQDs) from PROC1, PROC2 or the bus is connected to the request latch. On each negative edge the input to the latch is sampled. A valid store request will set the latch. The scan counter will be stopped and the RAM state counter will be enabled.

With the scan counter stopped, the MUX and the decoders will also stop. One of the grant signals, ACP1, ACP2, or ACB (accept PROC1, PROC2, or BUS), will be true. The equivalent SCS (store chip select) signal will be selected but not enabled.

Now that the RAM state counter is enabled, it is incremented by the 12 MHz clock from 000 to 101. The counter is then held in the 101 state by END.L.

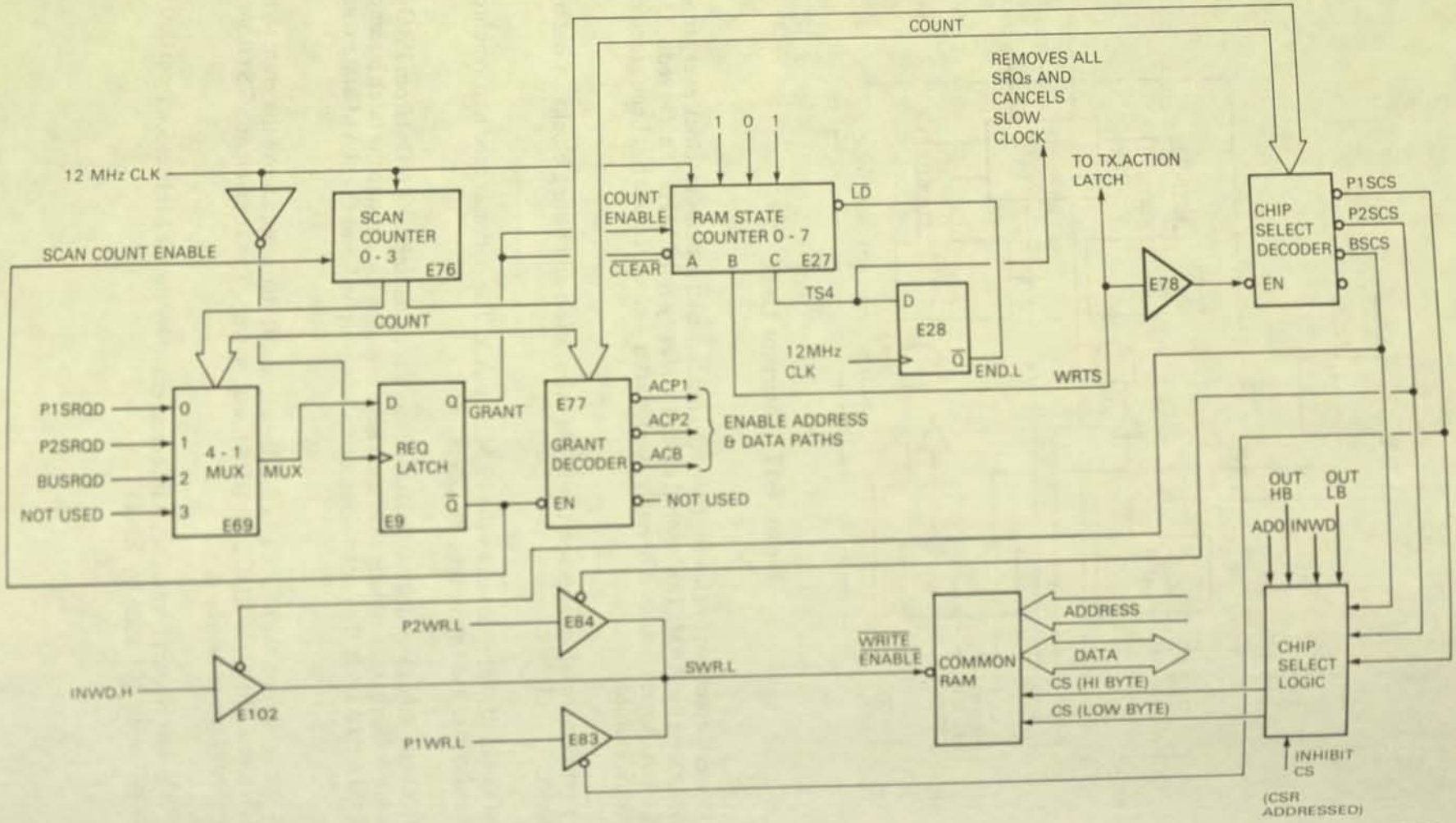



Figure 4-18 RAM Arbitration and Timing

Figure 4-19 gives timing details for a store access cycle.

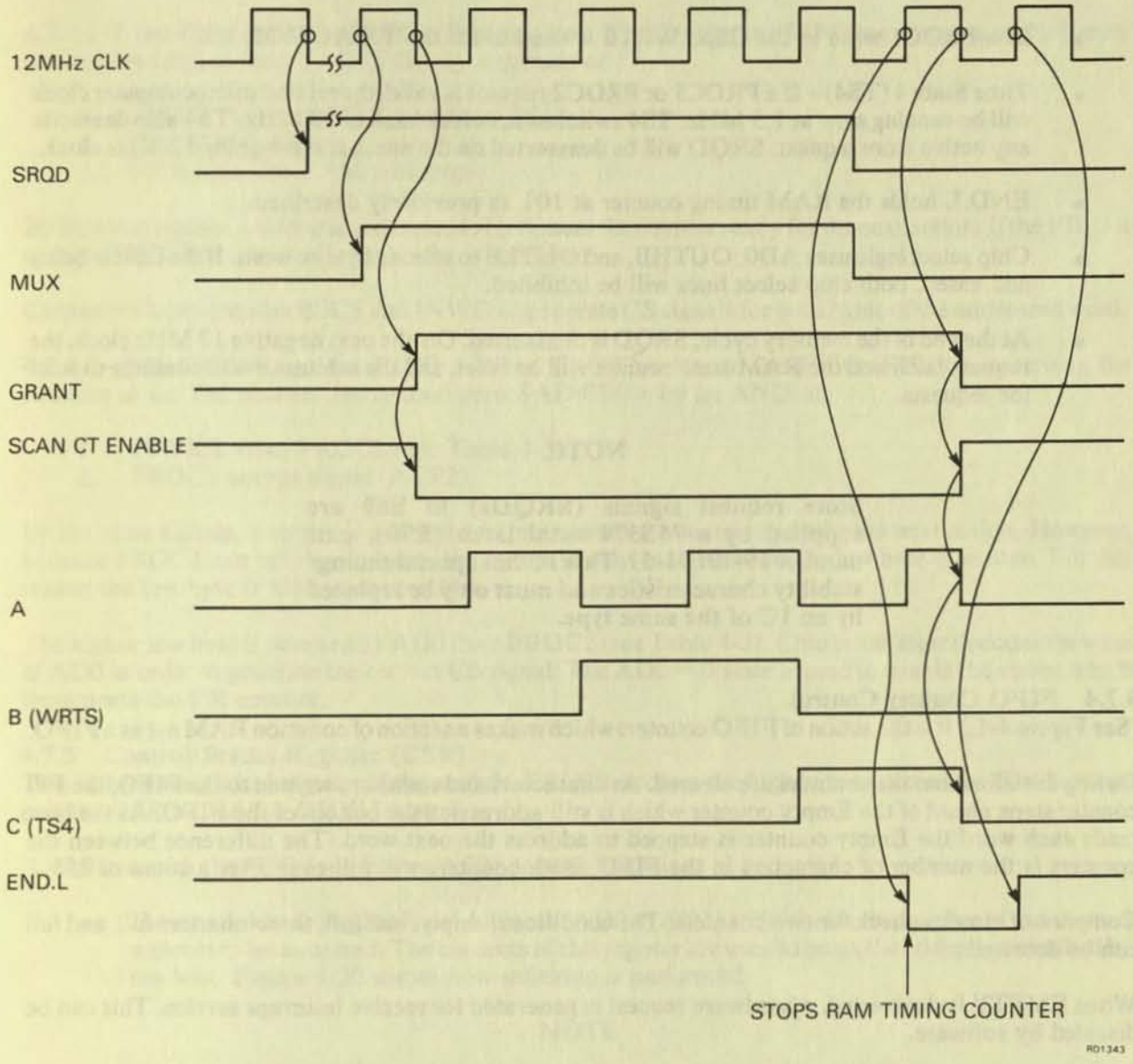



Figure 4-19 Store Access Timing Cycle

In Figure 4-19:

- Write Time State (WRTS) is inverted to enable the selected Store Chip Select (SCS) signal via the decoder. This action performs two functions:

  1. It enables the appropriate Chip Select (CS) signals via the chip select logic

  2. It enables the appropriate write enable line. SWR.L will be true when one of the gates E83, E84, or E102 is enabled and its input is low. That is to say, when PROC1, PROC2, or the host are writing to the RAM.

- SWR.L, and CS signals for the high and/or low byte, perform the RAM access. If SWR.L is false, a read action is performed.
- In a PROC1 write to the CSR, WRTS is used to set the TX.ACTION bit.
- Time State 4 (TS4) – If a PROC1 or PROC2 request is valid, the related microcomputer clock will be running slow at 1.5 MHz. TS4 switches the clock back to 12 MHz. TS4 also deasserts any active store request. SRQD will be deasserted on the next negative-going 12 MHz clock.
- END.L holds the RAM timing counter at 101 as previously described.
- Chip select logic uses AD0, OUTHB, and OUTLB to select a byte or word. If the CSR is being addressed, both chip select lines will be inhibited.
- At the end of the memory cycle, SRQD is deasserted. On the next negative 12 MHz clock, the request latch and the RAM state counter will be reset, and the arbitrator will continue to scan for requests.

**NOTE**

**Store request signals (SRQDs) to E69 are supplied by a 74S374 octal latch (E70), part number 19-13671-51. This IC has special timing/ stability characteristics and must only be replaced by an IC of the same type.**

### 4.7.4 FIFO Counter Control

(See Figure 4-1.) It is the action of FIFO counters which makes a section of common RAM act as a FIFO.

During initialization, the counters are cleared. As characters and status are written to the FIFO, the Fill counter steps ahead of the Empty counter which is still addressing the bottom of the FIFO. As the host reads each word the Empty counter is stepped to address the next word. The difference between the counters is the number of characters in the FIFO. Both counters will roll over after a count of 255.

Comparator circuits check the two counters. The conditions, empty, half full, three-quarters full, and full can be detected.

When EMPTY is deasserted, a hardware request is generated for receive interrupt service. This can be disabled by software.

FULL is a signal which stops PROC2 from putting more characters into the FIFO.

ALARM is asserted when the FIFO becomes three-quarters full. It stays asserted until the FIFO becomes less than half full. These signals are used when the DHV11 is programmed for auto-flow on incoming characters. X-OFF characters are generated when the FIFO is more than three-quarters full. X-ON characters are generated when it becomes less than half full.

To address the appropriate FIFO location, address bits SAD9 and SAD8 must be set to 0 and 1 respectively and the appropriate address counter must be enabled. The correct SAD<9:8> code is generated for any FIFO access, that is to say:

1. When the FIFO (READ from base + 2) is addressed and ACB (Figure 4-18) is asserted

2. When PROC2 generates a FIFO WRITE signal (FIWR.L) and ACP2 (Figure 4-18) is asserted.

**4.7.4.1 Host Read from the FIFO** – During a host READ from the FIFO the contents of the Empty counter are latched onto SAD<7:0> by a decode of:

1. INWD from the DC004 protocol IC
2. The RBUF address (base + 2)
3. ACB from the RAM arbitrator.

By the same signals, a strobe is generated to increment the counter ready for the next action. If the FIFO is empty (EMPTY.L asserted), the strobe is inhibited.

Chip select logic decodes BSCS and INWD to generate CS signals for both bytes of the addressed word.

**4.7.4.2 PROC2 Write to the FIFO** – When PROC2 writes to the FIFO (FIWR.L asserted), the contents of the Fill counter are latched onto SAD<7:0> by an AND of:

1. FIWR.L from PROC2 (see Table 4-3)
2. PROC2 accept signal (ACP2).

By the same signals, a strobe is generated to increment the counter ready for the next action. However, because PROC2 can only write bytes, the strobe is only enabled when the low byte is written. For this reason the low byte is always written last.

The high or low byte is selected by AD0 from PROC2 (see Table 4-3). Chip select logic decodes the state of AD0 in order to generate the correct CS signal. The AD0 = 0 state is used to enable the strobe which increments the Fill counter.

### 4.7.5 Control/Status Register (CSR)

This is the main control register of the module. PROC1 updates the high byte as necessary. The host can poll the CSR to find the DHV11 status.

Associated with the CSR (see Figure 4-20) are the following:

- Indirect Address Register – a 4-bit latch (AD0 to AD3) which holds the number of the channel which is to be accessed. The contents of this register are used to index the addresses supplied by the host. Figure 4-20 shows how indexing is performed.

  **NOTE**

  **The indirect address register holds the channel number. Therefore, to configure a channel, the register has only to be loaded once. The control registers for that channel can then be loaded in sequence. Only when the host needs to access another channel must the indirect address register be reloaded.**

- Master Reset Latch – set by BINIT or by writing a 1 to bit 5 of the CSR. Cleared by P1IO14.L from PROC1.

  P1IO14.L and MRST.L are ORed at E29 to make sure that MRST does not go false until the end of P1IO14.L strobe.

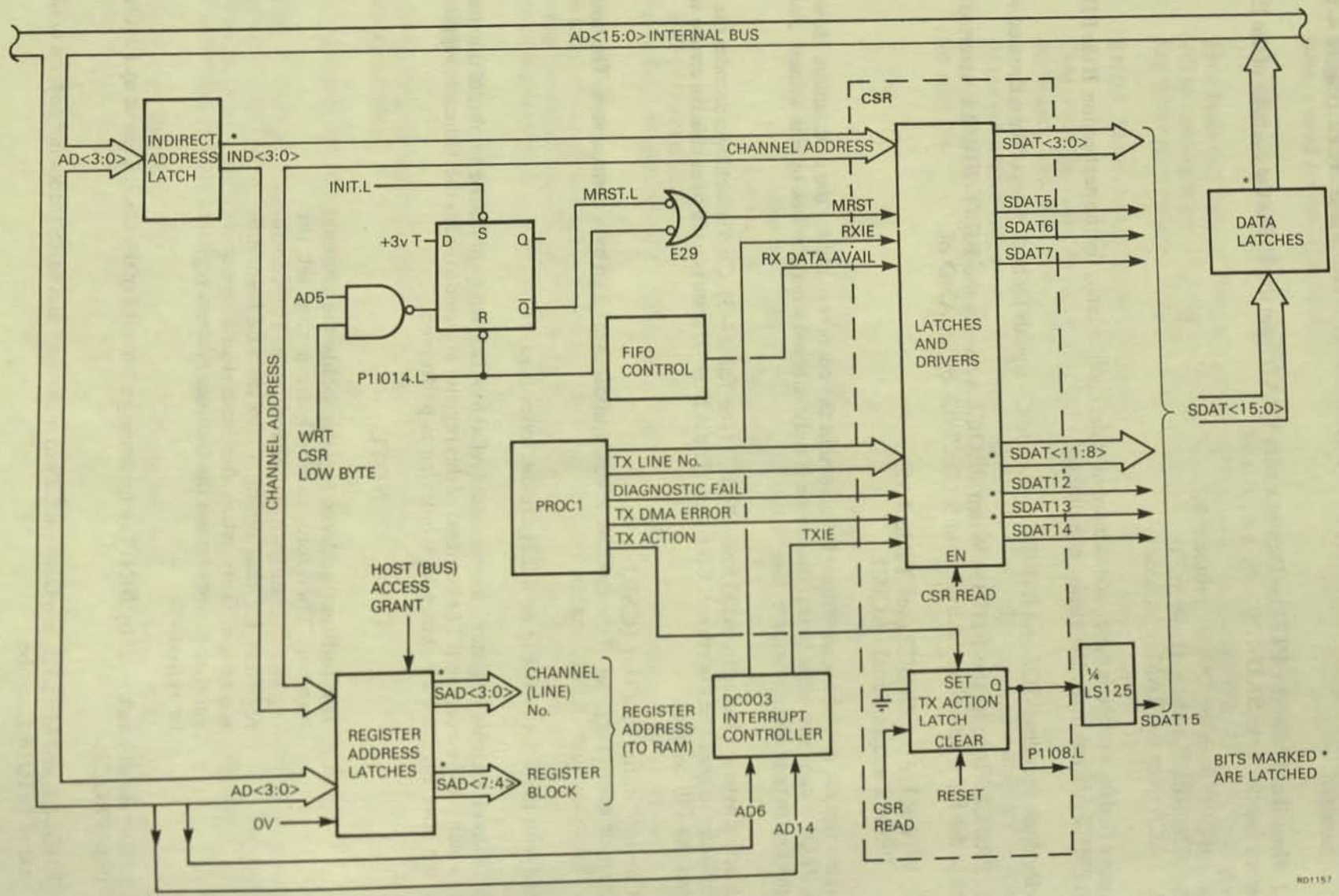



Figure 4-20 CSR and Register Address Circuits

- DC003 interrupt controller – provides interrupt enable status to the CSR. If bit 6 is set, receive interrupt is enabled. If bit 14 is set, transmit interrupt is enabled.

- FIFO Control – indicates that there is valid data in the FIFO.

- TX ACTION Latch – indicates when a transmit action has been completed. It is cleared when the CSR is read.

- PROC1 – provides the following information:

  On SDAT<11:8> – The related transmit channel number
  On SDAT12 – Diagnostic fail bit
  On SDAT13 – TX.DMA.ERROR bit
  On SDAT15 – TX.ACTION bit.

### 4.7.6 Voltage Converter (SMPS)

The DHV11's line drivers and receivers need both +12 V and –12 V supplies. The +12 V is supplied from the backplane, but –12 V is derived from +12 V by a voltage converter. This device uses switched-mode power supply techniques to generate the negative voltage.

The circuit is built around a TL494 switching regulator which uses pulse-width modulation to regulate the –12 V output. The maximum current supplied is approximately 400 mA.

Switched-mode power supplies of the type used by DHV11 operate according to the following principles (refer to the simplified circuit diagram of Figure 4-21).

Switching pulses from a pulse width modulator/regulator switch a transistor (Q1) to convert a dc input (V IN) to a pulsed dc current in an inductor (L).

When Q1 is switched on, point X becomes positive causing current to flow through L. This generates a magnetic field around L.

When Q1 is switched off, the current stops and the field collapses. This drives point X negative, and puts a forward bias on diode D. Current generated by the collapsing field is transferred via the forward-biased diode to the smoothing capacitors. In this way a negative voltage (V OUT) is generated.

As current is transferred to the output, the voltage at X rises until the diode is cut off again. The circuit will stay in this state until the next switching pulse opens Q1.

The inset of Figure 4-21 shows waveforms of the current through L, as seen by an oscilloscope across R14. When Q1 is switched on, current rises linearly until Q1 is switched off again. The collapsing field generates current, which reduces linearly as it is transferred to the output. With wider switching pulses, more current is transferred to the output. Therefore, the power transferred (shaded in the inset) is proportional to the width of switching pulses.

Feedback (VAR) from V OUT to the pulse width modulator is compared with a reference voltage (REF). If VAR is too negative (V OUT is too high), the width of switching pulses is reduced. If VAR is too positive, the width is increased. This action maintains V OUT at the correct level.

The same method of comparison is used to detect an over-current condition. When the voltage (proportional to output current) across R14 gets too high, the switching pulse width is reduced. This reduces the current.

The switching frequency, selected by R12 and C9, does not change. In DHV11 this frequency is 36.7 kHz. If the oscillator is working, a sawtoothed 36.7 kHz waveform can be detected on pin 5 or 6.

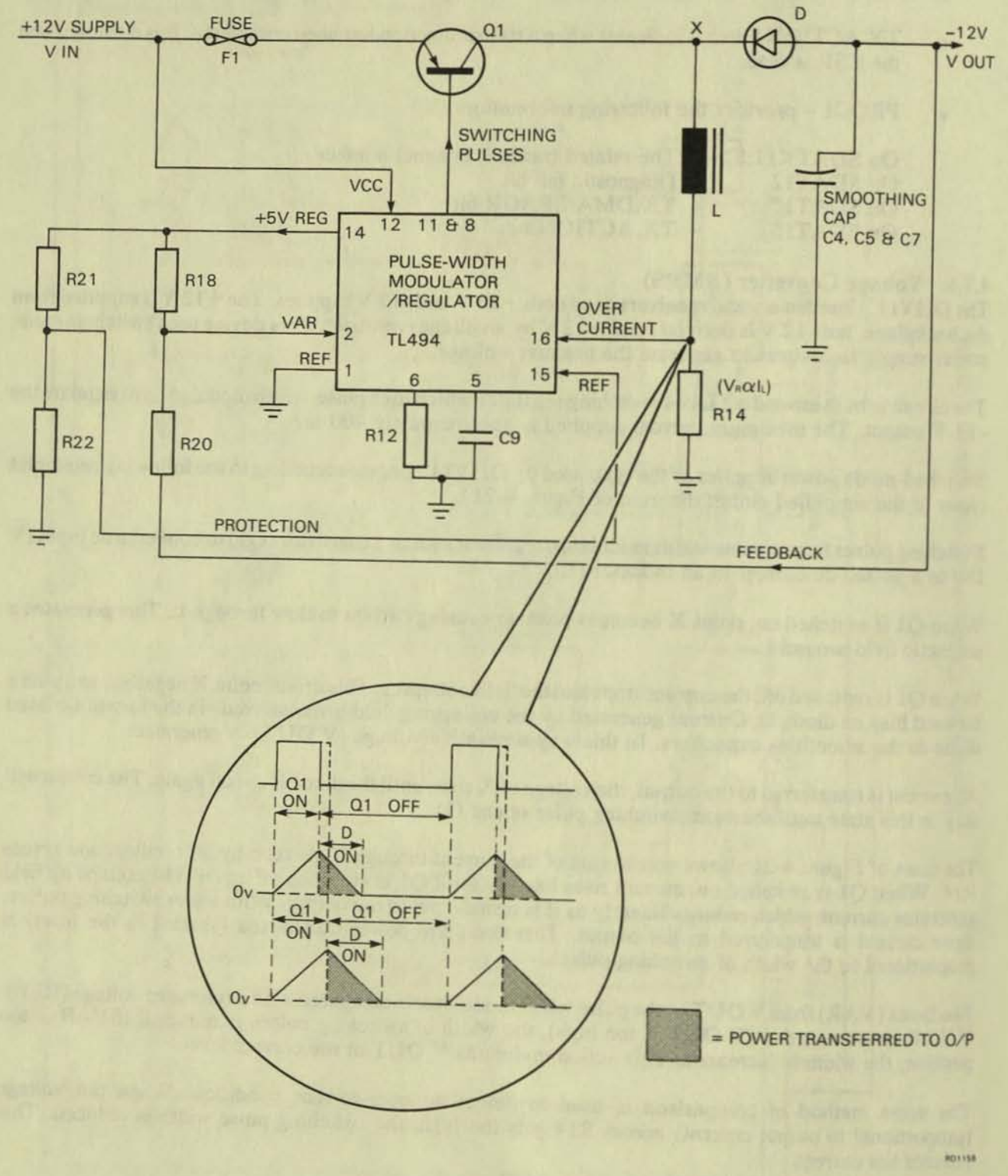



Figure 4-21 DHV11 Voltage Converter

## 4.8 ROM-BASED DIAGNOSTICS

### 4.8.1 Self-Test

**4.8.1.1 General** – When DHV11 or the Q-bus is reset, the DHV11's master reset latch is set. This causes the microcomputers to execute a DHV11 self-test sequence.

During self-test, diagnostic codes are stored in the top six words of the common RAM, and also in the top two bytes of PROC2's internal RAM.

At the end of self-test, control is passed to the communications firmware, which starts the initialization routine. During initialization the diagnostic codes are transferred to the FIFO.

At the end of the initialization process, the master reset latch is reset, thereby clearing CSR bit 5 (MRST). This bit is polled by the host. When MRST is cleared the host can read and interpret the diagnostic codes.

The 'diagnostic fail' bit in the CSR indicates whether the diagnostic program detected an error condition. The green 'diagnostic passed' LED is on when the bit is cleared and vice-versa.

When a serviceable DHV11 is reset, the LED follows this sequence:

1. Off for about 0.03 seconds
2. On for about 0.2 seconds
3. Off for 1 to 2.5 seconds
4. On permanently.

If the LED does not follow this sequence, the DHV11 is defective.

**4.8.1.2 Location and Interpretation of Diagnostic Codes** – Figure 4.22 shows where diagnostic information is loaded immediately after self-test. DIAG 0 to DIAG 7 are the diagnostic bytes stored during self-test. Diag 0 to Diag 7 are the same bytes which are transferred during initialization.

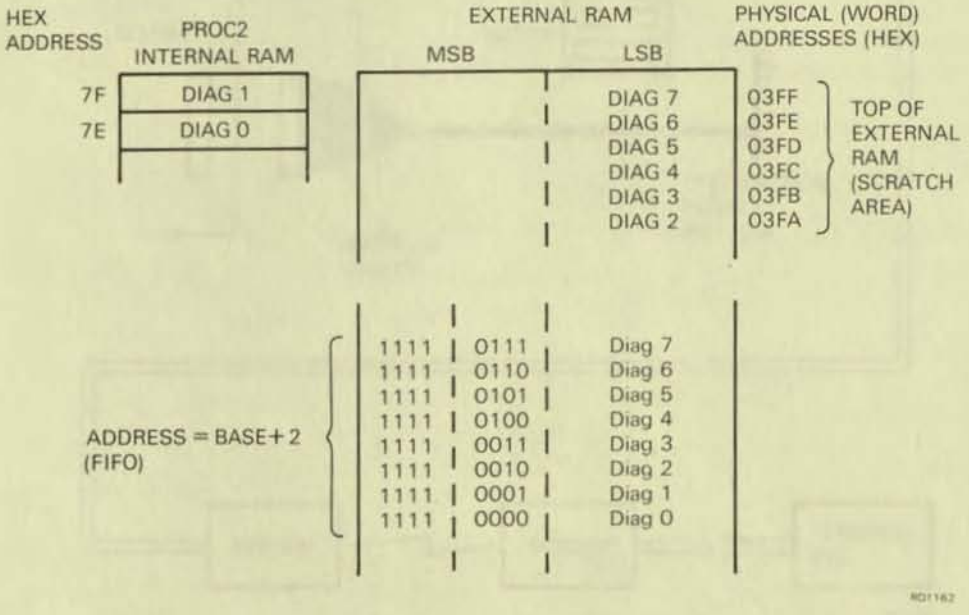



Figure 4-22 Register Contents After Self-Test

The high byte of RBUF can be interpreted as in Chapter 3, Section 3.2.2.2, except that bits 11 to 8 are not the line number. They indicate the sequence of the diagnostic byte. That is to say, 0 = first diagnostic byte, 1 = second diagnostic byte, and so on.

Chapter 3, Programming, explains how to interpret diagnostic codes.

### 4.8.2 Background Monitor Program (BMP)

Many of the regular operations by PROC1 and PROC2 are controlled by internal timers. The timers generate internal interrupts which vector the microcomputers to the appropriate routine.

When they are not busy with other tasks, PROC1 and PROC2 check their timer-generated interrupts. If there is an error, a NOGO report is passed to the host via the FIFO.

BMP can also be activated by command from the host. In this case a GO/NOGO report is passed to the host.

Any time the BMP finds an error, DIAG.FAIL is set in the CSR and the diagnostic LED is switched off. The LED will stay off, even if the fault clears.

# CHAPTER 5
# MAINTENANCE

## 5.1 SCOPE

This chapter explains the maintenance strategy and how the diagnostic programs are used to find a defective Field Replaceable Unit (FRU). The description is supplemented by a troubleshooting flowchart.

## 5.2 MAINTENANCE STRATEGY

### 5.2.1 Preventive Maintenance

No preventive maintenance is planned for this option. However, if the host system is being serviced, a visual check should be made for loose connectors and damaged cables.

### 5.2.2 Corrective Maintenance

The M3104 module, BC05L-xx cables, and H3173-A distribution panels are all FRUs. Corrective maintenance is therefore based on finding and replacing the defective FRU. However, if the fault is not in the option, it may be possible to perform tests of external equipment. Figure 5-1 can be used as a basis for troubleshooting.

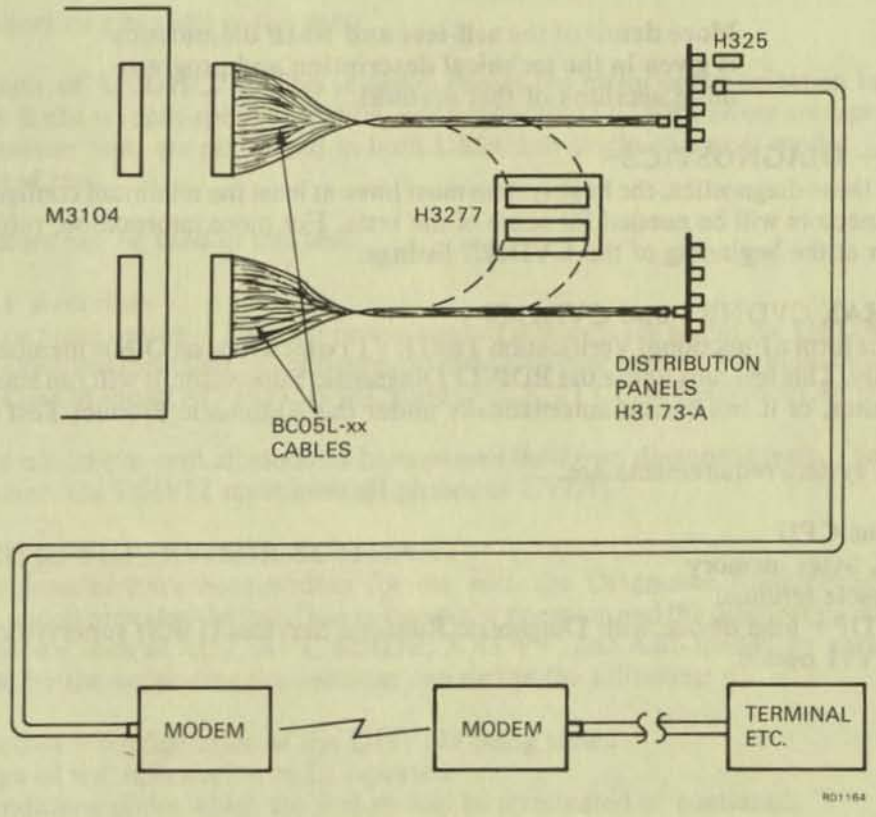



Figure 5-1 Troubleshooting Connection Diagram

## 5.3 INTERNAL DIAGNOSTICS

Internal diagnostics run without intervention from the operator. There are two tests, called self-test and background monitor test.

### 5.3.1 Self-Test

This test starts immediately after bus or device reset. It is a limited test, which checks the internally accessible parts of the DHV11 and gives a GO/NOGO indication via the DIAG.FAIL bit and the 'diagnostics passed' LED. Self-test also reports error or status information to the host via the FIFO. This information is used by system-based diagnostics such as CVDH??.

During a successful (no defects) self-test, the LED flashes OFF/ON/OFF before coming ON permanently. The first OFF period is very short and may not be seen. However, if the LED goes off and then comes on permanently, the diagnostic has found no faults. If self-test is skipped (see Chapter 3, Section 3.3.10.3), the LED will just go on.

Because of the limitations of self-test, a correct sequence does not guarantee that all sections of the module are good.

### 5.3.2 Background Monitor Program (BMP)

The BMP carries out tests on the DHV11 when the option is not engaged in other tasks. If it detects an error, the BMP reports to the host via the FIFO. It also switches off the 'diagnostics passed' LED.

By writing codes to the LPR, the host can cause the BMP to report the DHV11 status even if an error has not been detected. It is used if the host suspects that the DHV11 is dead.

**NOTE**

**More detail of the self-test and BMP diagnostics is given in the technical description and programming sections of this manual.**

## 5.4. XXDP+ DIAGNOSTICS

In order to run these diagnostics, the host system must have at least the minimum configuration specified. Loopback connectors will be needed for some of the tests. For more information, refer to the program documentation at the beginning of the CVDH?? listings.

### 5.4.1 CVDHA?, CVDHB?, and CVDHC?

These programs form a Functional Verification Test (FVT) which runs on Q-bus members of the PDP-11 processor family. This test runs under the PDP-11 Diagnostic Supervisor. It will run standalone using the XXDP+ monitor, or it can be run automatically under the Automatic Product Test (APT) system.

The minimum system requirements are:

- Q-bus CPU
- 32K bytes memory
- Console terminal
- XXDP+ load device with Diagnostic Runtime Services (DRS) supervisor
- DHV11 option.

In order to test the full DMA address capability of the DHV11, the diagnostic uses the following address patterns. If the high address lines are to be tested, the host must have memory at the following locations as well as the 32K bytes defined in the previous paragraph:

| Address bits | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | – | – |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory address (High bank) | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | X | X | X | X |
| Memory address (Low bank) | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | X | X | X | X |

If memory is not available at these locations, some high DMA address bits will not be tested. This will not be considered as an error. The operator, by answering a prompt, can display information specifying the bits which were tested.

5.4.1.1 **Functions of CVDHA?** – This program checks the reset and the register access functions, and verifies that the handshake between the DHV11 and the host is operating correctly. It also checks reports from the self-test and BMP.

Loopback connectors are not used in this test.

5.4.1.2 **Functions of CVDHB?** – This program checks the major communication functions of the DHV11. It verifies the correct operation of modem control signals and the register bits which control and report them. CVDHB? does not perform extensive data transmission and reception tests.

Loopback connectors can be used in this test.

5.4.1.3 **Functions of CVDHC?** – This program checks the major communication functions which use the DUARTs. It checks split-speed operation, and verifies that DUART errors are reported correctly. Extensive data transfer tests are performed in both DMA and single-character modes. CVDHC? also includes a keyboard test.

Loopback connectors can be used in this test.

### 5.4.2 DECX/11 Exerciser

When a DHV11 or other option is installed or replaced, it is necessary to run the DECX/11 exerciser CXDHVxx. The exerciser must first be configured to match the host system. For more information, refer to the DECX/11 User Manual (AC-FO35B-MC) and DECX/11 Cross-Reference (AC-FO55C-MC).

DECX/11 should not be run until all modules have passed their own diagnostic tests. Therefore, before running the exerciser, the DHV11 must pass all phases of CVDH??.

## 5.5 DIAGNOSTIC SUPERVISOR SUMMARY

The CVDH?? diagnostics have been written for use with the Diagnostic Runtime Services (DRS) supervisor. DRS, which provides the interface between the operator and the diagnostic programs, can be used with load systems such as ACT, APT, SLIDE, XXDP+, and ABS loader. By answering prompt questions supplied by the supervisor the operator can define the following:

1. The hardware configuration of the DHV11s being tested
2. The type of test information to be reported
3. The conditions under which the test should be terminated or continued.

### 5.5.1 Loading the Supervisor Diagnostic

The diagnostic program may be loaded and started in the normal way, using any of the supported load systems. For example, using XXDP+, the program CVDHBA.BIN is loaded and started by typing R CVDHBA.

The diagnostic and the supervisor will be loaded and the program started. The program types the following message:

```
CVDHBA.BIN
DRSC7
CVDHB-A-0
DHV-11 FUNCT TEST PART2
UNIT IS DHV-11
RESTART ADDR: xxxxxx
DR>
```

DR> is the prompt for the diagnostic supervisor routine. At this point a supervisor command must be entered (supervisor commands are listed in Section 5.5.3).

A0 on the end of CVDHB indicates the revision level (A) and the patch level (0).

### 5.5.2 Four Steps to Run a Supervisor Diagnostic

1. Enter the start command.

   When the prompt DR> is issued, type:

   STA/PASS:1/FLAGS:HOE<CR>

   The switches and flags are optional.

2. Answer the hardware parameter questions.

   The program prompts with:

   CHANGE HW?

   You must answer Y to this query if you want to change the hardware parameter tables. The program will then ask a number of hardware parameter questions in sequence. For example, the first question is:

   # UNITS?

   At this point, enter the number of units to be tested.

   **NOTE**

   **Some versions of the diagnostic supervisor do not ask the CHANGE HW? question at the first start command. Instead they go straight into the hardware parameter question sequence.**

The answers to the questions are used to build hardware parameter tables (P-tables) in memory. A series of questions is posed for each device to be tested. A hardware P-table is built for each device.

3. Answer the software parameter questions.

   When all the hardware P-tables are built the program responds with:

   CHANGE SW?

   If other than default parameters are wanted for the software, type Y. If the default parameters are wanted, type N.

   If you type Y, a series of software questions will be asked and the answers to these will be entered into the software P-table in memory. The software questions will be asked only once, regardless of the number of units to be tested.

4. Diagnostic execution

   After the software questions have been answered, the diagnostic starts to run.

   What happens next is determined by the switch options selected with the start command, or errors occurring during execution of the diagnostic.

### 5.5.3 Supervisor Commands

The supervisor commands that may be issued in response to the DR> prompt are as follows:

- START — Starts a diagnostic program
- RESTART — When a diagnostic has stopped and control is given back to the supervisor, this command restarts the program from the beginning
- CONTINUE — Allows a diagnostic to continue running from where it was stopped
- PROCEED — Causes the diagnostic to resume with the next test after the one in which it halted
- EXIT — Transfers control to the XXDP+ monitor
- DROP — Drops units specified until an ADD or START command is given
- ADD — Adds units specified. These units must have previously been dropped
- PRINT — Prints out statistics if available
- DISPLAY — Displays P-Tables
- FLAGS — Used to change flags
- ZFLAGS — Clears flags.

All of the supervisor commands except EXIT, PRINT, FLAGS, and ZFLAGS can be used with switch options.

#### 5.5.3.1 Command Switches

Switch options may be used with most supervisor commands. The available switches and their functions are as follows:

- /TESTS: Used to specify the tests to be run (the default is all tests). An example of the tests switch used with the start command to run tests 1 to 5, 19, and 34 to 38 would be:

  DR> START/TESTS:1-5:19:34-38<CR>

- /PASS: Used to specify the number of passes for the diagnostic to run. For example:

  DR> START/PASS:1<CR>

  In this example, the diagnostic would complete one pass and give control back to the supervisor.

- /EOP: Used to specify how many passes of the diagnostic will occur before the end of pass message is printed (the default is one).

- /UNITS: Used to specify the units to be run. This switch is valid only if N was entered in response to the CHANGE HW? question.

- /FLAGS: Used to check for conditions and modify program execution accordingly. The conditions checked for are as follows:

  | | |
  |---|---|
  | :HOE | Halt on error (transfers control back to the supervisor) |
  | :LOE | Loop on error |
  | :IER | Inhibit error reports |
  | :IBE | Inhibit basic error information |
  | :IXE | Inhibit extended error information |
  | :PRI | Print errors on line printer |
  | :PNT | Print the number of the test being executed before execution |
  | :BOE | Ring bell on error |
  | :UAM | Run in unattended mode, bypass manual intervention tests |
  | :ISR | Inhibit statistical reports |
  | :IOU | Inhibit dropping of units by program. |

### 5.5.4 Control/Escape Characters Supported

The keyboard functions supported by the diagnostic supervisor are as follows:

- CTRL/C (^C) Returns control to the supervisor. The DR> prompt would be typed in response to CTRL/C. This function can be typed at any time.

- CTRL/Z (^Z) Used during hardware or software dialogue to terminate the dialogue and select default values.

- CTRL/O (^O) Disables all printouts. This is valid only during a printout.

- CTRL/S (^S) Used during a printout to temporarily freeze the printout.

- CTRL/Q (^Q) Resumes a printout after a CTRL/S.

### 5.5.5 Example Printouts

Two examples of diagnostic printouts follow. The first is error-free. In the second test, the device address is incorrect.

Entries by the operator are underlined. An underline without an entry shows that the operator has pressed the RETURN key to select the default parameter.

1. Error-free pass

```
R CVDHBA
CVDHBA.BIN

DRSC7
CVDHB-A-0
DHV-11 FUNCT TEST PART2
UNIT 1 IS DHV-11
RESTART ADDR: 147670

DR>START

CHANGE HW (L) ? Y

#UNITS (D) ? 1

UNIT 0

CSR ADDRESS: (0) 160460 ? 160500
INTERRUPT VECTOR ADDRESS: (0) 300 ?_
ACTIVE LINE BIT MAP: (0) 377?_

TYPE OF LOOPBACK (1=INTERNAL, 2=STAGGERED,
                  3=25 PIN CONNECTOR, 4=MODEM): (0) 2 ?_

INTERRUPT BR LEVEL: (0) 4 ?_

CHANGE SW (L) ? Y

REPORT UNIT NUMBER AS EACH UNIT IS TESTED: (L) Y ?_
NUMBER OF INDIVIDUAL DATA ERROR TO REPORT ON A LINE:  (D) 0 ?_

CVDHB EOP 1
    0 CUMULATIVE ERRORS

DR>EXIT
```

2. Test with wrong device address selected

```
R CVDHBA
CVDHBA.BIN
DRSC7
CVDHB-A-0
DHV-11 FUNCT TEST PART2
UNIT IS DHV-11
RESTART ADDR: 147670
DR>START

CHANGE HW (L) ? Y

 #UNITS (D) ? 1

UNIT 0
CSR ADDRESS: (0) 160460 ? 160500
INTERRUPT VECTOR ADDRESS: (0) 377 ?_
ACTIVE LINE BIT MAP: (0) 377 ?_
TYPE OF LOOPBACK (1=INTERNAL, S=STAGGERED,
                  3=25PIN CONNECTOR, 4=MODEM): (0) 2 ?_
INTERRUPT BR LEVEL: (0) 4 ?_

CHANGE SW (L) ? Y

REPORT UNIT NUMBER AS EACH UNIT IS TESTED: (L) Y ?_
NUMBER OF INDIVIDUAL DATA ERRORS TO REPORT ON A LINE (D) 0 ?_

CVDHB DVC FTL ERROR 00101 ON UNIT 00 TST 001 SUB 000 PC: 021354

DEVICE REGISTER ACCESS ERRORS
BUS TIME-OUT TRAP CAUSED BY READ ATTEMPT
BUS TIME-OUT TRAP CAUSED BY WRITE ATTEMPT
DHV MAY BE AT THE WRONG Q-BUS ADDRESS.

 UNIT    0 DROPPED FROM FURTHER TESTING

PASS ABORTED FOR THIS UNIT
CVDHB EOP  1
    1 CUMULATIVE ERRORS

DR>
```

## 5.6 CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE ON MICROVAX I SYSTEMS

Corrective maintenance is performed when operational failures or diagnostic tests indicate that the DHV11 is defective. Diagnostic test programs for DHV11s installed in MicroVAX I systems are listed below.

| | |
|---|---|
| EHKMV | Macroverify-MicroVAX Systems Test |
| EHXDH | DHV11 Tests |

### 5.6.1 The Macroverify Diagnostic

Macroverify is a system test which is quick to run, and is used:

- As a first-line check before using device diagnostics
- As a confidence check
- To verify the complete system after installation or maintenance.

The Macroverify diagnostic runs on a standalone basis and operates when the CPU Tests diskette is booted from one of the RX50 drives. The program takes up to four minutes to run and needs 30K bytes of memory.

The tests performed by Macroverify do not destroy information recorded on the disks.

5.6.1.1 Setting Up Procedures – Power up all devices in the configuration. Set all the disk drives for I/O. Place a diskette in each RX50 drive. Disconnect any external cables or test connectors from the DLVJ1 and DHV11 distribution panels. If the system is not set up correctly, Macroverify will output a TEST FAILED message.

5.6.1.2 Bootstrapping Procedure – To boot the Macroverify diagnostic, mount the CPU Tests diskette in one of the RX50 drives and type:

```
B DUA1      (boot from drive 1)
```

or:

```
B DUA2      (boot from drive 2)
```

5.6.1.3 Macroverify Operation – Macroverify runs as soon as the boot operation is completed successfully. The program contains routines which check for all possible system configurations.

For each possible device, a test is made to see if the device responds to its assigned Q-bus address. If the device does not respond, the following status message is displayed on the console.

```
DEVICE xxxxx WITH CSR yyyyyy, VECTOR zzz NOT FOUND.
NO TESTING PERFORMED.
```

NOTES

1. The vector number will not be displayed for devices with floating vectors.

2. The standard address and vector are $760440_8$ and $300_8$ respectively, but early versions of Macroverify expect the address to be $760500_8$. The status message will be displayed even if the DHV11 is configured correctly. Later versions of Macroverify test the DHV11 at the standard address of 760440 vector 300. Note that, if other floating address devices are installed, the DHV11 address will be moved within the floating address space, and will not be recognised by Macroverify.

For each device that responds to its assigned address, a sequence of user-level tests is performed. A 'test succeeded' or 'test failed' message is displayed, together with the time taken for a successful test.

### 5.6.2 DHV11 Diagnostic EHXDH

The EHXDH diagnostic is resident on the MicroVAX system tests diskette number 3. This diagnostic runs under VDS, and should be run if an operational failure or the Macroverify program indicates a defective DHV11.

5.6.2.1 Setting Up Procedures – Before running the diagnostic, make sure that the address and vector are correctly set up, as described in Chapter 2, Sections 2.3.1 and 2.3.2.

Disconnect all external cables from the distribution panel.

5.6.2.2 Bootstrapping Procedures – To boot from the MicroVAX system test diskette, mount diskette 2 on drive 0 of the RX50 drive, and diskette 3 on drive 1 of the RX50.

NOTE

The DHV11 diagnostic is contained on the third diagnostic diskette. This diskette does NOT contain a bootable diagnostic monitor. Therefore, the user must boot diskette 2 on drive 0, and load the diagnostic from diskette 3 on drive 1.

The diagnostic can now be booted in the manner described in the first example of the test format.

Examples of the test format are shown in the following pages. Operator inputs are underlined in the examples.

```
>>> B/10 DUA1

ATTEMPTING BOOTSTRAP

VAX DIAGNOSTIC SOFTWARE
      PROPERTY OF
DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION

** CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY **

Use Authorized Only Pursuant To A Valid Right-to-use License


DIAGNOSTIC SUPERVISOR.  ZZ-EHSAA-V6.13-001   1-JAN-1983 00:00:03
DS> ATTACH RX50
Device Link? DUA
Device Name? DUA2
DS> SET LOAD DUA2:
```

The above sequence enables diskette 3 mounted in drive 1 (logical device DUA2)

How to Call Up the Directory for This Diagnostic

```
DS> DIR

Directory _DUA2:[SYS0.SYSMAINT]

EHXDH.EXE;1          EHXDH.HLP;1          EHXVS.EXE;1          EHXVS.HLP;1
EVRMA.EXE;1          EVRMA.HLP;1          EVRMB.EXE;1          EVRMB.HLP;1
EVRMC.EXE;1          EVRMC.HLP;1

Total of 10 files
```

Several test options are available to the user. Details of these options may be obtained by running the diagnostic HELP file.

### Example of Running a HELP File

```
DS> HELP EHXDH

  HELP

      The DHV11 is an asynchronous multiplexer  that  provides  an
    interface between eight asynchronous serial data communications
    channels and any processor that supports Q 22 bus devices.

      EHXDH is the name of the MICRO VAX Standalone Diagnostic.   It  is
    to  be  used to verify that a DHV11 connected via Q 22 bus to a MICRO VAX
    system  is  functioning  correctly.

Additional information available:

HELP            RUN_TIME        REQUIREMENTS    PREREQUISITES   ATTACH_DHV11
OPTIONS         EVENT_FLAGS     SUMMARY         DEVICE          QUICK
SECTIONS        Errors          TEST_DESC
```

### How to Attach, Load, and Start a DHV Diagnostic at Standard Address and Vector

```
DS> LOAD EHXDH
DS> ATT DHV11
Device Link? HUB
Device Name? TXA
Device Address? 760440
Vector Address? 300
BR Level? 4
DS> SEL TXA:
```

### Example of Running an Internal Test

```
DS> START

.. Program: DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test, revision 1.0, 29 tests,
   at 00:02:30.28.
Testing: _TXA
lines to test [(ALL) or 0,1,2,...7] <RET>
Line  Speed  [(4800), 50, 75, 110, 134.5, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2000, 2400,
 7200, 9600, 19200, 38400] 9600
loop type [(INTERNAL), EXTERNAL, STAGGERED] <RET>

Micro Processor number 1 ROM version is 2

Micro Processor number 2 ROM version is 2

Frame error bit not tested; wrong looptype.              (This is not an error)
.. End of run, 0 errors detected, pass count is 1,           (Successful pass)
   time is  1-JAN 1983 00:06:28.40
```

### Example Showing Sections Available for the EHXDH Diagnostic

```
DS> HELP EHXDH SEC

  SECTIONS


        There two sections supplied with this diagnostic;
        • MODEM

        • ECHO


        The modem section runs a modem loopback test and is  invoked
     by using the vds command ST/SE=MODEM.

        The ECHO section allow a  user  to  select  a  line  with  a
     terminal  attached.  All characters typed on the terminal will be
     checked for errors, then echoed back to the terminal.
```

### Example Showing the Options That Are Available

```
DS> HELP EHXDH OPT

  OPTIONS


  Additional information available:

  LINES_TO_TEST  BAUD_RATE      LOOP_TYPE
```

**Example Showing the Tests Available for the EHXDH Diagnostic**

```
DS> HELP EHXDH TEST

  TEST_DESC

  Additional information available:
```

| Test No. | Test Description |
|---|---|
| 1. | **Device Register Address Test.** This test verifies that the UUT will respond to the proper Q-bus handshaking when accessed. Line 0 only is tested. |
| 2. | **Master Reset/Self-Test Test.** This test verifies that the self-test is operational. |
| 3. | **Master Reset/Skip Self-Test Test.** This test verifies that the master reset bit clears within a short time after it is set, if the Skip Self-Test sequence is used. The test verifies that the Skip Self-Test return codes are normal. |
| 4. | **Diag Field (BMP) Test.** This test verifies that a request for BMP code reporting is answered by the UUT within the specified time. |
| 5. | **Self-Test Forced Failure Test.** This test verifies that the self-test will report errors correctly when it is forced to fail. The test verifies that the diagnostic fail bit will go to the active and inactive states. |
| 6. | **ROM Version Printout Test.** This test reports the versions of numbers of the 8051 ROMS. |
| 7. | **Register Address Test.** This test verifies that the indexed registers can be uniquely addressed. |
| 8. | **ID Bit Test.** This test verifies that the identity bit which determines whether the device is a DHU11 or a DHV11 is either set (DHU11) or clear (DHV11). |
| 9. | **Tx Enable/Action.** This test verifies that if a data word is written without the Tx data bit set, no Tx action is generated. |
| 10. | **Rx Data Available/Rx Data Valid/Rx Enable Test.** This test verifies the following.<br>• That all relevant bits are initialized correctly<br>• That Rx DATA AVAILABLE and Rx DATA VALID remain clear if a character is transmitted with Rx ENABLE clear<br>• That Rx ENABLE sets and clears data and on the current line only<br>• That Rx receives data and on the current line only<br>• That Rx DATA AVAILABLE is cleared when the buffer is read, but that Rx DATA VALID remains set until the FIFO is empty<br>• That transmitted data is correct and that no errors have occurred |

11. **Maintenance Mode Test.** This test verifies that the maintenance modes are working correctly. The test will operate only if staggered loopback is selected.

12. **Rx FIFO Test.** This test verifies that the FIFO locations can be uniquely addressed from the Q22 bus. The FIFO is filled with 256 unique bytes of data, and is then checked for data integrity.

13. **Interrupts Test.** This test verifies that the Tx and Rx interrupts are operating correctly.

14. **DMA Start/DMA Abort Test.** This test verifies that each DMA start bit will initiate a DMA Tx on a line, that it can be aborted and resumed, and that DMA aborts and that completions cause interrupts.

15. **Byte Count Register Test.** This test verifies that the byte count registers function correctly, by checking that the number of bytes received is the same as the number of bytes transmitted.

16. **DMA Address/ Data Test.** This test verifies the ability of the device to correctly increment addresses and byte counts.

17. **Speed Test.** This test transmits characters at all speeds on all lines in internal loopback mode, using the Tx FIFO to transmit characters.

18. **XON/XOFF Test.** This test verifies that X-ON/X-OFF control is functioning correctly.

19. **Data Format Test.** This test verifies that all sizes and formats function correctly. Ten characters are used and each line is verified.

20. **Modem Signal Test.** This test verifies that changing the UUT line control DTR bit affects the state of the DTR control line and looped signals, and verifies that no unexpected bits are set. The test also verifies that changing the UUT line control RTS bit affects the state of the RTS control line. Provision is made for testing the ability of the modem to connect to another modem.

21. **Framing Error/ Break Bit Test.** This test verifies that forced framing errors are reported correctly.

22. **Parity Generation/Detection Test.** This test verifies that parity works correctly and that parity errors are reported. The test functions only in staggered loopback.

23. **Overrun Detection Test.** This test verifies that the UUT will receive the maximum number of characters without causing an overrun error, and that the receipt of one more character will cause an overrun error.

24. **Exerciser Test.** This test causes all lines to transmit simultaneously. 1024 byte buffers are used for transmission and reception. The format is 8 bit, no parity, and 1 stop bit.

25. **Modem Loop Test.** This test is run on a modem in loopback mode, or is run on a remote modem that is in remote loopback mode.

26. **Terminal Echo Test.** This test loops back all characters that are received on a line. The operator is asked to which line the characters are to be echoed; this will permit isolation of the direction of a failing line.

27. **I.AUTO Test.** This test verifies that the I.AUTO bit is functioning correctly.

28. **Split Speed Test Part A.** This test verifies the correct functioning of split speed operation. The test operates only in staggered loopback mode.

29. **Split Speed Test Part B.** This is a continuation of the previous test.

**Running Two Passes of the Diagnostic Staggered Loopback Test**

Remove the ribbon cables from the distribution panel and connect them to the H3277 test connector, as shown in Figure 2-5.

```
DS> START/PASS=2

.. Program: DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test, revision 1.0, 29 tests,
   at 00:09:30.42.
Testing: _TXA
lines to test [(ALL) or 0,1,2,...7] <RET>
Line  Speed  [(4800), 50, 75, 110, 134.5, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2000, 2400,
 7200, 9600, 19200, 38400] 9600
loop type [(INTERNAL), EXTERNAL, STAGGERED] STAGGERED

Micro Processor number 1 ROM version is 2

Micro Processor number 2 ROM version is 2

.. First pass done, 0 errors detected, time is  1-JAN-1983 00:14:38.06

Micro Processor number 1 ROM version is 2

Micro Processor number 2 ROM version is 2

.. End of run, 0 errors detected, pass count is 2,
   time is  1-JAN-1983 00:19:05.14
```

Restore the ribbon cables to their original positions in the distribution panel. See Figure 2-5.

The following example is the single loopback test with the H3277 loopback connector on line 0 of the distribution panel (see Figure 2-5)

```
DS> START

.. Program: DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test, revision 1.0, 29 tests,
   at 00:30:19.98.
Testing: _TXA
lines to test [(ALL) or 0,1,2,...7] 0
Line  Speed  [(4800), 50, 75, 110, 134.5, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2000, 2400,
 7200, 9600, 19200, 38400] <RET>
loop type [(INTERNAL), EXTERNAL, STAGGERED] EXTERNAL
Install all H325 turnaround connectors, type RETURN key when done [(No), Yes]
<RET>

Micro Processor number 1 ROM version is 2

Micro Processor number 2 ROM version is 2

Frame error bit not tested; wrong looptype.              (This is not an error)
.. End of run, 0 errors detected, pass count is 1,
   time is  1-JAN 1983 00:33:02.17
```

Remove all the test connectors, and reconnect the terminals if they have been removed for test purposes.

The following example is of the terminal echo test line 0. Any character typed on the terminal will be echoed.

This test can only be effective if an additional VDU and cable are available.

```
DS> START/SEC=ECHO

.. Program: DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test, revision 1.0, 29 tests,
   at 00:33:38.60.
Testing: _TXA
lines to test [(ALL), or 0,1,2,...7] 0
Line  Speed  [(4800), 50, 75, 110, 134.5, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2000, 2400,
 7200, 9600, 19200, 38400] 9600

^C
```

The following test example shows errors

```
> START

.. Program DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test, revision 1.0, 29 tests,
   at 00:22:17.95.
Testing: _TXA
lines to test [(ALL) or 0,1,2,...7] 0
Line  Speed  [(4800), 50, 75, 110, 134.5, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2000, 2400,
 7200, 9600, 19200, 38400] 9600
loop type [(INTERNAL), EXTERNAL, STAGGERED] EXTERNAL
Install all H3277 turnaround connectors, type RETURN key when done [(No), Yes]
YES

Micro Processor number 1 ROM version is 2

Micro Processor number 2 ROM version is 2

********  DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test - 1.0  ********
 Pass 1, test 18, subtest 1, error 15,  1-JAN-1983 00:24:56.18
 Hard error while testing TXA: XON/XOFF Test failed

Current line number =  0

********  End of Hard error number 15 ********


********  DHV11 - Vax Functional Verification Test - 1.0  ********
 Pass 1, test 20, subtest 1, error 16,  1-JAN 1983 00:25:06.66
 Hard error while testing TXA: Modem Signal Test failed

Current line number =  0

********  End of Hard error number 16 ********


********  DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test - 1.0  ********
 Pass 1, test 20, subtest 1, error 22,  1-JAN-1983 00:25:15.74
 Hard error while testing TXA: Modem Signal Test failed

Current line number = 0

********  End of hard error number 22 ********


********  DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test - 1.0  ********
 Pass 1, test 20, subtest 1, error 35,  1-JAN-1983 00:25:24.87
 Hard error while testing TXA: Modem Signal Test failed

Current line number =  0

********  End of Hard error number 35 ********
```

```
Frame error bit not tested; wrong looptype.
******** DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test - 1.0 ********
 Pass 1, test 21, subtest 1, error 3,  1-JAN-1983 00:25:36.46
 Hard error while testing TXA: Framing Error/Break Bit Test failed

Current line number = 0

******** End of Hard error number 3 ********

******** DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test - 1.0 ********
 Pass 1, test 24, subtest 1, error 8,  1-JAN-1983 00:25:54.65
 Hard error while testing TXA: Exerciser Test Failed

Current line number =  0

******** End of Hard error number 8 ********


******** DHV11 - VAX Functional Verification Test - 1.0 ********
 Pass 1, test 27, subtest 1, error 9,  1-JAN-1983 00:26:04.10
 Hard error while testing TXA: I.auto test failed

Current line number = 0

******** End of Hard error number 9 ********


.. End of run, 7 errors detected, pass count is 1,
   time is  1-JAN-1983 00:26:12.89
DS>
```

## 5.7 RUNNING MICROVAX II DIAGNOSTICS

These diagnostics are entirely different from MicroVAX I diagnostics in that they are based on VAXELN, and not on the VAX diagnostic supervisor as in MicroVAX I.

### 5.7.1 Overview of the MicroVAX II Maintenance System

The MicroVAX II Maintenance System (MMS) is a menu-driven maintenance and diagnostic system which uses the MicroVAX Diagnostic Monitor (MDM). MMS is booted from an RX50 diskette drive, or from a TK50 tape drive. MMS is available in two versions.

- The customer version packed with each system
- The service version which is available to the customer under license

The two versions share the same main menu, but only the maintenance version contains full troubleshooting and maintenance capabilities.

The loading procedure is the same for both versions. After the power-on preliminaries have completed, there is a countdown sequence before the main menu is displayed.

### 5.7.2. Running the Customer Version of the MicroVAX II Diagnostic

The customer will proceed as described in Section 5.7.3 for the service version, but selection from the main menu is limited, and options 3 and 4 are not available. Normally the customer will select option 1 to test the system.

If there is a failure during the customer version of the diagnostics, an error message is output to the terminal. The user may then want to consider whether help is needed from DEC trained staff.

### 5.7.3 Running the Maintenance Version of the MicroVAX II Diagnostic

When booting from the TK50, make sure that all fixed disk drives are off-line, and that the doors to all diskette drives are open. Booting the TK50 takes about three minutes.

**If the halts are disabled** before the system is powered ON, MMS will automatically boot.

**If the halts are enabled** on the MicroVAX II system, the prompt will appear when the system is powered on. To boot the MMS under these conditions, enter the commands after the prompt as follows.

```
>>> b DUAx
```

(where x is the number of the disk drive containing the MMS)

```
>>> b MUAx
```

(where x is the number of the tape drive containing the MMS)

After booting, a disclaimer message appears on the screen, together with copyright and license information, and the revision level of MMS. The revision level is important because the newer levels include testing for additional options.

An example of the format now follows. Operator inputs are underlined.

```
>>> B DUA2

KA630-A.V1.0

Performing normal system tests.

  7..6..5..4..3..

Tests completed.

Loading system software.

  2..1..0..

        VAXELN V2.0-00

 MicroVAX  Maintenance  System  -  MDM Version 1.02

                  CONFIDENTIAL DIAGNOSTIC SOFTWARE
                          PROPERTY OF
                  DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION

     Use Authorized Only Pursuant to a Valid Right-to-use License

 Copyright (c) 1985
 Digital Equipment Corporation

Current date and time is: 17-NOV-1985 15:30:11.64

Press the RETURN key to continue,
OR enter new date and time, then press the RETURN key.

      [DD-MMM-YYYY HH:MM]: <RET>


MAIN  MENU

      1  -  Test the system

      2  -  Show system configuration and devices

      3  -  Display the Utilities Menu

      4  -  Display the Service Menu

      5  -  Exit MicroVAX Maintenance System

Type the number, then press the RETURN key. > 2
```

```
SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND DEVICES

SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

     CPUA ... MicroVAX CPU
         KA630-AA 1MB, FPU M00 H00
     MEMA ... MicroVAX memory system
         3 megabytes. 6144 Pages.
              KA630 ... CPU module, 1MB on-board memory.
              MS630-BA ... Quad height memory module, 2MB.
     RQDXA ... Winchester/floppy disk controller.
         Revisions =94 and 6
              RX50 ... Floppy disk drive.
                   ... Cannot identify drive, Offline.
     TK50A ... Cartridge Tape Controller
     DEQNAA ... Ethernet controller.
         08-00-2B-02-08-9D
     DHV11A ... 8 line asynchronous multiplexer
         ROM Rev 11 9

Press the RETURN key to return to the previous menu. > <RET>
>

MAIN  MENU

     1 - Test the system


     2 - Show system configuration and devices


     3 - Display the Utilities Menu


     4 - Display the Service Menu

     5 - Exit MicroVAX Maintenance System

Type the number, then press the RETURN key. > 4
```

```
SERVICE MENU

     CAUTION: This menu is intended for use by qualified service
     personnel only.  Misuse of the commands could destroy data.

     1 - Set test message and parameters

     2 - Exercise system continuously

     3 - Display the device menu

     4 - Enter system commands

Type the number, then press the RETURN key,
OR type 0 and Press the RETURN key to return to the main menu. > 4

SERVICE MENU
ENTER SYSTEM COMMANDS

     CAUTION: You are entering the MicroVAX Diagnostic Monitor (MDM)
     via the command line processor.  There are no menus once you
     enter the monitor. Refer to the MDM User's Guide for detailed
     instructions.

     To return to the Main Menu from the MicroVAX Diagnostic Monitor
     type "RESTART" and press the RETURN key, or reboot the system.

Press the RETURN key to enter the MicroVAX Diagnostic Monitor,
OR type 0 and Press the RETURN key to return to the Main Menu. > <RET>
```

```
MDM>> HELP

 Current Commands Are:
      CONFIGURE                       - Configure System
      SELECT Diag_Name                - Select diagnostic (all units) to run
      ENABLE Diag_Name                - Allow a diagnostic to run
      DISABLE Diag_Name               - Prevent a diagnostic from running
      SET  DETAILED_MESSAGE ON        - Display detailed messages
           DETAILED_MESSAGE OFF       - DO NOT display detailed message
           MODE VERIFY                - Set verify mode tests
                SERVICE               - Set service mode tests
           PROGRESS OFF               - Print no progress messages
           PROGRESS BRIEF             - Controller progress messages
           PROGRESS FULL              - Controller and test progress messages
           SECTION FUNCTIONAL         - Set functional test section
                   UTILITY            - Set utility test section
                   EXERCISER          - Set exerciser test section
           TEST    ALL                - Run all tests
                   Number             - Run only test number xx
           PASSES Number              - Run tests for xx passes
      START                           - Start selected tests running
      START ALL                       - Start all tests running
      SHOW CONFIGURATION              - Show configuration information
      SHOW DEFAULT                    - Show default settings
      SHOW DEVICE UTILITIES           - Show utility titles
      SHOW ERRORS                     - Show reported errors
MDM>> CONFIG

MDM>> SHOW CONFIG

    1    CPUA  Enabled  KA630-AA 1MB, FPU M00 H00
    2    MEMA  Enabled  3 megabytes. 6144 Pages.
    3    RQDXA  Enabled  Revisions =94 and 6
    4    TK50A  Enabled
    5    DEQNAA  Enabled  08-00-2B-02-08-9D
    6    DHV11A  Enabled  ROM Rev 11 9
MDM>> SEL DHV11A

MDM>> ENA DHV11A

MDM>> SHOW DEV UT

 DHV11A 8 line asynchronous multiplexer
      1 - Transmit Pattern Test
      2 - Terminal Echo Test
      3 - Bulkhead Loopback Test
```

```
MDM>> SHOW DEF

  Selected Device:
    6    DHV11A  Enabled  ROM Rev 11 9
  Mode is SERVICE
  Section is FUNCTIONAL
  Number of passes is: 1
  No time limit
  Tests to be run:   ALL
  Continue on error
  Detailed message is  Off
  Progress message is  Off
MDM>> START
Please do the following things:
Open the Backpanel of the MicroVax.
Disconnect the bulkhead from the DHV11 flat ribbon cables.
Place the H3277 loopback connector between the
two flat ribbon cables. See DHV11 Technical Manual for
illustration PG. 1-6.
Hit return when finished ...

Thank you for attaching the loopback H3277 connector.

MDM>> SET DET ON

MDM>> SET PROG FULL

MDM>> START
DHV11A  started by MDM
DHV11A DSL  Pass number 1           Test number 1
DHV11A DSL  Pass number 1           Test number 2
DHV11A DSL  Pass number 1           Test number 3
DHV11A DSL  Pass number 1           Test number 4
DHV11A DSL  Pass number 1           Test number 5
Cables A and B passed Functional test 5.
DHV11A ended with no errors

MDM>>
```

**When all tests have been completed**

On completing the test sequence with zero errors:

- Remove the diagnostic media and store it in a safe place
- Restore the system configuration.

## 5.8 FIELD REPLACEABLE UNITS (FRUs)

The FRUs are:

| Reference No. | Item |
|---|---|
| M3104 | Quad-height module |
| BC05L-xx | Flat cable, 40 conductor |
| H3173-A | Distribution panel |
| H3277 | Staggered loopback test connector |
| H325 | Line loopback test connector |

The last two items do not affect the operation of the system.

Depending on local maintenance strategy, modems and/or external cables may also be FRUs. See Figure 5-1.

## 5.9 TROUBLESHOOTING FLOWCHART

When troubleshooting is necessary, the flowchart sequence of Figure 5-2 should be used as a guide.

The flowchart is based on the CVDH?? diagnostics. Note that CVDHA? has no loopback mode.

## 5.10 COMPONENT REPLACEMENT

The M3104 module is a multilayer fine-line-etch PCB. Only the microcomputers, which are on sockets, can be replaced in the field. This should only happen if the firmware is updated.

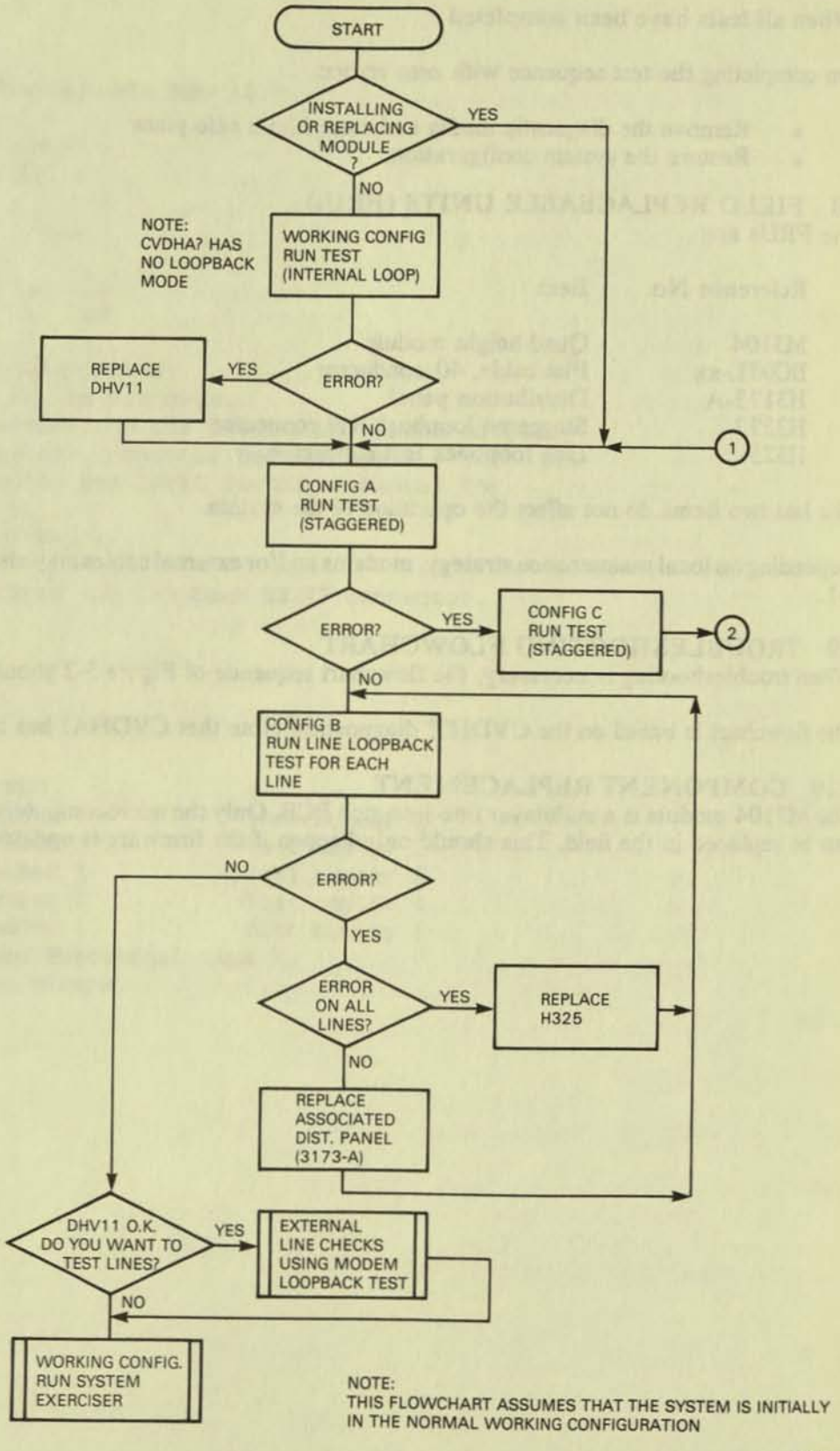



Figure 5-2 Troubleshooting Flowchart

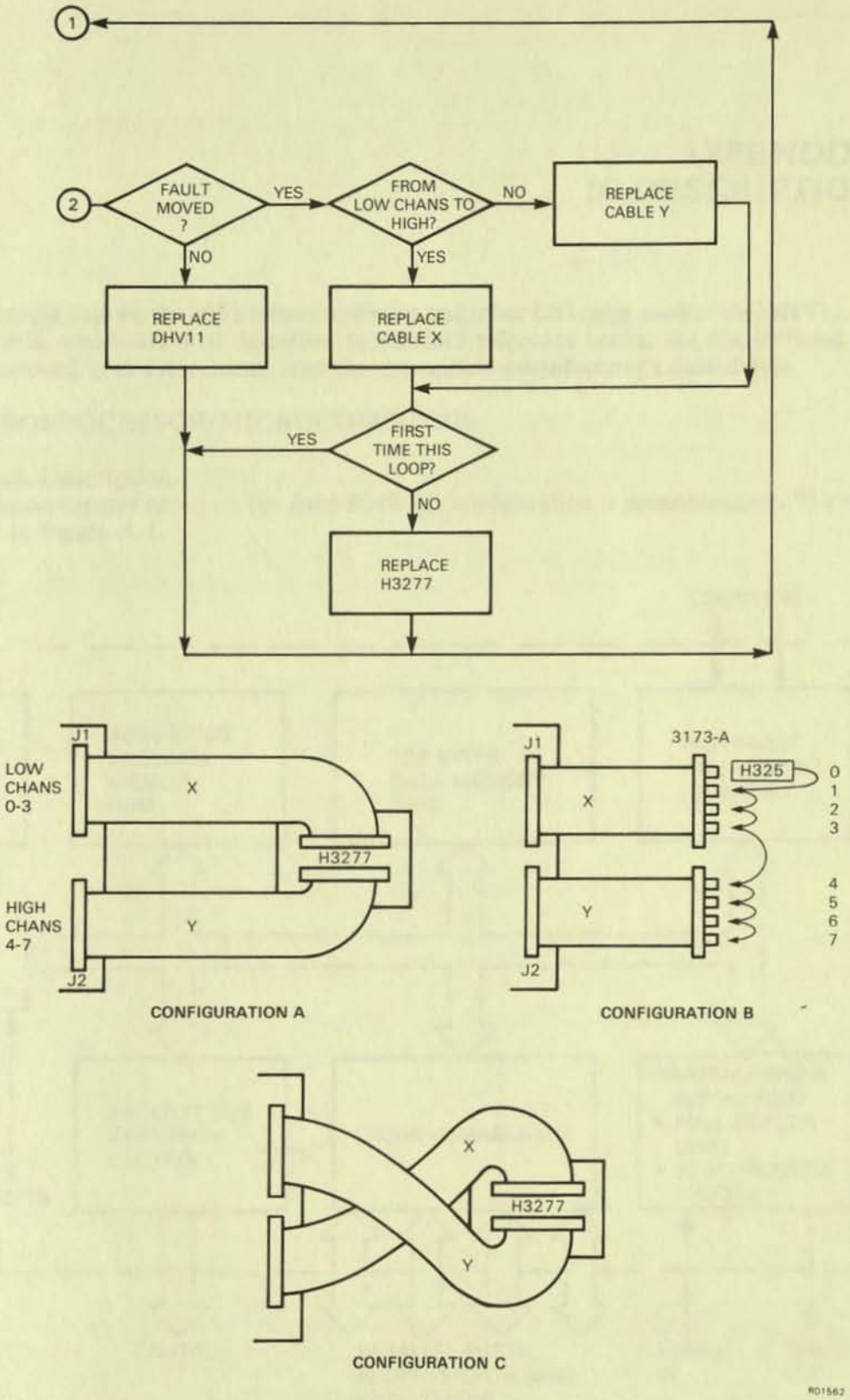



Figure 5-2 Troubleshooting Flowchart (Cont)

# APPENDIX A
# IC DESCRIPTIONS

## A.1 SCOPE

This appendix contains data on the 8051 microcomputers and other LSI chips used in the DHV11. The smaller common ICs, which are well described in standard reference books, are not included. For information not included in this document, read the appropriate manufacturer's data sheets.

## A.2 8051 MICROPROCESSOR/MICROCOMPUTER

### A.2.1 8051 Block Description

The 8051 is a microcomputer based on the Intel 8048. Its configuration is programmable. The block diagram is shown in Figure A-1.

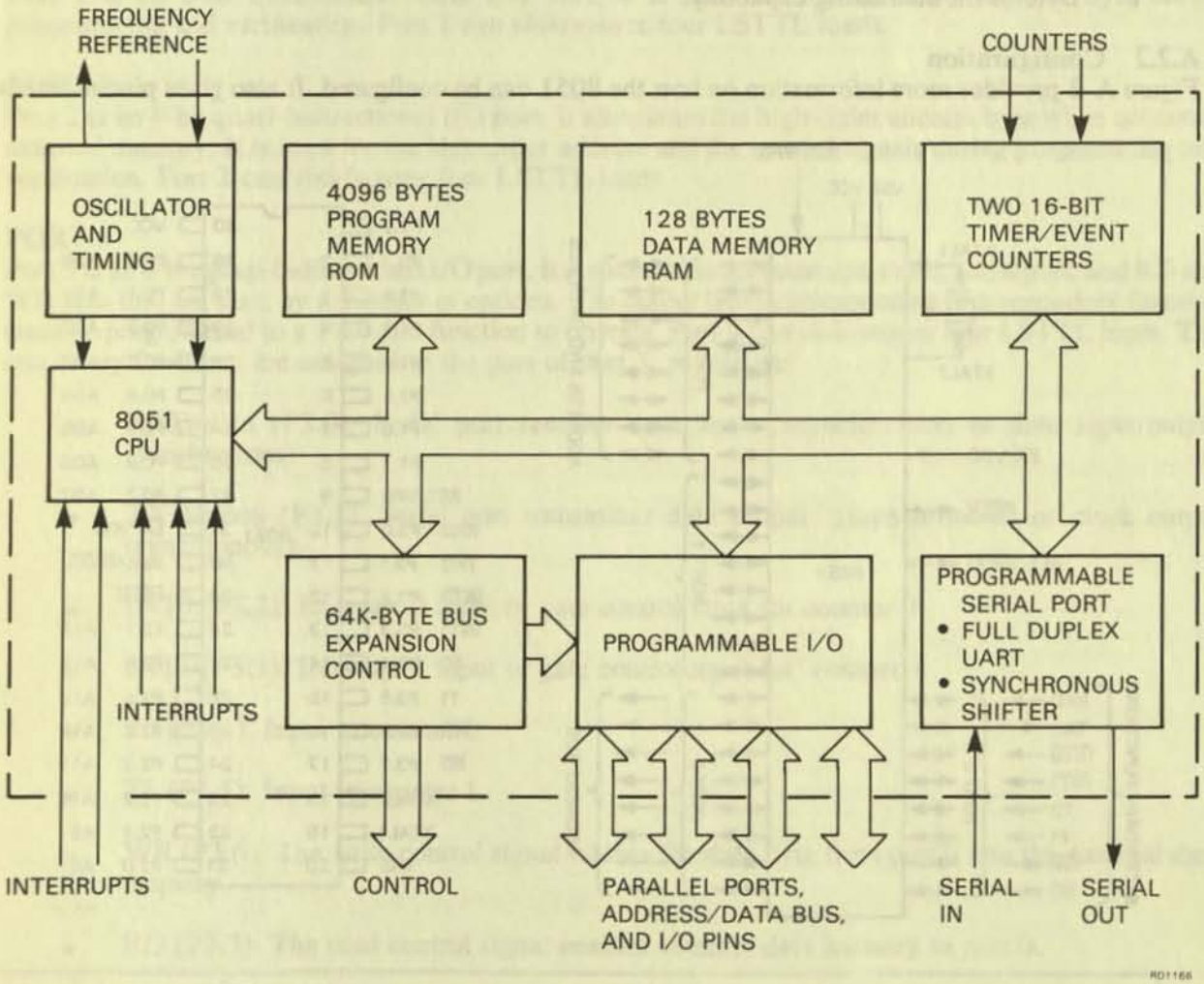



Figure A-1 8051 Block Diagram

As well as having 128 bytes of RAM for register space, stack, and data memory, the IC contains:

- 4K bytes of program memory ROM
- Two 16-bit programmable timer/counters
- A full-duplex programmable serial UART capable of data rates up to 1 M bits/s
- 32 programmable I/O lines arranged as four 8-bit ports.

Other features not indicated in the diagram are:

- Single +5 V supply
- 64K bytes program memory and 64K bytes data memory addressing capability
- Up to 128 bytes stack
- Four 8-byte register banks
- Two-level interrupt system with programmable priority. Interrupts may also be triggered by the counter/timers.
- Byte or bit addressing capability.

### A.2.2 Configuration

Figure A-2 provides more information on how the 8051 can be configured. It also gives pinout details.

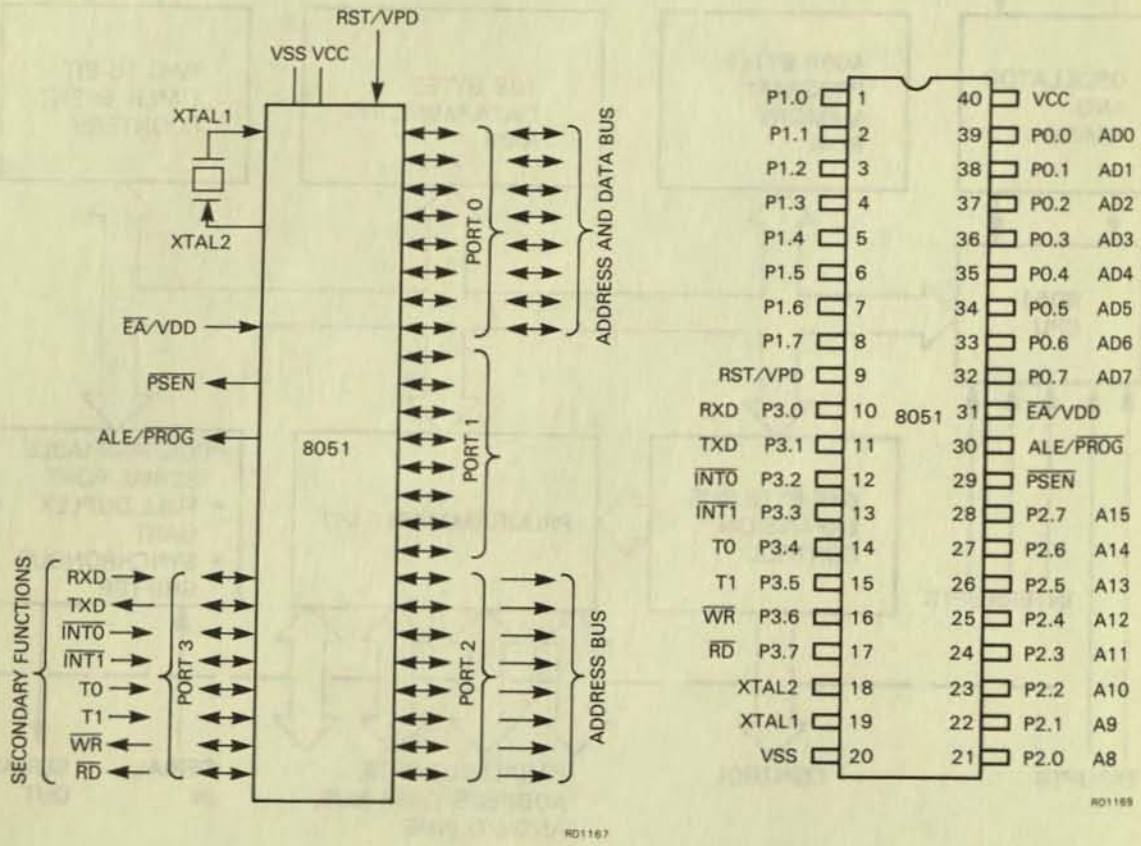



Figure A-2 8051 Symbol and Pinout Diagrams

When external memory is addressed, port 0 becomes a multiplexed 8-bit data bus / low-order (A7 to A0) address bus. If the external address is higher than 255, port 2 provides A15 to A8. When not being used in combination with port 0, port 2 returns to its programmed condition.

The 8051 signals are briefly described in Table A-1.

Table A-1 8051 Pin Description

Vss
Circuit ground potential.

Vcc
+5 V power supply during operation, programming, and verification.

PORT 0
Port 0 is an 8-bit open-drain bidirectional I/O port. It is also the multiplexed low-order address and data bus when using external memory. It is used for data input and output during programming and verification. Port 0 can sink/source LSTTL loads.

PORT 1
Port 1 is an 8-bit quasi-bidirectional I/O port. It is used for the low-order address byte during programming and verification. Port 1 can sink/source four LSTTL loads.

PORT 2
Port 2 is an 8-bit quasi-bidirectional I/O port. It also issues the high-order address byte when accessing external memory. It is used for the high-order address and the control signals during programming and verification. Port 2 can sink/source four LSTTL loads.

PORT 3
Port 3 is an 8-bit quasi-bidirectional I/O port. It also contains the interrupt, timer, serial port, and RD and WR pins that are used by a number of options. The output latch corresponding to a secondary function must be programmed to a 1 for that function to operate. Port 3 can sink/source four LSTTL loads. The secondary functions are assigned to the pins of port 3, as follows:

- RXD/data (P3.0). Serial port receiver data input (asynchronous) or data input/output (synchronous)
- TXD/clock (P3.1). Serial port transmitter data output (asynchronous) or clock output (synchronous)
- INT0 (P3.2). Interrupt 0 input or gate control input for counter 0
- INT1 (P3.3). Interrupt 1 input or gate control input for counter 1
- T0 (P3.4). Input to counter 0
- T1 (P3.5). Input to counter 1
- WR (P3.6). The write control signal latches the data byte from port 0 into the external data memory
- RD (P3.7). The read control signal enables external data memory to port 0.

Table A-1 8051 Pin Description (Cont)

**RST/VPD**
A change of level from low to high on this pin (at approximately 3 V) resets the 8051. If VPD is held within its specification (approximately +5 V) while Vcc drops below specification, VPD will provide standby power to the RAM. When VPD is low, the RAM's current flows from Vcc. A small internal resistor permits power-on reset using only a capacitor connected to Vcc.

**PSEN L**
The Program Store Enable output is a control signal that enables the external program memory to the bus during normal fetch operations. Not connected on DHV11.

**EA/L/VDD**
When held at a TTL high level, the 8051 executes instructions from the internal ROM/EPROM when the PC is less than 4096. When held at a TTL low level, the 8051 fetches all instructions from external program memory.

**XTAL1**
Input to the oscillator's high-gain amplifier. Grounded on the DHV11.

**XTAL2**
Output from the oscillator's amplifier. Driven by a 12 MHz clock on the DHV11.

### A.2.3 Read/Write Timing

Read/write timing cycles are shown in Figures A-3, A-4, and A-5.

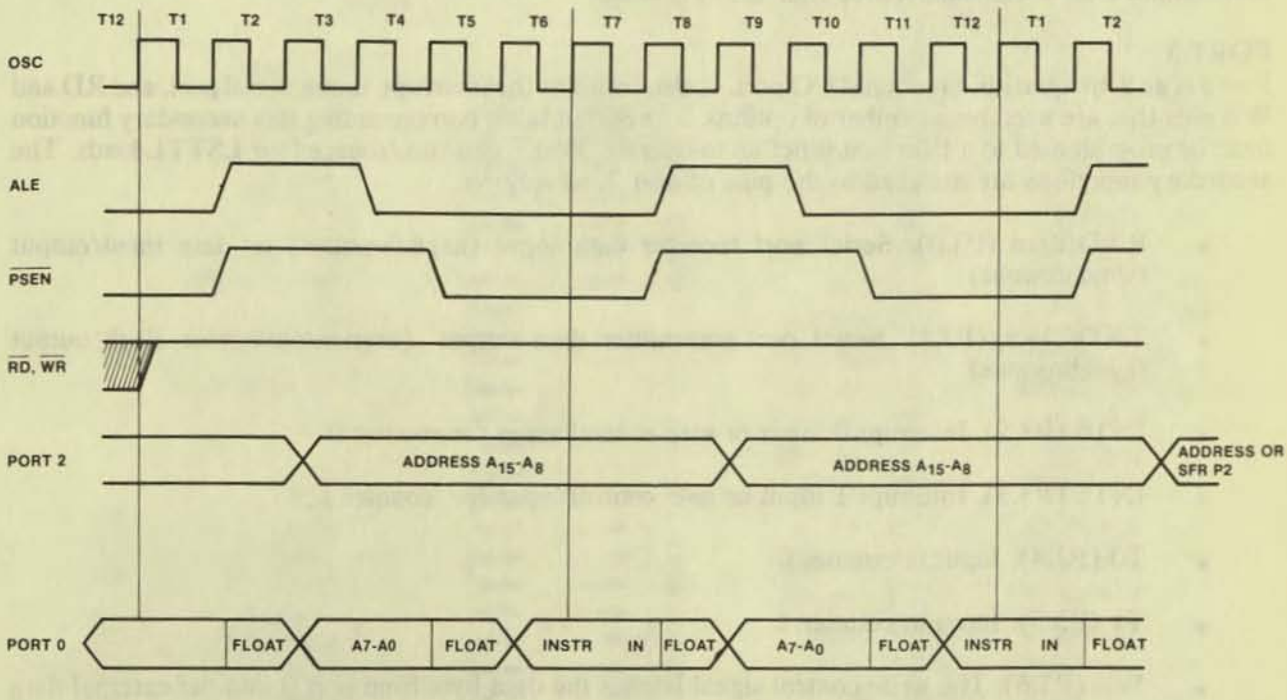



Figure A-3 Program Memory Read Cycle

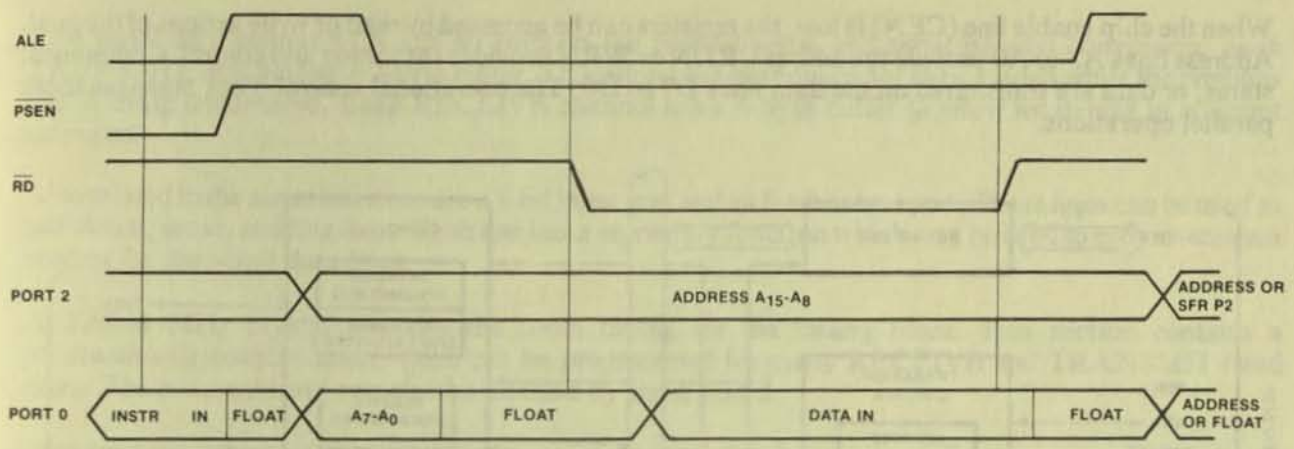



Figure A-4 Data Memory Read Cycle

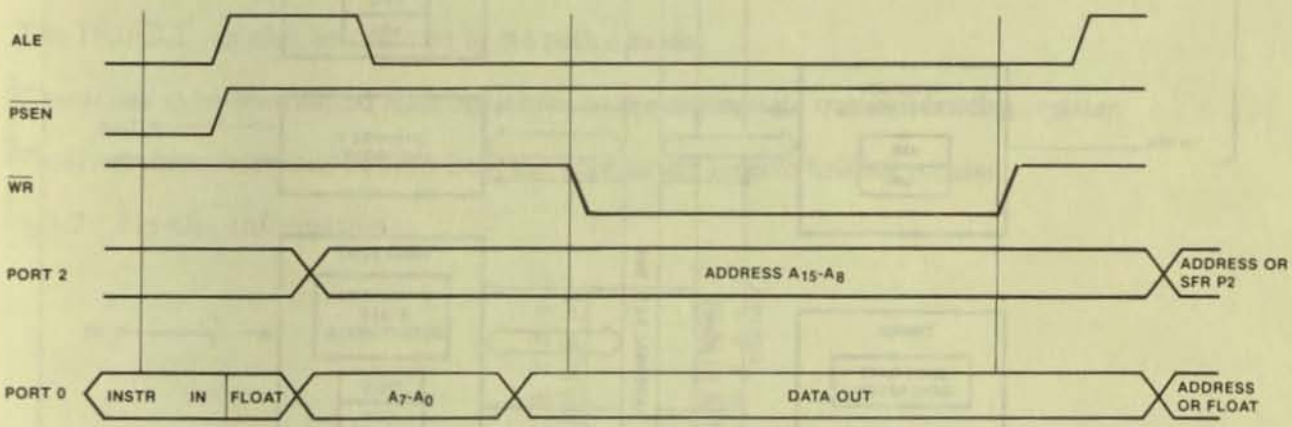



Figure A-5 Data Memory Write Cycle

In each cycle, ALE (Address Latch Enable) is issued as a latching signal for A7 to A0. Latching occurs on the negative-going edge of ALE. Once the low address bits are latched, port 0 can be used to transfer data.

If program memory is being read, Program Store Enable (PSEN L) must be asserted before the instruction is read in. RD L and WR L will both be invalid.

When data memory is being accessed PSEN L is false and RD L or WR L are asserted.

Note that with a 12 MHz clock (OSC), a program memory cycle takes 500 nanoseconds. A data memory cycle takes one microsecond.

## A.3 SC2681 DUAL UART (DUART)

### A.3.1 Block Description

Block diagram Figure A-6 shows the functional blocks of the DUART. Except for the bus buffer, which is a parallel holding register, there are control registers in every block. It is via these registers that the DUART is programmed and monitored.

When the chip enable line (CEN) is low, the registers can be accessed by read or write actions of the host. Address lines A3 to A0 provide the address. RDN or WRN provides the timing and control. Commands, status, or data are transferred on the data lines D7 to D0. The operational control block manages these parallel operations.

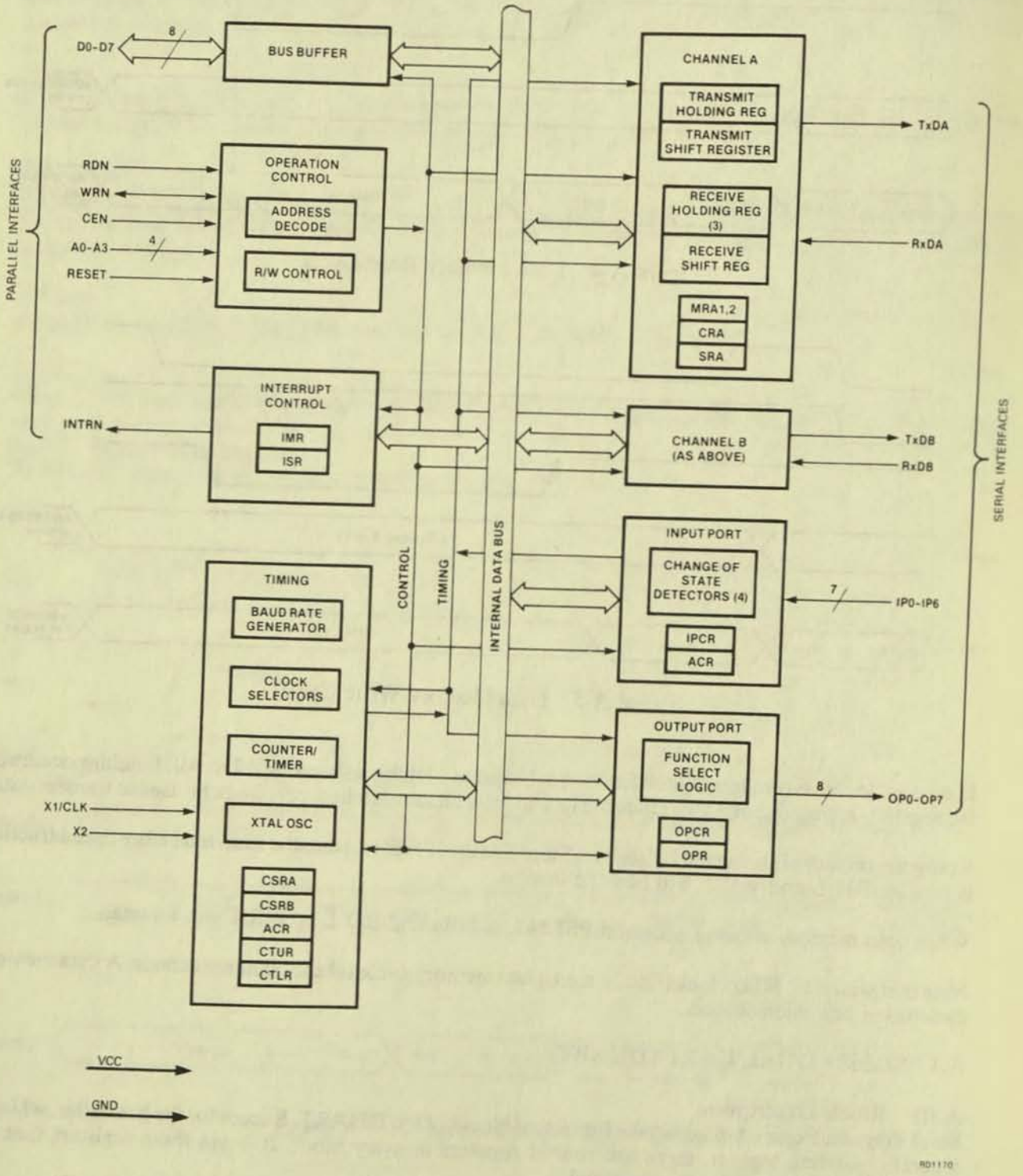



Figure A-6 SC2681 Dual Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (DUART)

Two serial data channels (A and B) perform the parallel/serial and serial/parallel conversion. Each TRANSMIT channel has a 2-byte buffer. This allows the next character to be loaded while the previous one is being transmitted. Each RECEIVE channel has a 4-byte buffer to allow for delays in interrupt response.

Also related to the serial interface are a 7-bit input port and an 8-bit output port. These lines can be used as individual, sense, and flag lines. Each line has a secondary function which may be used to provide modem control for the serial data lines.

A 3.6864 MHz crystal provides the basic timing for the timing block. This section contains a programmable counter/timer which can be programmed for many RECEIVE and TRANSMIT baud rates. The counter/timer can also be clocked by input port 2.

Interrupts are generated when at least one of eight maskable interrupt conditions occurs. INTRN will inform the controlling processor of changes in the DUART status. The interrupt routine should read status and then take the appropriate action. INTRN is commonly used to indicate that a received character has been assembled or that the DUART can accept a new character for transmission.

The DUART can also be operated in the polled mode.

Characters to be transmitted must be written to the appropriate transmit holding register.

Received characters must be read from the appropriate receive holding register.

### A.3.2 Pin-Out Information

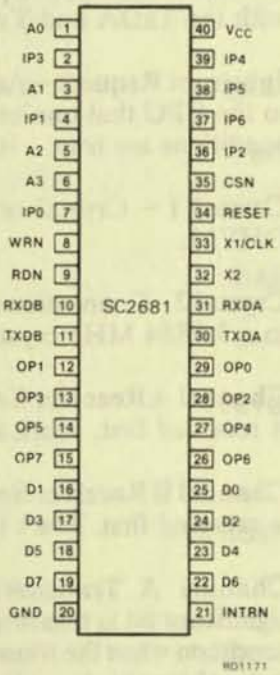



Figure A-7 SC2681 Pin-Out Diagram

A pin-out diagram is provided in Figure A-7. The related pin functions are listed in Table A-2. This information applies to the 40-pin DIL version of SC2681 only.

Table A-2 SC2681 Pin Designation

| Mnemonic | Direction | Pin Name and Function |
|---|---|---|
| D0 to D7 | I/O | Data Bus – Bidirectional 3-state data bus used to transfer commands, data, and status between the DUART and the CPU. D0 is the least significant bit. |
| CEN | I | Chip Enable – Active-low input signal. When low, data transfers between the CPU and the DUART are enabled on D0 to D7 as controlled by the WRN, RDN, and A0 to A3 inputs. When high, places the D0 to D7 lines in the 3-state condition. |
| WRN | I | Write Strobe – When low, and CEN is also low, the contents of the data bus are loaded into the addressed register. The transfer occurs on the positive-going edge of the signal. |
| RDN | I | Read Strobe – When low and CEN is also low, causes the contents of the addressed register to be placed on the data bus. The read cycle starts on the negative-going edge of RN. |
| A0 to A3 | I | Address Inputs – Select the DUART internal registers and ports for read/write operations. |
| RESET | I | Reset – A high level clears the internal registers (SRA, SRB, IMR, ISR, OPR, OPCR), puts OP0 to OP7 in the high state, stops the counter/timer, and puts channels A and B in the inactive state with the TxDA and TxDB outputs in the mark (high) state. |
| INTRN | O | Interrupt Request – Active-low open-drain output which signals to the CPU that one or more of the eight maskable interrupting conditions are true. |
| X1/CLK | I | Crystal 1 – Crystal or external clock input. Grounded on the DHV11. |
| X2 | I | Crystal 2 – Connection for the other side of the crystal. Connected to a 3.6864 MHz crystal on the DHV11. |
| RxDA | I | Channel A Receiver Serial Data Input – The least significant bit is received first. Mark is high, space is low. |
| RxDB | I | Channel B Receiver Serial Data Input – The least significant bit is received first. Mark is high, space is low. |
| TxDA | O | Channel A Transmitter Serial Data Output – The least significant bit is transmitted first. This output is held in the mark condition when the transmitter is disabled, idle, or when operating in local loopback mode. Mark is high, space is low. |
| OP0 to OP7 | O | General Purpose Outputs – Used by the DHV11 for modem control. |

Table A-2 SC2681 Pin Designation (Cont)

| Mnemonic | Direction | Pin Name and Function |
|---|---|---|
| IP0 to IP6 | I | General Purpose Inputs – Used by the DHV11 to monitor modem status. |
| Vcc | I | Power Supply +5 V supply input |
| GND | I | Ground |

## A.4 DC003 INTERRUPT IC

The interrupt controller is an 18-pin DIL device that provides the circuits to perform an interrupt transaction in a computer system that uses a 'pass-the-pulse' type arbitration. The device provides two interrupt channels, A and B, with the A section at a higher priority than the B section. Bus signals use high-impedance input circuits or open-collector outputs, which allow the device to be attached directly to the computer system bus. Maximum current taken from the Vcc supply is 140 mA.

Figure A-8 is a simplified logic diagram of the DC003 IC. Timing for the interrupt section is shown in Figure A-9, while Figure A-10 shows the timing for both A and B interrupt sections. Table A-3 describes the signals and pins of the DC003 by pin and signal name.

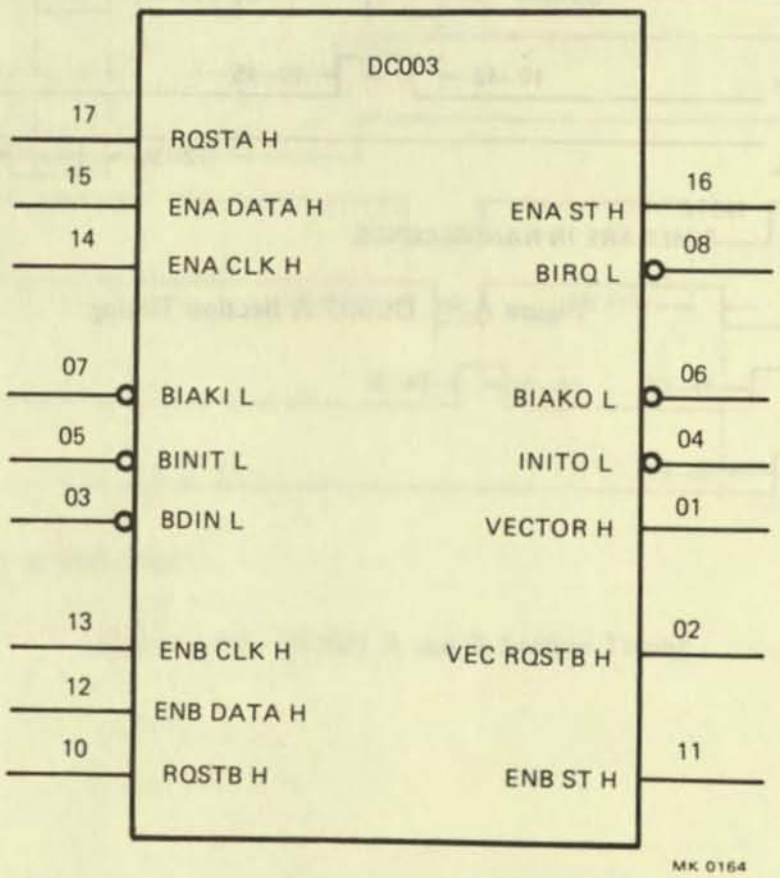



Figure A-8 DC003 Logic Symbol

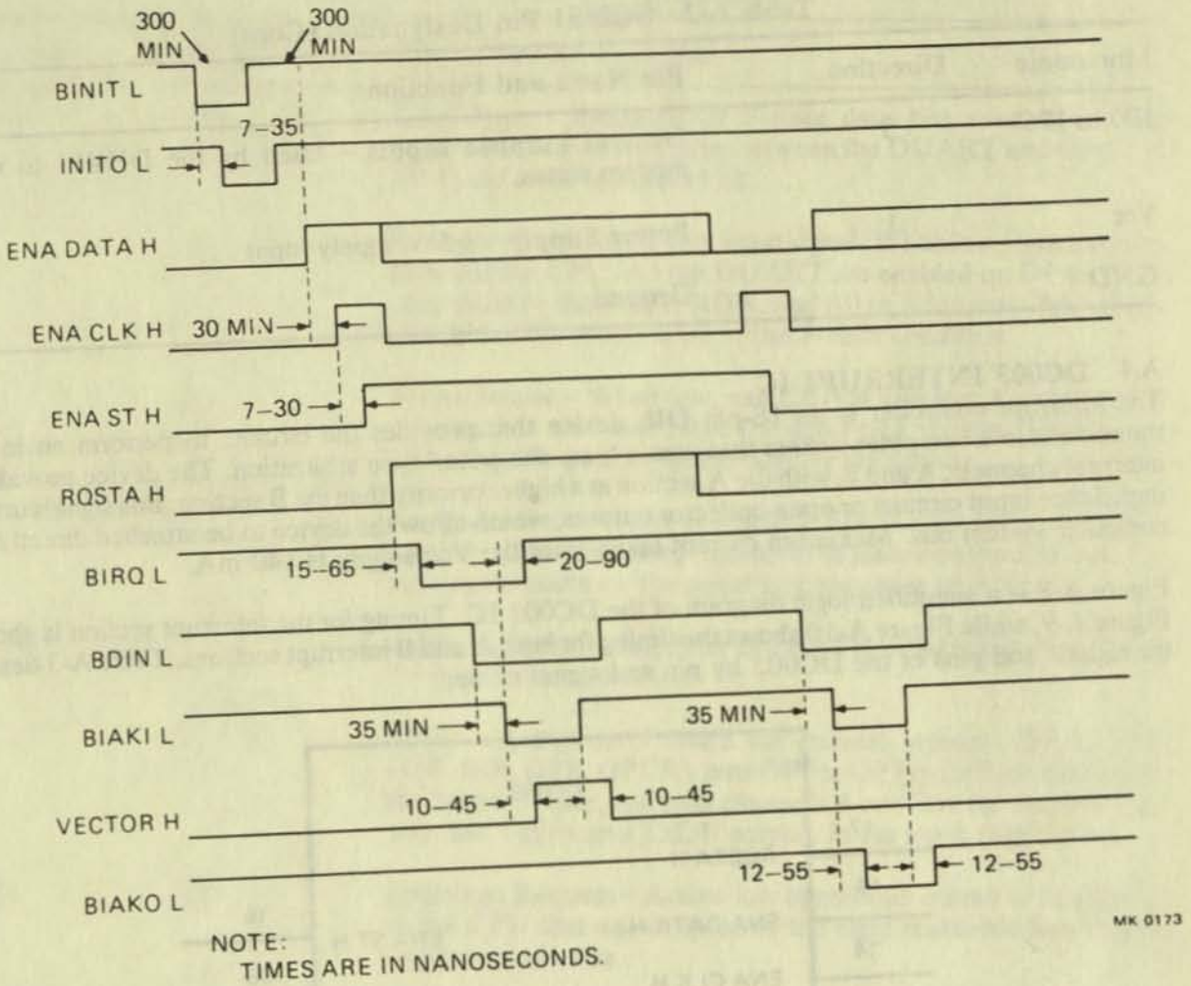
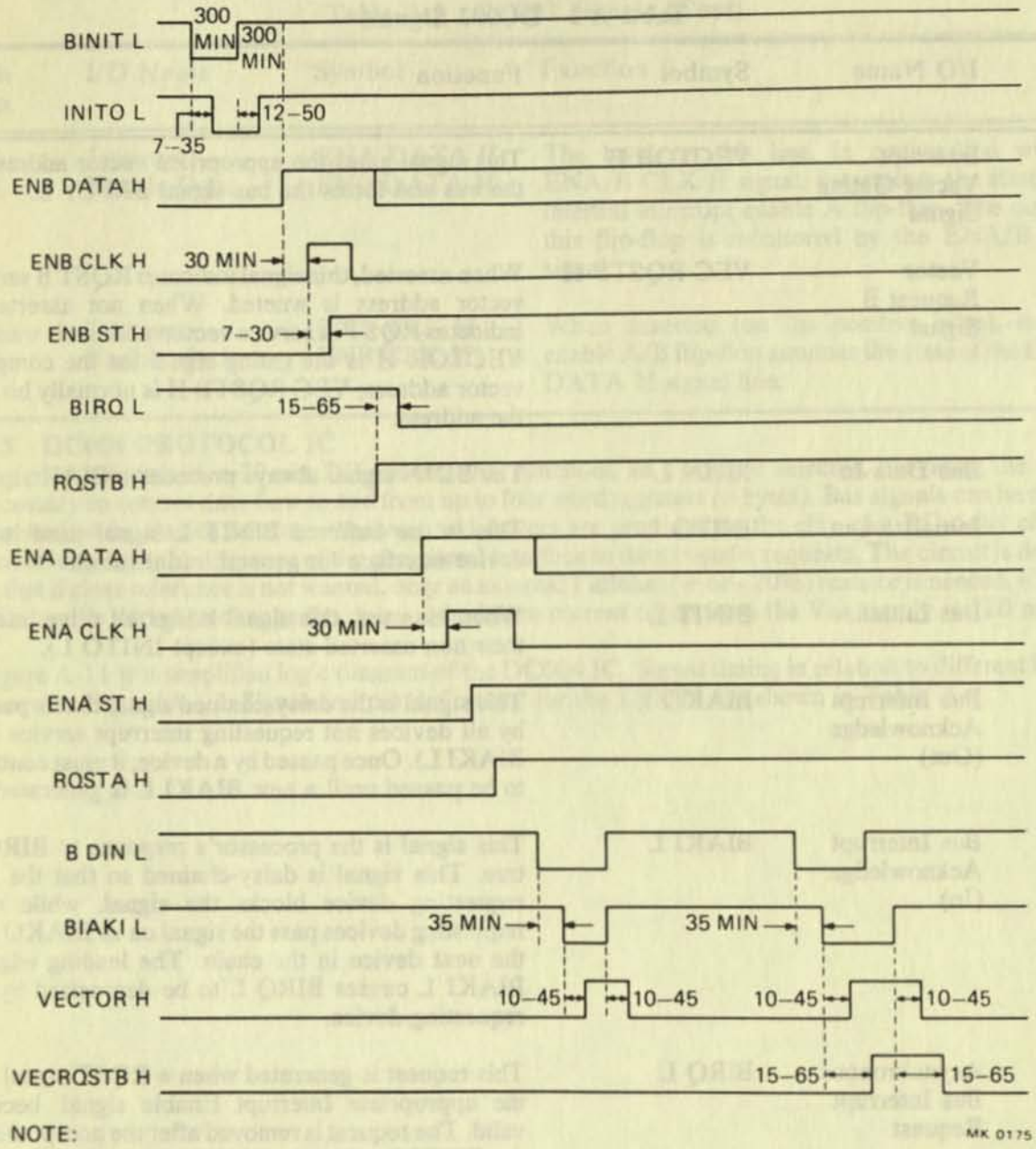



Figure A-9 DC003 A Section Timing




NOTE:
TIMES ARE IN NANOSECONDS.

Figure A-10 DC003 A and B Section Timing

Table A-3 DC003 Signals

| Pin No. | I/O Name | Symbol | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Interrupt Vector Gating Signal | VECTOR H | This signal gates the appropriate vector address to the bus and forms the bus signal BRPLY L. |
| 2 | Vector Request B Signal | VEC RQSTB H | When asserted, this signal indicates RQST B service vector address is wanted. When not asserted it indicates RQST A service vector address is wanted. VECTOR H is the gating signal for the complete vector address; VEC RQSTB H is normally bit 2 of the address. |
| 3 | Bus Data In | BDIN L | The BDIN signal always precedes a BIAK signal. |
| 4 | Initialize Out | INITO L | This is the buffered BINIT L signal used in the device interface for general initialization. |
| 5 | Bus Initialize | BINIT L | When asserted, this signal brings all drive lines to their non-asserted state (except INITO L). |
| 6 | Bus Interrupt Acknowledge (Out) | BIAKO L | This signal is the daisy-chained signal that is passed by all devices not requesting interrupt service (see BIAKI L). Once passed by a device, it must continue to be passed until a new BIAKI L is generated. |
| 7 | Bus Interrupt Acknowledge (In) | BIAKI L | This signal is the processor's response to BIRQ L true. This signal is daisy-chained so that the first requesting device blocks the signal, while non-requesting devices pass the signal on as BIAKO L to the next device in the chain. The leading edge of BIAKI L causes BIRQ L to be deasserted by the requesting device. |
| 8 | Asynchronous Bus Interrupt Request | BIRQ L | This request is generated when a RQST signal and the appropriate Interrupt Enable signal become valid. The request is removed after the acceptance of the BDIN L signal and on the leading edge of the BIAKI L signal, or the removal of the appropriate interrupt enable, or by the removal of the appropriate request signal. |
| 17<br>10 | Device Interrupt Request Signal | RQSTA H<br>RQSTB H | When asserted with the enable A/B flip-flop asserted, this signal causes BIRQ L to be asserted on the bus. This signal line normally stays asserted until the request is serviced. |
| 16<br>11 | Interrupt Enable Status | ENA ST H<br>ENB ST H | This signal indicates the state of the interrupt enable A/B internal flip-flop which is controlled by the signal line ENA/B DATA H and the ENA/B CLK H clock line. |

Table A-3 DC003 Signals (Cont)

| Pin No. | I/O Name | Symbol | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 15<br>12 | Interrupt<br>Enable Data | ENA DATA H<br>ENB DATA H | The level on this line, in conjunction with the ENA/B CLK H signal, determines the state of the internal interrupt enable A flip-flop. The output of this flip-flop is monitored by the ENA/B ST H signal. |
| 14<br>13 | Interrupt<br>Enable clock | ENA CLK H<br>ENB CLK H | When asserted (on the positive edge), interrupt enable A/B flip-flop assumes the state of the ENA/B DATA H signal line. |

## A.5 DC004 PROTOCOL IC

The protocol chip is a 20-pin DIL device that functions as a register selector, providing the signals necessary to control data flow to and from up to four word registers (8 bytes). Bus signals can be directly attached to the device because receivers and drivers are provided on the chip. An RC delay circuit is provided to slow the response of the peripheral interface to data transfer requests. The circuit is designed so that if close tolerance is not wanted, only an external 1 kilohm (+ or – 20%) resistor is needed. External RCs can be added to change the delay. Maximum current taken from the Vcc supply is 120 mA.

Figure A-11 is a simplified logic diagram of the DC004 IC. Signal timing in relation to different loads is shown in Figure A-12. Signal and pin definitions for the DC004 are shown in Table A-4.

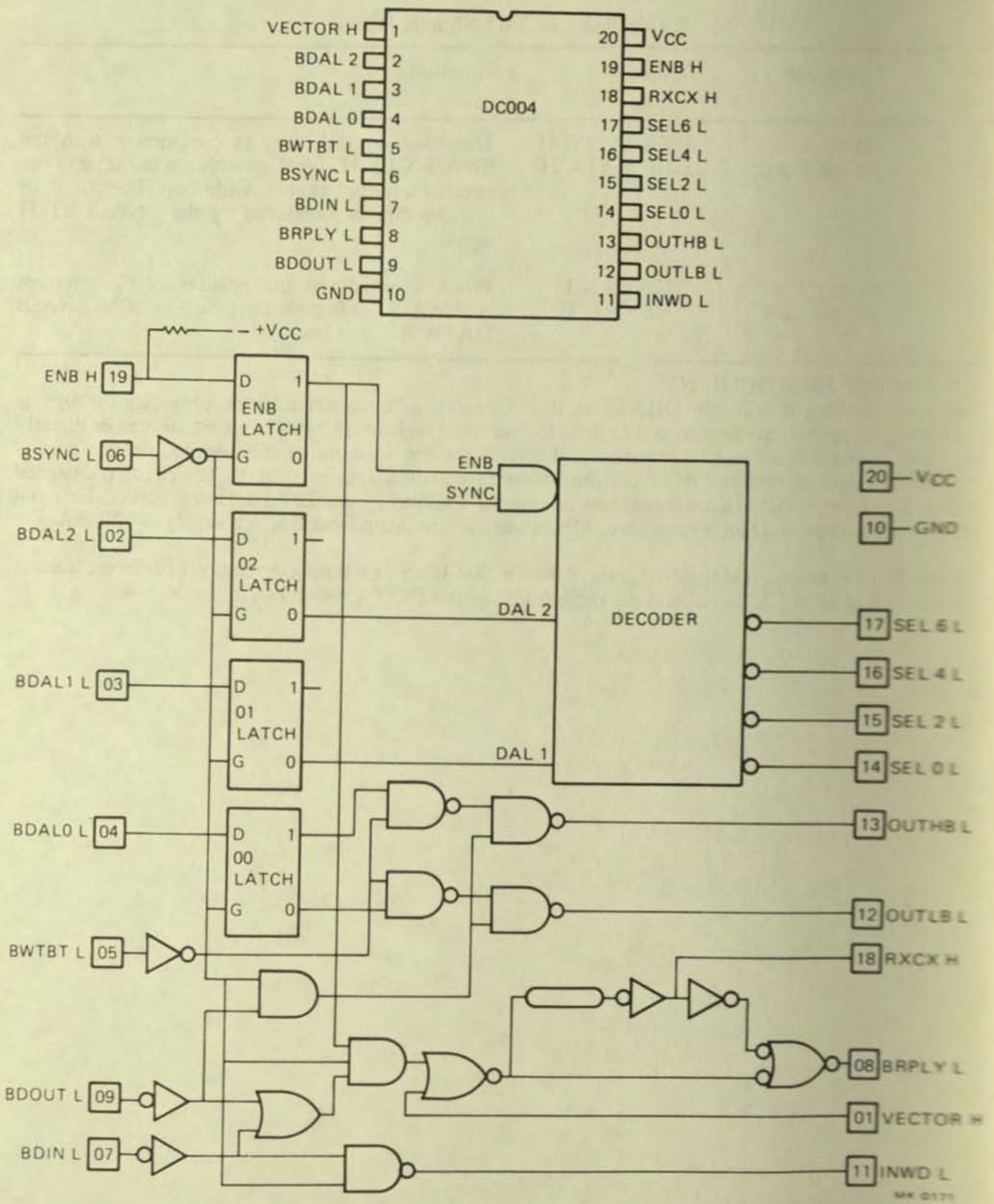
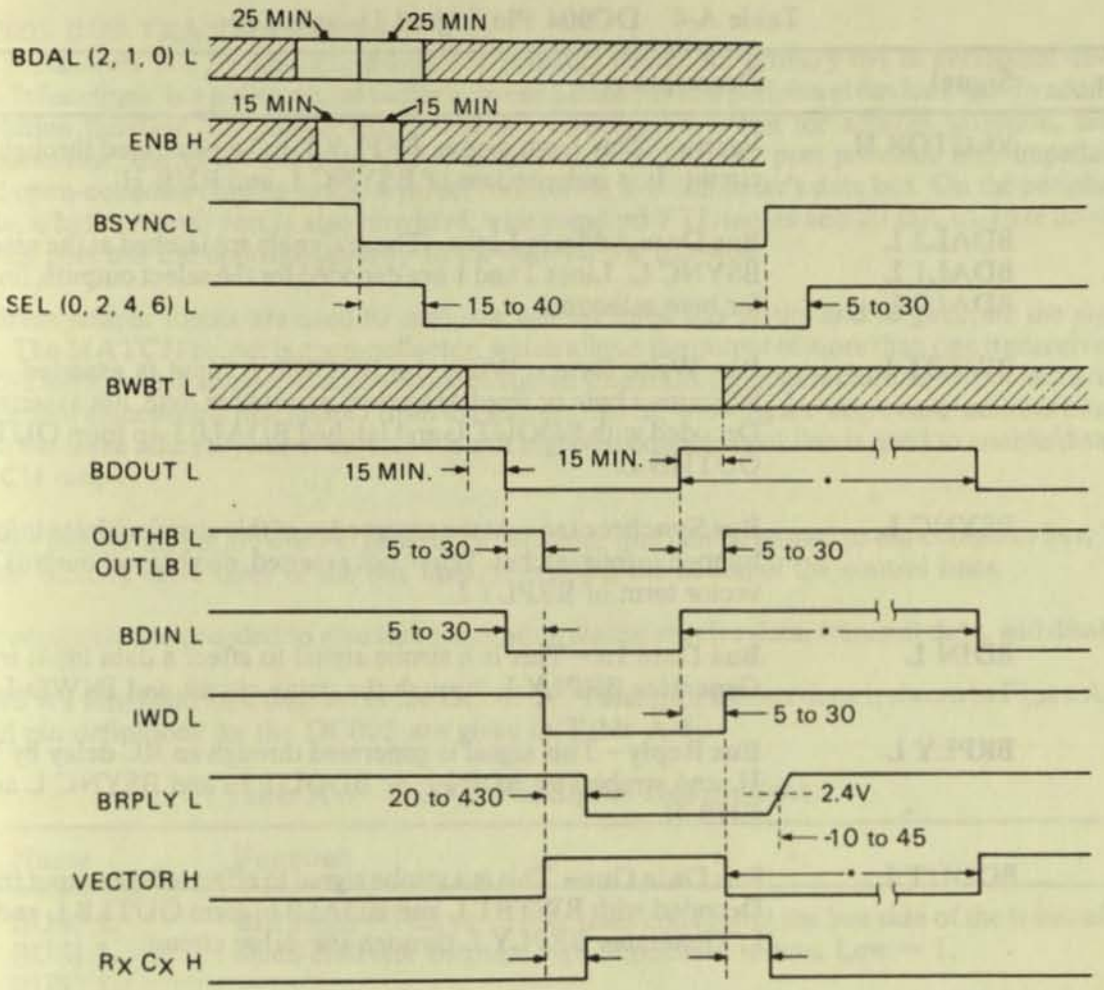



Figure A-11 DC004 Simplified Logic Diagram




*TIME REQUIRED TO DISCHARGE $R_X$ $C_X$ FROM ANY CONDITION ASSERTED = 150ns

NOTE:
TIMES ARE IN NANOSECONDS.

RD1346

Figure A-12 DC004 Timing Diagram

Table A-4 DC004 Pin/Signal Descriptions

| Pin | Signal | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | VECTOR H | Vector – This input causes BRPLY L to be generated through the delay circuit. It is independent of BSYNC L and ENB H. |
| 2<br>3<br>4 | BDAL2 L<br>BDAL1 L<br>BDAL0 L | Bus Data Address Lines – These signals are latched at the assert edge of BSYNC L. Lines 2 and 1 are decoded for the select outputs; line 0 is used for byte selection. |
| 5 | BWTBT L | Bus Write Byte – While the BDOUT L input is asserted, this signal indicates a byte or word operation: asserted = byte, not asserted = word. Decoded with BDOUT L and latched BDAL0 L to form OUTLB L and OUTHB L. |
| 6 | BSYNC L | Bus Synchronize – At the assert edge of this signal address information is trapped in four latches. When not asserted, disables all outputs except the vector term of BRPLY L. |
| 7 | BDIN L | Bus Data In – This is a strobe signal to effect a data input transaction. Generates BRPLY L through the delay circuit and INWD L. |
| 8 | BRPLY L | Bus Reply – This signal is generated through an RC delay by VECTOR H, and strobed by BDIN L or BDOUT L, and BSYNC L and latched ENB H. |
| 9 | BDOUT L | Bus Data Out – This is a strobe signal to effect a data output transaction. Decoded with BWTBT L and BDAL0 to form OUTLB L and OUTHB L. Generates BRPLY L through the delay circuit. |
| 11 | INWD L | In Word – Used to gate (read) data from a selected register onto the data bus. Enabled by BSYNC L and strobed by BDIN L. |
| 12<br>13 | OUTLB L<br>OUTHB L | Out Low Byte, Out High Byte – Used to load (write) data into the lower, higher, or both bytes of a selected register. Enabled by BSYNC L and decode of BWTBT L and latched BDAL0 L, and strobed by BDOUT L. |
| 14<br>15<br>16<br>17 | SEL0 L<br>SEL2 L<br>SEL4 L<br>SEL6 L | Select Lines – One of these four signals is true as a function of BDAL2 L if ENB H is asserted at the assert edge of BSYNC L. They indicate that a word register has been selected for a data transaction. These signals never become asserted except at the assertion of BSYNC L (then only if ENB H is asserted at that time) and, once asserted, are not deasserted until BSYNC L is deasserted. |
| 18 | RXCX | External Resistor Capacitor Node – This node is provided to vary the delay between the BDIN L, BDOUT L, and VECTOR H inputs and BRPLY L output. The external resistor should be tied to Vcc and the capacitor to ground. As an output, it is the logical inversion of BRPLY L. |
| 19 | ENB H | Enable – This signal is latched at the asserted edge of BSYNC L and is used to enable the select outputs and the address term of BRPLY L. |

## A.6 DC005 BUS TRANSCEIVER IC

The 4-bit transceiver is a 20-pin DIL low-power Schottky device for primary use in peripheral device interfaces. It functions as a bidirectional buffer between a data bus and peripheral device logic. In addition to the isolation function, the device also provides a comparison circuit for address selection, and a constant generator, useful for interrupt vector addresses. The bus I/O port provides high-impedance inputs and open-collector outputs to allow direct connection to a computer's data bus. On the peripheral device side, a bidirectional port is also provided, with standard TTL inputs and 20 mA tri-state drivers. Data on this port has the opposite polarity to the data on the bus side.

Three address jumper inputs are used to compare against three bus inputs and to generate the signal MATCH. The MATCH output is open-collector, which allows the output of more than one transceiver to be wire-ANDed to form a combined address match signal. The address jumpers can also be put into a third logical state that disconnects that jumper from the address match, allowing for 'don't care' address bits. In addition to the three address jumper inputs, a fourth high-impedance input line is used to enable/disable the MATCH output.

Three vector jumper inputs are used to generate a constant, that can be passed to the computer bus. The three inputs directly drive three of the bus lines, overriding the action of the control lines.

Two control signals are decoded to give three operation states: receive data, transmit data, and disable.

Figure A-13 is a simplified logic diagram of the DC005 IC. Timing for the functions is shown in Figure A-14. Signal and pin definitions for the DC005 are given in Table A-5.

Table A-5 DC005 Pin/Signal Descriptions

| Pin | Name | Function |
|---|---|---|
| 12<br>11<br>9<br>8 | BUS0 L<br>BUS1 L<br>BUS2 L<br>BUS3 L | Bus Data – This set of four lines constitutes the bus side of the transceiver. Open-collector outputs; high-impedance inputs. Low = 1. |
| 18<br>17<br>7<br>6 | DAT0 H<br>DAT1 H<br>DAT2 H<br>DAT3 H | Peripheral Device Data – These four tri-state lines carry the inverted received data from BUS (3:0) when the transceiver is in the receive mode. When in transmit data mode, the data carried on these lines is passed inverted to BUS (3:0). When in the disabled mode, these lines go open (high impedance). High = 1. |
| 14<br>15<br>16 | JV1 H<br>JV2 H<br>JV3 H | Vector Jumpers – These inputs, with internal pull-down resistors, directly drive BUS (3:1). A low or open on the jumper pin causes an open condition on the corresponding BUS pin if XMIT H is low. A high causes a 1 (low) to be transmitted on the BUS pin. Note that BUS0 L is not controlled by any jumper input. |
| 13 | MENB L | Match Enable – A low on this line enables the MATCH output. A high forces MATCH low, overriding the match circuit. |
| 3 | MATCH H | Address Match – When BUS (3:1) matches the state of JA (3:1) and MENB L is low, this output is open; otherwise, it is low. |

Table A-5 DC005 Pin/Signal Descriptions (Cont)

| Pin | Name | Function |
|---|---|---|
| 1<br>2<br>19 | JA1 L<br>JA2 L<br>JA3 L | Address Jumpers – A connection to ground on these inputs allows a match to occur with a 1 (low) on the corresponding BUS line. An open allows a match with a 0 (high). A connection to Vcc disconnects the corresponding address bit from the comparison. |
| 5<br>4 | XMIT H<br>REC H | Control Inputs – These lines control the operation of the transceiver as follows.<br><br>REC XMIT<br><br>0 0 DISABLE: BUS and DAT open<br>0 1 XMIT DATA: DAT to BUS<br>1 0 RECEIVE: BUS to DAT<br>1 1 RECEIVE: BUS to DAT<br><br>To avoid tri-state overlap conditions an internal circuit delays the change of modes between XMIT DATA and RECEIVE mode, and delays the enabling of tri-state drivers on the DAT lines. This action is independent of the DISABLE mode. |

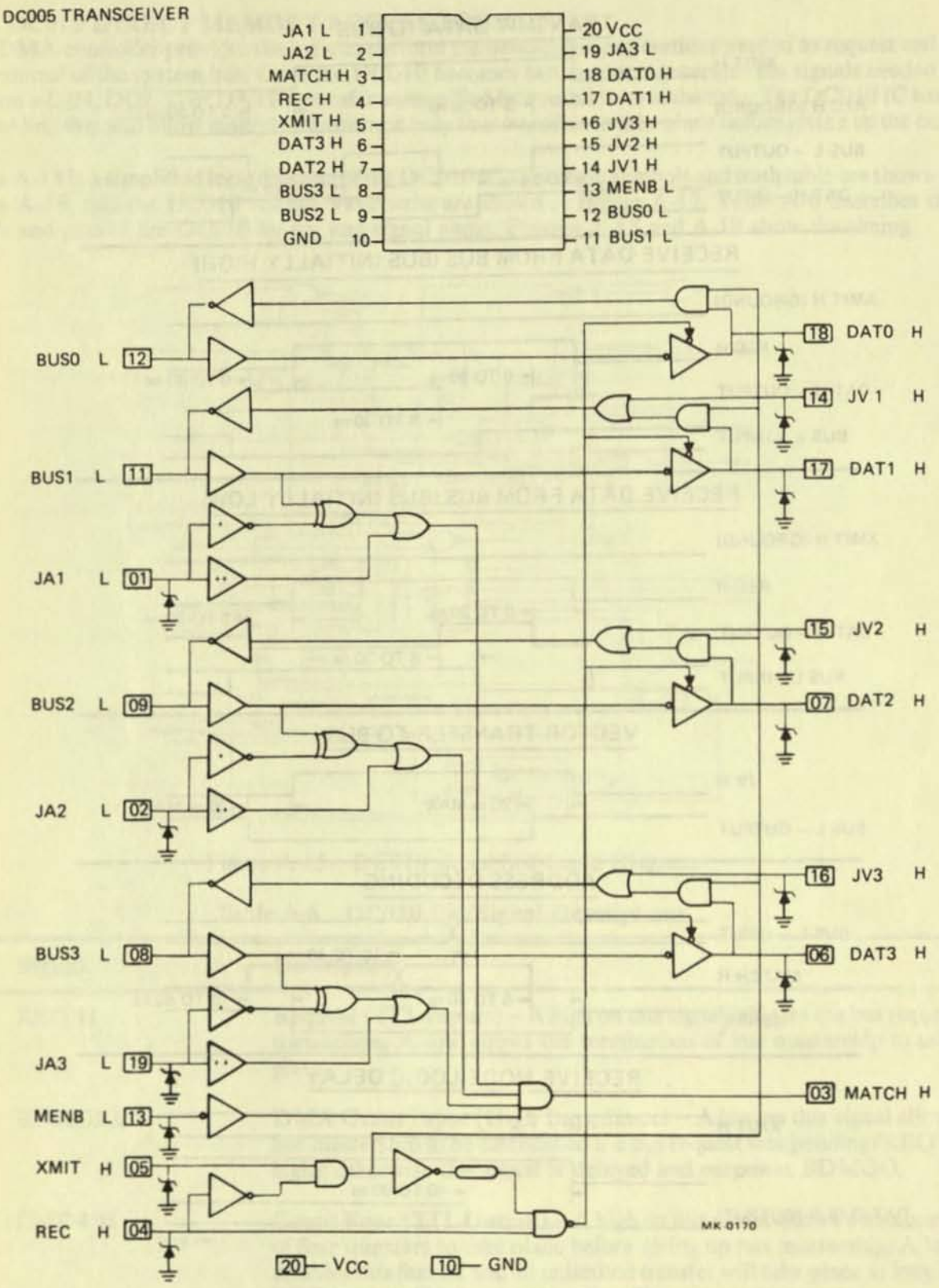



Figure A-13 DC005 Simplified Logic Diagram

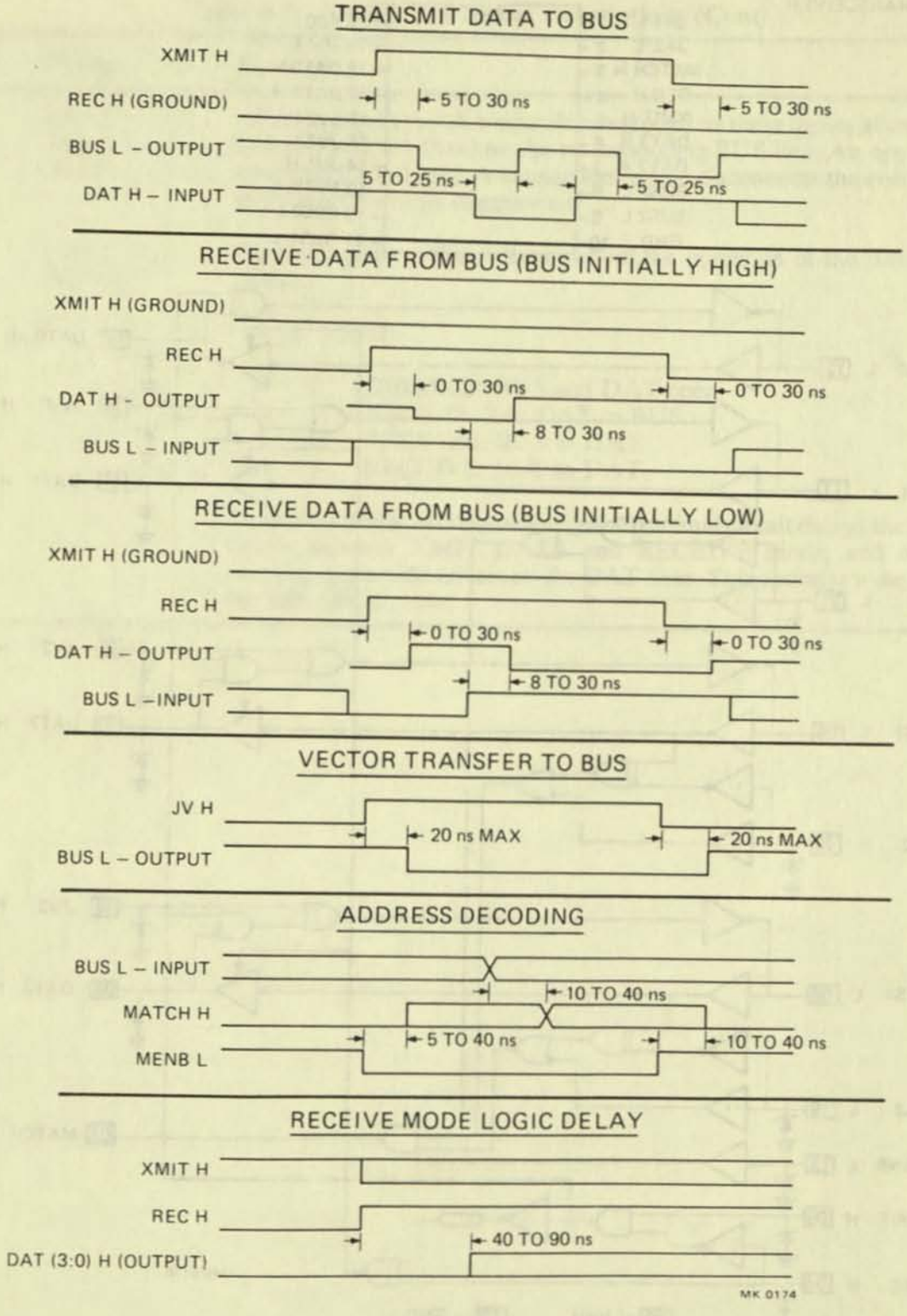



Figure A-14 DC005 Timing Diagram

## A.7 DC010 DIRECT MEMORY ACCESS LOGIC

This DMA controller provides the logic to perform the handshaking operations needed to request and to gain control of the system bus. Once the DC010 becomes bus master it generates the signals needed to perform a DIN, DOUT, or DATIO transfer as specified by control lines to the chip. The DC010 IC has a control line that will allow multiple transfers or only four transfers to take place before giving up the bus.

Figure A-15 is a simplified logic diagram of the DC010 IC. The logic symbols and truth table are shown in Figure A-16, and the DC010 voltage waveforms are shown in Figure A-17. Table A-6 describes the signals and pins of the DC010 by pin and signal name. Figures A-18 and A-19 show the timing.

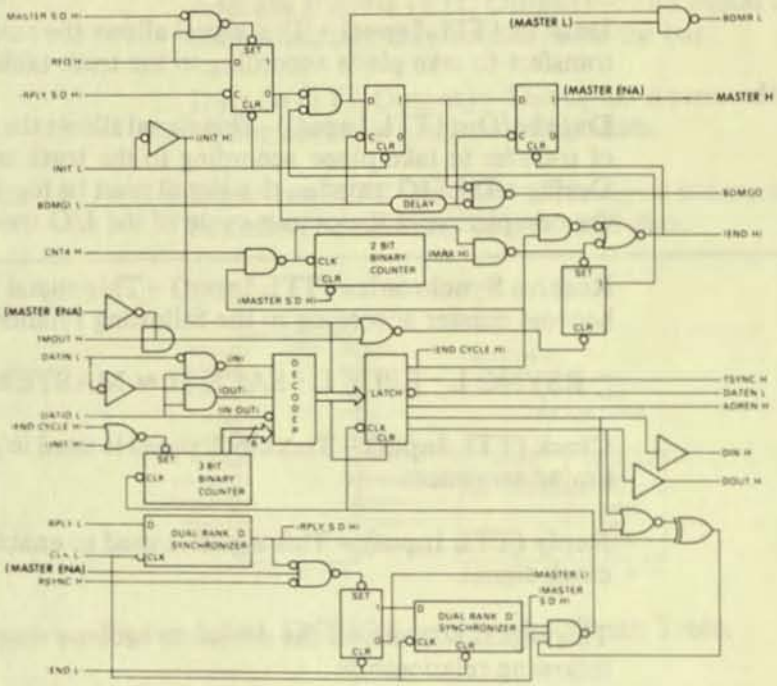



Figure A-15 DC010 Simplified Logic Diagram

Table A-6 DC010 Pin/Signal Descriptions

| Pin | Signal | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | REQ H | Request (TTL Inputs) – A high on this signal initiates the bus request transaction. A low allows the termination of bus mastership to take place. |
| 13 | BDMGI L | DMA Grant Input (High Impedance) – A low on this signal allows bus mastership to be established if a bus request was pending (REQ = high); otherwise this signal is delayed and output as BDMGO. |
| 16 | CNT 4 H | Count Four (TTL Output) – A high on this signal allows a maximum of four transfers to take place before giving up bus mastership. A low disables this feature and an unlimited transfer will take place as long as REQ is high. If left open this pin will assume a high state. |

Table A-6 DC010 Pin/Signal Descriptions (Cont)

| Pin | Signal | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 14 | TMOUT H | Time-Out (TTL Input/Open Collector Output) – This I/O pin is low while SACK H is high. It goes into high impedance when SACK H is low. When driven low it prevents the assertion of BDMR; when driven high it allows the assertion of BDMR to take place if BDMR has been deasserted because of the 4-maximum transfer condition. An RC network may be used on this pin to delay the assertion of BDMR. |
| 3 | DATIN L | Data In (TTL Input) – This signal allows the selection of the type of transfers to take place according to the truth table (Figure A-16). |
| 2 | DATIO L | Data In/Out (TTL Input) – This signal allows the selection of the type of transfer to take place according to the truth table (Figure A-16). During a DATIO transfer, this signal must be toggled in order to allow the completion of the output cycle of the I/O transfer. |
| 12 | RSYNC L | Receive Synchronize (TTL Input) – This signal allows the device to become master according to the following relationship:<br><br>RSYNC L · RPLY L · SACK H = MASTER |
| 17 | CLK L | Clock (TTL Input) – This clock signal is used to generate all transfer timing sequences. |
| 15 | REPLY L | Reply (TTL Input) – This signal is used to enable or disable the free clock signal.<br><br>This signal also allows the device to become master according to the following relationship:<br><br>RSYNC L · RPLY L · SACK H = MASTER |
| 19 | INIT L | Initialize (TTL Input) – This signal is used to initialize the chip to the state where REQ is needed to start a bus request transaction. When INIT is low, the following signals are deasserted: BDMR L, MASTER H, DATEN L, ADREN L, SYNC H, DIN H, DOUT H. |
| 11 | BDMR L | DMA Request (Open Collector Output) – A low on this signal indicates that the device is requesting bus mastership. This output may be tied directly to the bus. |
| 9 | MASTER H | Master (TTL Output) – A high on this signal indicates that the device has bus mastership and a transfer sequence is in progress. |
| 8 | BDMGO L | DMA Grant Output (Open Collector Output) – This signal is the delayed version of BDMGI if no request is pending; otherwise it is not asserted. This output may be tied directly to the bus. |

Table A-6 DC010 Pin/Signal Descriptions (Cont)

| Pin | Signal | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | TSYNC H | Transmit Synchronize (TTL Output) – This signal is asserted by the device to indicate that a transfer is in progress. |
| 18 | DATEN L | Data Enable (TTL Output) – This signal is asserted to indicate that data may be placed on the bus. |
| 4 | ADREN H | Address Enable (TTL Output) – This signal is asserted to indicate that an address may be placed on the bus. |
| 6 | DIN H | Data In (TTL Output) – This signal is asserted to indicate that the bus master device is ready to accept data. |
| 5 | DOUT H | Data Out (TTL Output) – This signal is asserted to indicate that the bus master device has output valid data. |

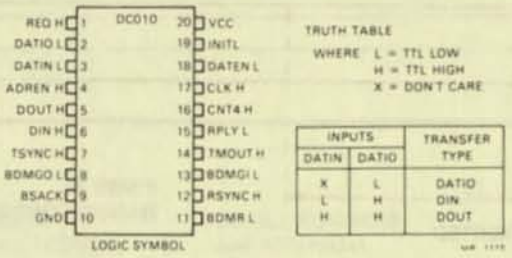



Figure A-16 DC010 Logic Symbol/Truth Table.

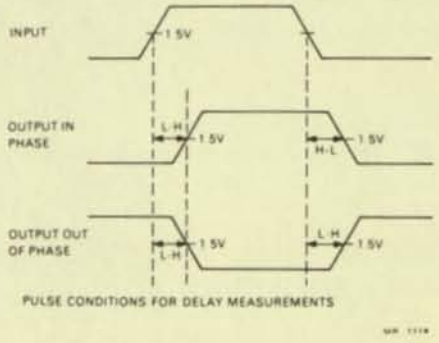



Figure A-17 DC010 Voltage Waveforms

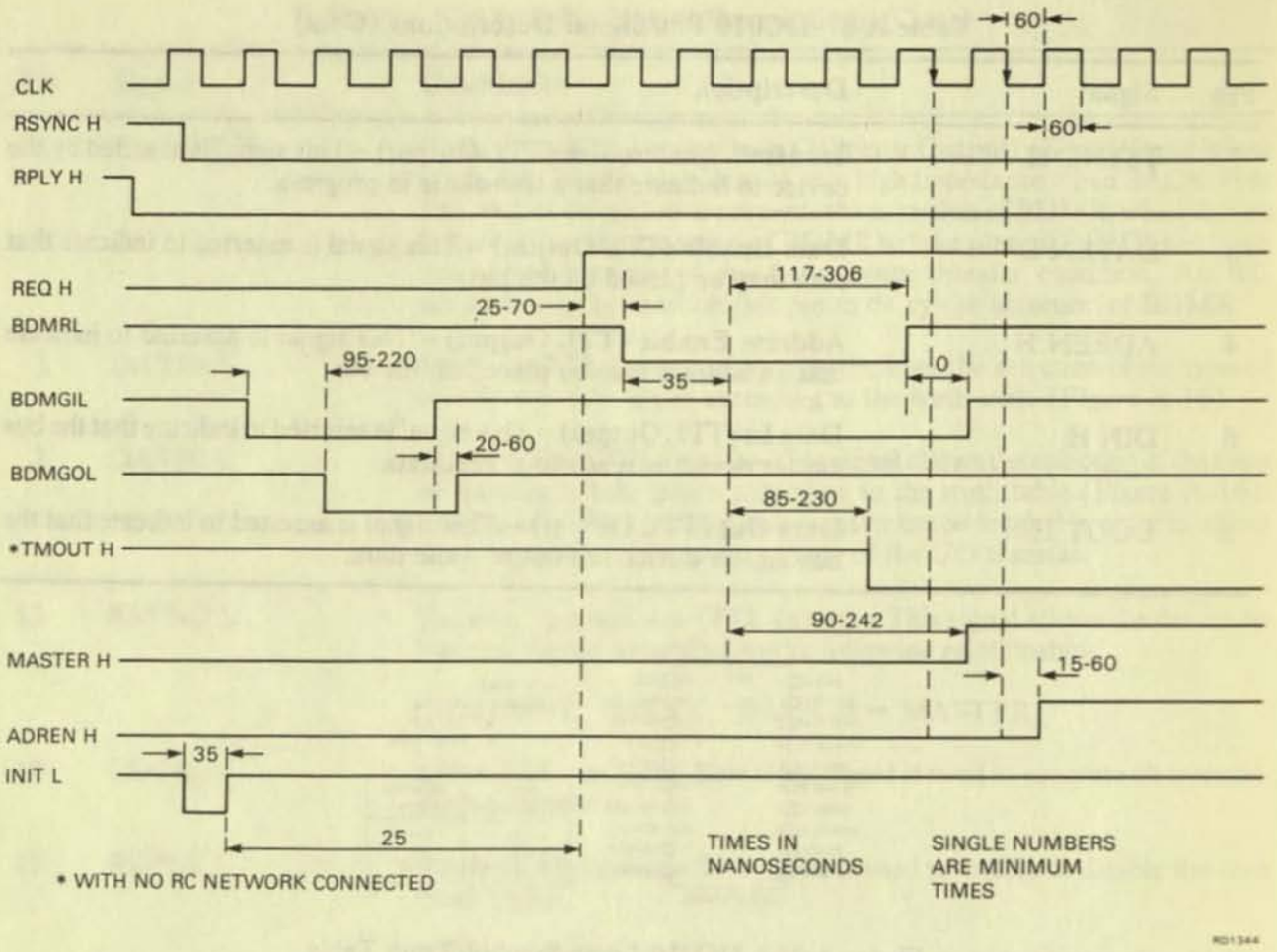



Figure A-18 DC010 Timing Diagram, DMA Request/Grant

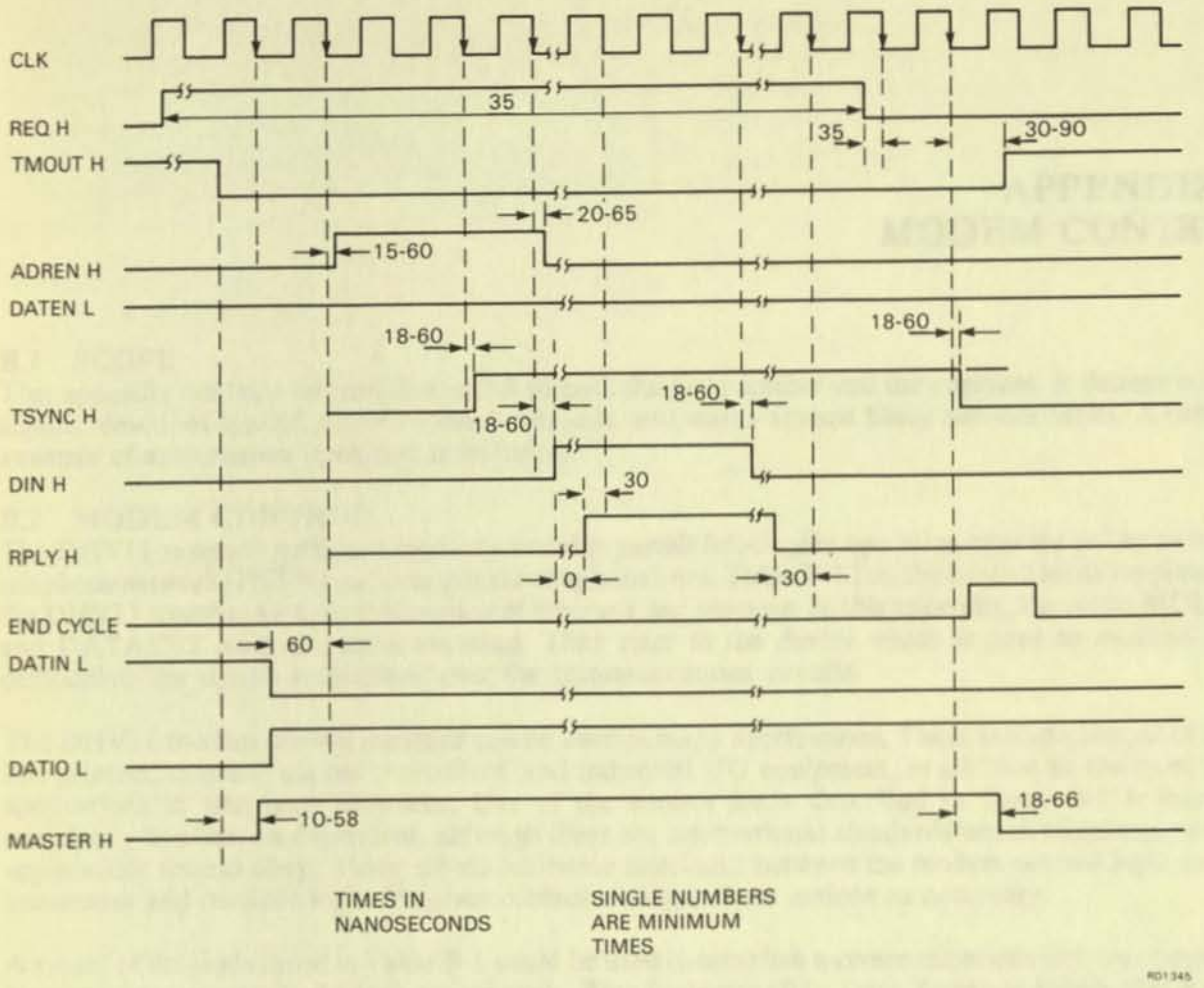



Figure A-19 DC010 Timing Diagram

# APPENDIX B
# MODEM CONTROL

## B.1 SCOPE

This appendix contains information useful to both the programmer and the engineer. It defines control signals, describes typical modem control methods, and warns against likely network faults. A detailed example of auto-answer operation is included.

## B.2 MODEM CONTROL

The DHV11 supports sufficient modem control to permit full-duplex operation over the public switched telephone network (PSTN) and over private telephone lines. Table B-1 lists the control leads supported by the DHV11 together with an explanation of their use and purpose. In this appendix, the terms MODEM and DATASET have the same meaning. They refer to the device which is used to modulate and demodulate the signals transmitted over the communications circuits.

The DHV11 modem control interface can be used in many applications. These include control of serial line printers, terminal cluster controllers, and industrial I/O equipment, in addition to the more usual applications in telephone networks. Use of the control leads described in Table B-1 is therefore completely application dependent, although there are international standards which telephone network applications should obey. There are no hardware interlocks between the modem control logic and the transmitter and receiver logic. Program control manages these actions as necessary.

A subset of the leads listed in Table B-1 could be used to establish a communications link using modems connected to the switched telephone network. Ring Indicator (RI), Data Terminal Ready (DTR), and Data Carrier Detected (DCD) are the absolute minimum requirements. In some countries Dataset Ready (DSR) is also needed. It is usually desirable, however, to implement modem control protocols which will operate over most telephone systems in the world. Also, some protection should be included to guard against network faults, particularly in applications such as dial-up time-sharing systems. Such faults include:

- Making a channel permanently busy (hung) because of a misdialed connection from a non-data station

- Connecting a new incoming call on an in-use channel. This fault might occur, for example, after a temporary carrier loss, if the host system assumed that the carrier was reasserted by the original caller.

Modem control with some protection against common faults, and which is compatible with the telephone networks in most geographic areas, can be implemented by using all the signals listed in Table B-1, in the way described by the CCITT V.24 recommendations. Section B.2.1 describes a method of implementing a full-duplex auto-answer communications link via modems over the PSTN. It is provided here only to show the operation and interaction of DHV11 modem control leads in a typical application.

Table B-1 Modem Control Leads

| Name | RS-232-C | V.24 | 25-Pin | Definition |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| GND | AA | – | 1 | Protective ground. This provides a path between the modem and DHV11 for discharge of potentials such as static electricity. |
| GND | AB | 102 | 7 | Signal Ground. This is a reference level for the data and control signals used at the EIA interface. |
| TXD | BA | 103 | 2 | From DHV11 to modem. This signal contains the serial bit stream to be transmitted to the remote station. |
| RXD | BB | 104 | 3 | From modem to DHV11. This signal is the serial bit stream received by the modem from the remote station. |
| RTS | CA | 105 | 4 | From DHV11 to modem. Causes the modem's carrier to be placed on the line. |
| CTS | CB | 106 | 5 | From modem to DHV11. Indicates that the modem has successfully placed its carrier on the line and that data presented on circuit BA will be transmitted to the communication channel. |
| DSR | CC | 107 | 6 | From modem to DHV11. Indicates that the modem has completed all call establishment functions and is successfully connected to a communications channel. |
| DTR | CD | 108/2 | 20 | From DHV11 to modem. Indicates to the modem that the DHV11 is powered up and ready to answer an incoming call. |
| DCD | CF | 109 | 8 | From modem to DHV11. Indicates to the DHV11 that the remote station's carrier signal has been detected and is within appropriate limits. |
| RI | CE | 125 | 22 | From modem to DHV11. Indicates that a new incoming call is being received by the modem. |

### B.2.1 Example of Auto-Answer Modem Control for the PSTN

The system operator determines which DHV11 channels should be configured for either local or remote operation. Local operation implies control of data-leads only, while remote operation implies that modem control will be supported. The host software will assert DTR and RTS together with the Link Type bit in the LNCTRL register for all DHV11 channels configured for remote operation. DTR informs the modem that the DHV11 is powered up and ready to acknowledge control signals from the modem. RTS is asserted for the full-duplex mode of operation and causes the modem to place its carrier on the telephone line when the modem answers a call. Link Type (LNCTRL<8>) enables modem status information to be placed in the receive character FIFO where it will be handled by an interrupt service routine. Modem status changes are always reported in the STAT register regardless of the state of LNCTRL<8>. The modem is now prepared to auto-answer an incoming call.

Dialing the modem's number causes RI to be asserted at the EIA interface. This informs the DHV11 that a new call is being received. RI has to be in a stable state for at least 30 ms or else the change will not be reported by the DHV11. Since DTR is already asserted, the modem will auto-answer the incoming call and start its handshaking sequence with the calling station. The time needed to complete the handshaking sequence can be in the order of tens of seconds if fallback mode speed selection and satellite links are involved. The modem will assert DSR to indicate to the DHV11 that the call has been successfully answered and a connection established.

NOTE

**On some older types of modem used on the PSTN, the opposite effect is also true. The RI signal may be very short, or it may not even occur if DTR is previously asserted. When this type of modem answers an incoming call it asserts DSR almost immediately and deasserts RI at the EIA interface. Programs must therefore expect RI or DSR or DCD as the first dataset status change received from the modem when establishing a connection.**

As RTS was previously asserted, the modem's carrier will be placed on the line when DSR is asserted. When the modem has successfully placed its carrier on the line it will assert CTS which indicates to the DHV11 that it may start to transmit data. Should the incoming call be the result of a misdialed number then it is possible that a carrier signal would never be received. To guard against this, the host starts a timer when it detects RI or DSR. This is usually in the range of 15 to 40 seconds, within which time the carrier must be detected. When the modem detects the remote modem's carrier signal on the line, it will assert DCD which indicates to the DHV11 that data is valid on the RXD line.

The modem may now exchange data between the DHV11 and the calling station for as long as DCD, DSR, and CTS stay asserted. If any of these three signals disappear, or if RI should be detected during normal transmission, it would indicate a fault condition. A change of state of any of these signals would cause an interrupt via the receive FIFO.

The handling of the fault conditions now becomes country-specific as some telephone systems tolerate a transient carrier loss while others do not. In the USA it is usual to proceed with a call if carrier resumes within two seconds. In non-USA areas it is possible for telephone supervisory signals, such as dial-tone, to be misinterpreted by the modem as a resumption of carrier. In this case the host program would assume that the connection had been reestablished to the original caller and would cause a 'hung' channel. To prevent this, DTR should be deasserted immediately after the loss of DCD, CTS, or DSR to abort the connection. DTR should stay deasserted for at least two seconds, after which time a new call could be answered.

# APPENDIX C
# GLOSSARY OF TERMS

## C.1 SCOPE

This appendix contains a glossary of terms used in this manual. The terms are in alphabetical order for easy reference.

## C.2 GLOSSARY

**asynchronous** A method of serial transmission in which data is preceded by a start bit and followed by a stop bit. The receiver provides the intermediate timing to identify the data bits.

**auto-answer** A facility of a modem or terminal to automatically answer a call.

**auto-flow** Automatic flow control. A method by which the DHV11 controls the flow of data by means of special characters within the data stream.

**backward channel** A channel which transmits in the opposite direction to the usual data flow. Normally used for supervisory or control signals.

**BAL** Bus Address Line.

**BDAL** Bus Data and Address Line.

**base address** The address of the CSR.

**BMP** Background Monitor Program.

**CCITT** Comite Consultatif International de Telephonie et de Telegraphie. An international standards committee for telephone, telegraph, and data communications networks.

**dataset** See modem

**DIL** Dual-In-Line. The term describes ICs and components with two parallel rows of pins.

**DMA** Direct Memory Access. A method which allows a bus master to transfer data to and from system memory without using the host CPU.

**DUART** Dual Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter. An IC used for transmission and reception of serial asynchronous data on two channels.

**duplex** A method of transmitting and receiving on the same channel at the same time.

**EIA** Electrical Industries of America. An American organisation with the same function as the CCITT.

**EMC** Electro-Magnetic Compatibility. The term denotes compliance with field-strength, susceptibility, and static discharge standards.

**FCC** Federal Communications Commission. An American organisation which regulates and licenses communications equipment.

**FIFO** First In First Out. The term describes a register or memory from which the oldest data is removed first.

**floating address** A CSR address assigned to an option which does not have a fixed address allocated. The address is dependent on other floating address devices connected to the bus.

**floating vector** An interrupt vector assigned to an option which does not have a fixed vector allocated. The vector is dependent on other floating vector devices connected to the bus.

**FRU** Field Replaceable Unit.

**GO/NOGO** A test or indicator which defines only an 'error' or 'no error' condition.

**IC** Integrated Circuit.

**I/O** Input/Output.

**LSB** Least Significant Bit.

**LSI-11 bus** Another name for the Q-bus.

**microcomputer** An IC which contains a microprocessor and peripheral circuitry such as memory, I/O ports, timers, and UARTs.

**modem** The word is a contraction of MOdulator DEModulator. A modem interfaces a terminal to a transmission line. A modem is sometimes called a dataset.

**MSB** Most Significant Bit.

**multiplexer** A circuit which connects a number of lines to one line.

**null modem** A cable which allows two terminals which use modem control signals to be connected together directly. Only possible over short distances.

**PCB** Printed Circuit Board.

**protocol** A set of rules which define the control and flow of data in a communications system.

**PSTN** Public Switched Telephone Network.

**Q-bus** A global term for a specific DIGITAL bus on which the address and data are multiplexed.

**Q22, Q18 and Q16** Terms used to define 22-, 18-, and 16-bit address versions of Q-bus.

**RAM** Random Access Memory.

**RFI** Radio Frequency Interference.

**ROM** Read Only Memory.

**SMPS** Switch Mode Power Supply.

split-speed A facility of a data communications channel which can transmit and receive at different data rates at the same time.

UART Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter. An IC used for transmission and reception of serial asynchronous data on a channel.

X-OFF A control code ($23_8$) used to disable a transmitter. Special hardware or software is needed for this function.

X-ON A control code ($21_8$) used to enable a transmitter which has been disabled by an X-OFF code.

# APPENDIX D
# AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL

## D.1 OVERVIEW

Flow control is the control of data flow along a communications line, to prevent an overspill of queues or buffers, or to prevent loss of data when the receiver is unable to accept it.

The method of flow control adopted for the DHV11 is datastream-embedded ASCII control characters. The control characters used are X-OFF ($023_8$) and X-ON ($021_8$). X-OFF stops transmission and X-ON starts transmission. The codes are transmitted in the opposite direction to the data which they control.

The DHV11 has one mode of operation for transmitted data (received flow-control characters) and two modes of operation for received data (transmitted flow-control characters). Each mode can be enabled on a 'per-channel' basis. Each direction of flow is discussed separately within this appendix.

## D.2 CONTROL OF TRANSMITTED DATA

The mode of flow control for transmitted data is the simplest of the three flow-control modes of the DHV11.

When the DHV11 receives an X-OFF character for a particular channel, the TX.ENA bit for that channel is cleared. When this bit is clear the DHV11 will not transmit any data on that channel; however, internally generated flow-control characters will still be transmitted. When an X-ON character is received, the TX.ENA bit for that channel is set. Figure D-1 illustrates the operation of the transmitted data flow control.

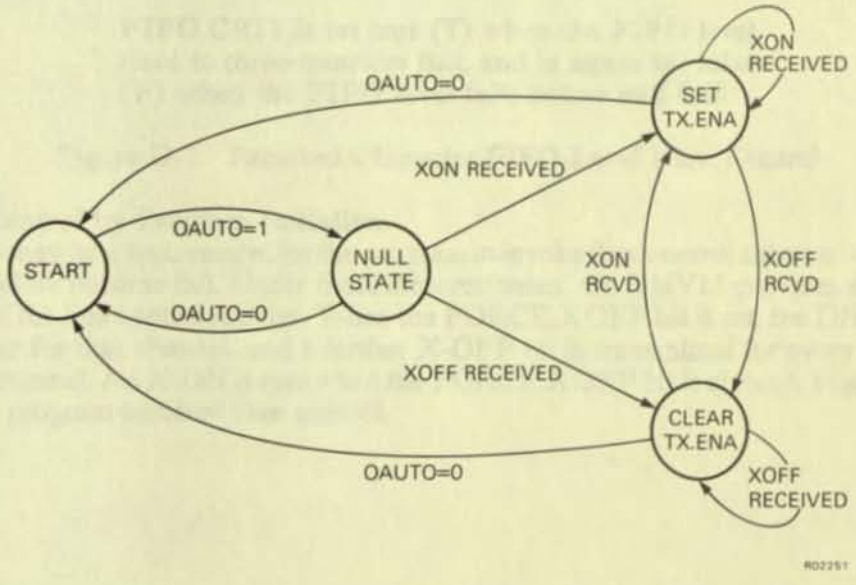



Figure D-1 Transmitted Data Flow Control

Only characters without transmission errors are checked for X-ON and X-OFF codes. The characters have their parity bit stripped before comparison.

**NOTE**

**For the automatic flow control to operate correctly, the DHV11 and the connected equipment must have the same line configuration.**

The transmitted data mode of flow control is enabled by setting OAUTO (bit 4 of the line control register), and is disabled by clearing OAUTO. The default for this mode is 'disabled'. The DHV11 may alter the state of the TX.ENA bit up to 20 microseconds after the program clears the OAUTO bit.

The DHV11 always passes flow-control characters back to the program via the received character FIFO, whether or not this mode is enabled.

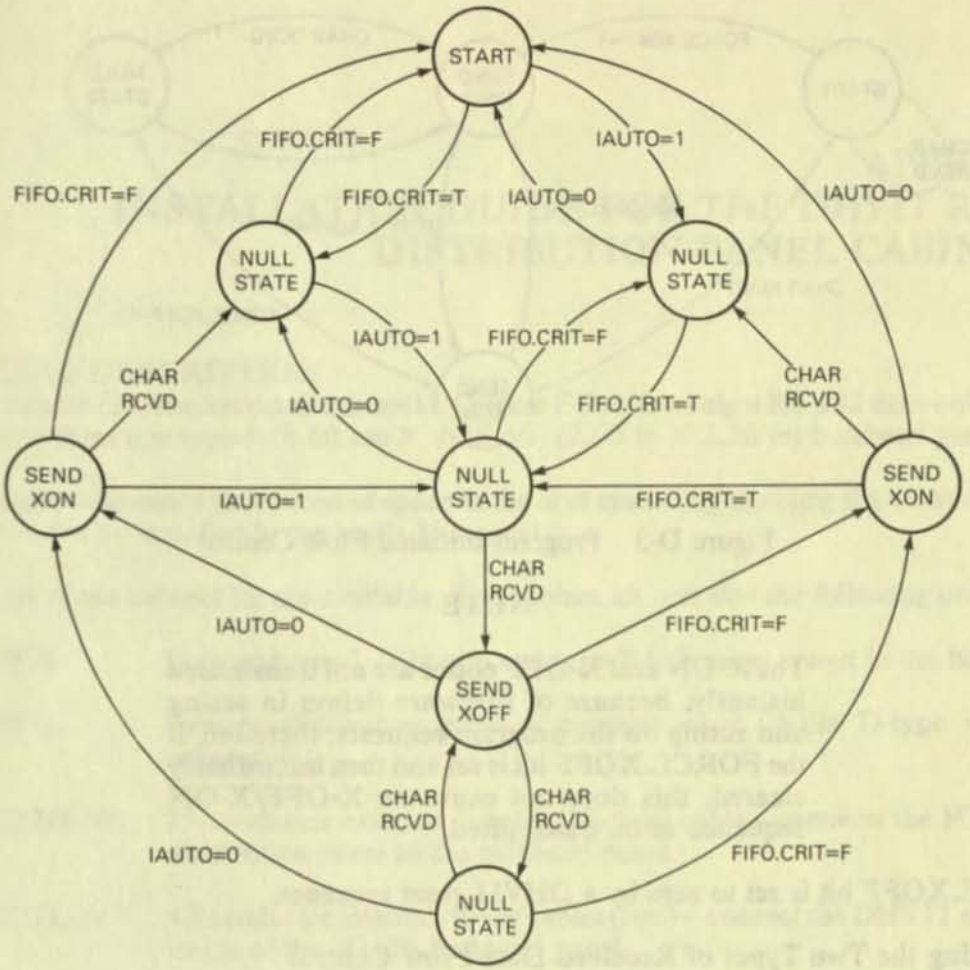
## D.3 CONTROL OF RECEIVED DATA

The flow control of received data is slightly more complicated than that of transmitted data; therefore, for descriptive purposes, the two modes of received data flow control are first treated separately.

### D.3.1 Flow Control by the Level of the Received Character FIFO

Occasionally, the program may not be able to empty the received character FIFO as fast as the received data is filling it. Since the program is unaware of how full the FIFO is, it is unable to take appropriate action to prevent data loss. To overcome this problem, the DHV11 can be programmed on a 'per-channel' basis, so that an X-OFF is sent before the FIFO reaches a critical condition. In these circumstances, when the FIFO becomes three-quarters full, the X-OFF is sent to the channels from which data is received, and thereafter an X-OFF character is sent in response to every second received character. When the FIFO level drops below half full, an X-ON character is transmitted. The operation of the FIFO-level flow control is shown in Figure D-2.

The FIFO-level flow-control mode is enabled by setting IAUTO (bit 1 of the line control register). The mode is disabled by clearing IAUTO. The default for this mode is 'disabled'. If IAUTO is cleared after an X-OFF is sent but before an X-ON would normally be sent, an X-ON is sent anyway.




**NOTE**

**FIFO.CRIT is set true (T) when the FIFO level rises to three-quarters full, and is again set false (F) when the FIFO level falls below half full.**

Figure D-2 Received Character FIFO-Level Flow Control

### D.3.2 Flow Control by Program Initiation

Sometimes there may be a requirement for the program to invoke flow control automatically; for example, when internal buffers become full. Under these circumstances, the DHV11 provides a FORCE.XOFF bit; this is bit 5 of the line control register. When the FORCE.XOFF bit is set, the DHV11 transmits an X-OFF character for that channel, and a further X-OFF bit is transmitted for every second character received on the channel. An X-ON is sent when the FORCE.XOFF bit is cleared. Figure D-3 illustrates the operation of program-initiated flow control.

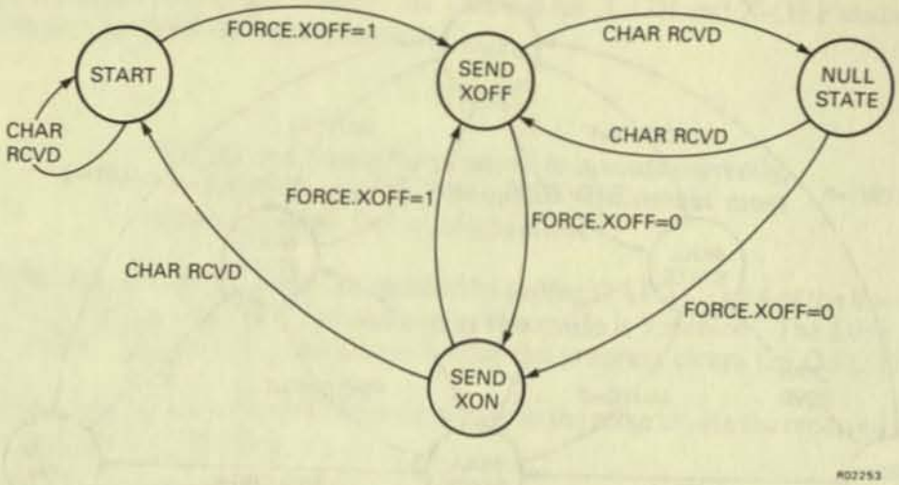



Figure D-3 Program-Initiated Flow Control

**NOTE**

**The X-ON and X-OFF codes are not transmitted instantly, because of firmware delays in seeing and acting on the program requests; therefore, if the FORCE.XOFF bit is set and then immediately cleared, this does not cause an X-OFF/X-ON sequence to be transmitted.**

The FORCE.XOFF bit is set to zero by a DHV11 reset sequence.

### D.3.3 Mixing the Two Types of Received Data Flow Control

To calculate the effect of using the two modes, they should be logically ORed together; an X-ON will not be sent until both sources are inactive. If FORCE.XOFF is set while the FIFO-critical mode is active, the SEND XOFF is immediately entered even if an X-OFF has just been transmitted. If the FIFO-critical mode becomes active while FORCE.XOFF is set, an X-OFF is sent in response to the next received character.

# APPENDIX E
# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR THE DHV11 REMOTE DISTRIBUTION PANEL CABINET KIT

## E.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet kit (Figure E-2) allows eight RS-232 data-only serial lines to be distributed from one type-B (6.60 cm × 8.38 cm) (2.60 in × 3.20 in) bulkhead panel.

This arrangement overcomes limitations of space in the host system by doubling the number of DHV11 serial lines that can be installed in the host's I/O panel.

Four variations of the cabinet kit are available. The cabinet kit contains the following components.

- H3176 — Bulkhead panel – fits into one type-B I/O panel cutout in the host system.
- H3175 — Remote distribution panel – contains eight 25-pin D-type subminiature connectors.
- BC22H-10 — 25-conductor external 3-metre (10-foot) cable – connects the H3175 remote distribution panel to the bulkhead panel.
- BC05L-xx * — 40-conductor internal ribbon cables (two) – connect the DHV11 module to the inside of the H3176 bulkhead panel.
- H315-B — Loopback connector (one).
- Screws — 6-32 screws (four) used to attach the H3176 bulkhead panel to a system I/O panel.
- 74-28684-01 — Adapter plate (-VC cabinet kit only). Adapts the H3176 bulkhead panel to the PDP-11/23+ H349 distribution panel.

The cabinet kits are listed in Table E-1. The difference is the length of the internal cables.

Table E-1 Cabinet Kit Details

| Cabinet Kit | Internal Cables (Two) | Where Used |
|---|---|---|
| CK-DHV11-VA | BC05L-1K (53.34 cm, 21 in) | BA123 enclosure |
| CK-DHV11-VB | BC05L-01 (30.48 cm, 12 in) | BA23 enclosure |
| CK-DHV11-VC | BC05L-2F (76.20 cm, 30 in) | PDP-11/23+ H349 distribution panel |
| CK-DHV11-VF | BC05L-03 (91.44 cm, 36 in) | H9542 cabinet systems |

* Cable length varies – see Table E-1

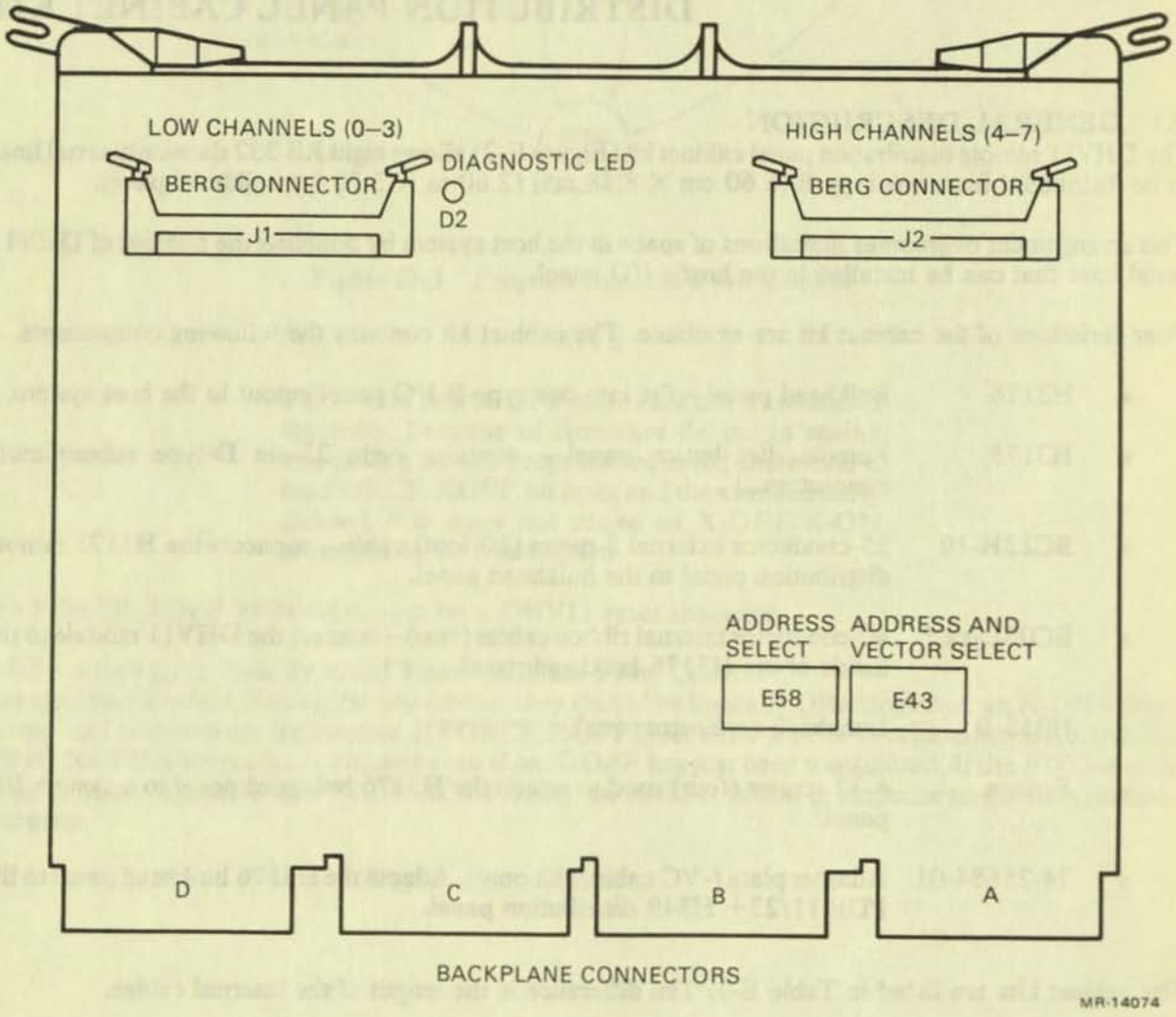



Figure E-1 DHV11 Module

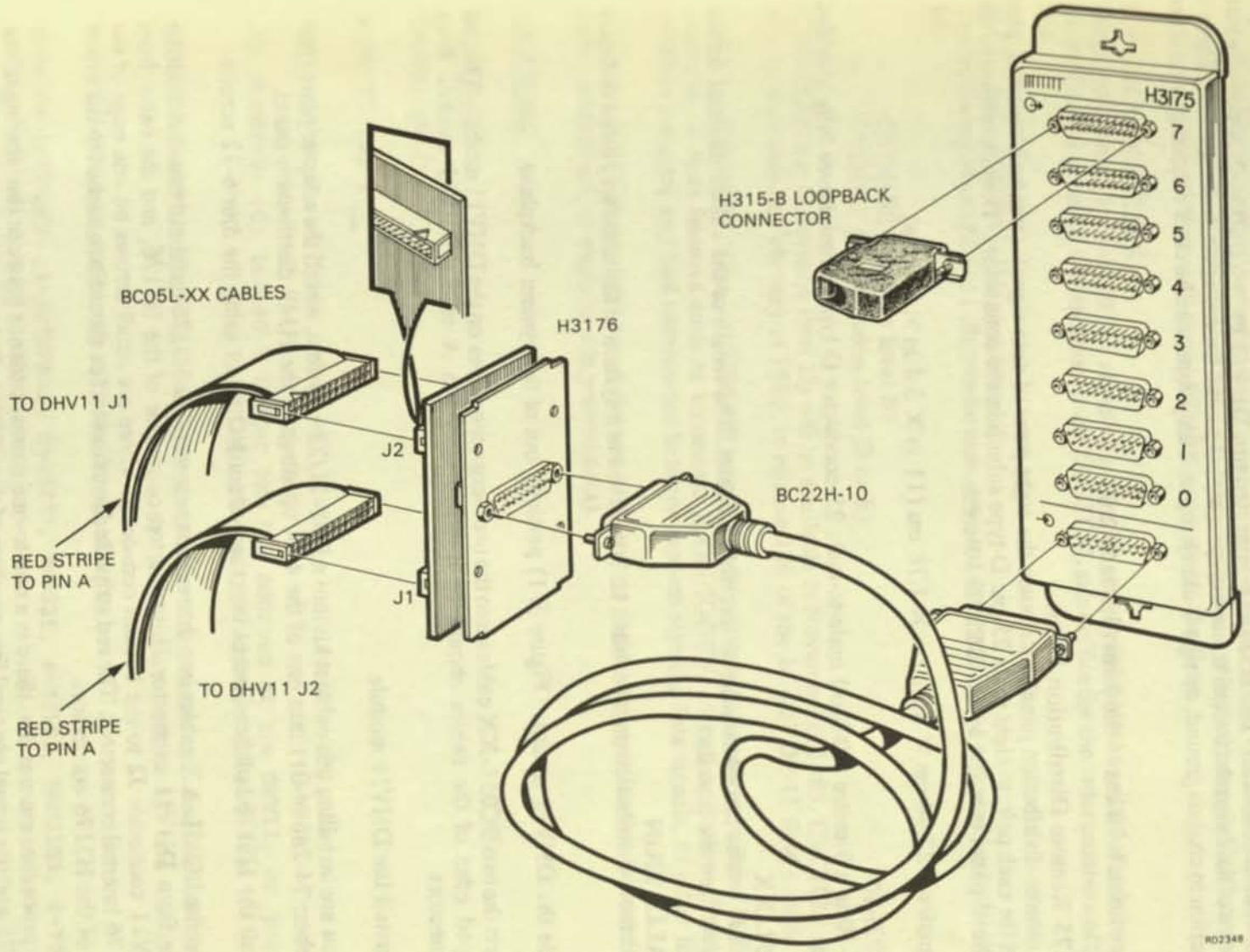



Figure E-2 DHV11 Remote Distribution Panel Cabinet Kit

## E.2 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

### E.2.1 H3176 Bulkhead Panel

The H3176 bulkhead panel consists of two 40-pin vertical headers and a fully filtered female 25-pin D-type subminiature connector. The H3176 is connected to a DHV11 by two BC05L-XX cables which bring eight pairs of data signals (transmit/receive), plus signal ground for each pair, to the H3176. There is also a connection to chassis ground, using a 0-ohm jumper. This jumper can be cut if chassis ground is not desired.

Overall dimensions: 8.38 cm × 6.60 cm (3.3 in × 2.6 in)

### E.2.2 H3175 Remote Distribution Panel

The H3175 remote distribution panel distributes the eight pairs of data signals (transmit/receive), plus signal ground for each pair, to eight male 25-pin D-type subminiature connectors. The connection to the H3176 bulkhead panel is made by the BC22H-10 cable.

Overall dimensions: 27.94 cm × 8.37 cm × 1.78 cm (11 in × 3.4 in × 0.70 in)

### E.2.3 BC22H-10

The BC22H-10 is a 3-metre (10-foot) male-to-male 25-conductor D-type subminiature fully shielded EIA cable.

### E.2.4 BC05L-XX

The BC05L-XX cables are 40-conductor flat ribbon cables. The length of the cables depends on the system in which they are installed.

## E.3 INSTALLATION

The DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet kit is installed in a system in the same way as an ordinary cabinet kit.

1. Slide the DHV11 module (Figure E-1) partially out of the system backplane.

2. Insert the two BC05L-XX cables into the two Berg connectors on the DHV11 module. The red striped edge of the cables should be installed onto Pin A of the DHV11 module Berg connectors.

3. Reinstall the DHV11 module.

4. If you are installing this cabinet kit into a PDP-11/23+ system, install the adapter plate (part number: 74-28684-01) into one of the 4×4 openings in the H349 distribution panel.

5. Install the H3176 bulkhead panel into the system I/O panel using the four 6-32 screws.

6. Insert the BC05L-XX cables into the rear connectors of the H3176 bulkhead panel. Attach the cable from DHV11 connector J1 to the top connector of the H3176, and the cable from DHV11 connector J2 to the bottom connector. There are small arrows on one edge of the H3176 internal connectors. The red striped edge of the cables should be attached to the arrow side of the H3176 connectors.

   This procedure ensures that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the labeling of the H3175 and the actual physical line numbers of the DHV11. If this procedure is not followed, the physical line numbers will not correspond to the H3175 labeling (0 to 7).

7. Insert the BC22H-10 cable into the external connector of the H3176 bulkhead panel.

8. Insert the BC22H-10 cable into the bottom 'Input' connector of the H3175 remote distribution panel.

9. Place the H3175 remote distribution panel in a location that is accessible, but where it will not be disturbed. The H3175 has three tear-drop cutouts at both the top and bottom so that it can be mounted on a wall three different ways, or on the floor.

## E.4 DIAGNOSTICS

Diagnostic testing for the DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet it is available for MicroPDP-11 and MicroVAX II systems. Contact your local DIGITAL sales office for the order numbers of the diagnostic kits.

### E.4.1 MicroPDP-11 Diagnostics

The following MicroPDP-11 diagnostic tests are used for the DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet kit.

- CVDHBE (revision level E)
- CVDHC? (? = revision level D or E)

CVDHCD (test C, revision level D) will be available in November of 1985. CVCHBE and CVDHCE will be available in February of 1986, in release 126 of the MicroPDP-11 field service kit.

E.4.1.1 CVDHBE Test – CVDHBE tests the ability of the device to transmit and receive characters correctly. It tests features such as automatic X-ON/X-OFF, correct operation of modem bits, and whether there are any bad interactions between modem signals, data signals, or other lines.

From the XXDP+ prompt (.), run the test and reply to the set-up questions as follows (the replies are either underlined, or explained in parentheses).

```
.R VDHBE0

DR>START

CHANGE HW (L) ? Y

# UNITS (D) ? 1

UNIT 0

CSR ADDRESS: (0) 160460 ? (Enter the CSR address of the DHV11, or just press
                           RETURN if the CSR address is 160460)

INTERRUPT VECTOR ADDRESS: (0) 300 ? (Enter the interrupt vector of the DHV11,
                                     or just press RETURN if the vector is 300)

ACTIVE LINE BIT MAP: (0) 377 ? (Press RETURN)

TYPE OF LOOPBACK (1=INTERNAL, 2=H3277, 3=H325, 4=H3101, 5=H3103, 6=70-22629,
7=H315-B): (0) 2 ? 7

INTERRUPT BR LEVEL: (0) 4? (Press RETURN)

CHANGE SW (L) ? N
```

E.4.1.2 CVDHC?0 Test – (? = revisions D and E.) CVDHC tests DMA and split speed. It also tests modems and terminals, and verifies that data integrity checks (such as framing and parity checking) are working.

From the XXDP+ prompt, run the test and reply to the set-up questions as follows (the replies are either underlined, or explained in parentheses).

```
.R VDHC?0

DR>START

CHANGE HW (L) ? Y

# UNITS (D) ? 1

UNIT 0

CSR ADDRESS: (0) 160460 ? (Enter the CSR address of the DHV11, or just press
                           RETURN if the CSR address is 160460)

INTERRUPT VECTOR ADDRESS: (0) 300 ? (enter the interrupt vector of the DHV11,
                                     or just press RETURN if the vector is 300)

ACTIVE LINE BIT MAP: (0) 377 ? (Press RETURN)
```

**NOTE**

**The choice of loopback connectors differs between revision D and E of this test, as follows.**

Revision D (CVDHCD0):

```
TYPE OF LOOPBACK (1=INTERNAL, 2=H3277, 3=H325, 4=MODEM, 5=KEYBOARD ECHO):
                 (0) 2 ? (Select 3, but use the H315-B)
```

Revision E (CVDHCE0):

```
TYPE OF LOOPBACK (1=INTERNAL, 2=H3277, 3=H325, 4=MODEM, 5=KEYBOARD ECHO,
6=H3101, 7=H3103, 10=70-22629, 11=H315-B): (0) 2 ? 11
```

When you have chosen the appropriate loopback connector, continue as follows:

```
INTERRUPT BR LEVEL: (0) 4 ? (Press RETURN)

CHANGE SW (L) ? N
```

E.4.2 MicroVAX II Diagnostics

MicroVAX II diagnostic tests for the DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet kit are in the MicroVAX maintenance kit. The MicroVAX maintenance kit is available on RX50 diskettes or a TK50 cartridge.

These kits contain the MicroVAX Maintenance System (MMS). The MicroVAX Diagnostic Monitor (MDM) in MMS is used in conjunction with the H315-B loopback connector to test a suspected bad serial line on the device. Load the media according to the instructions in the maintenance guide included with the kit.

When you reach the main menu, select:

4 – Display the Service Menu

From the service menu, select:

4 – Enter System Commands

Two modes of testing are available in MDM – verify and service. Tests in service mode require the use of loopback connectors, and may destroy customer data. Use service mode to test the DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet kit. Write-protect all mass-storage devices before running the test.

Each mode is divided into three sections – functional, exerciser, and utility. Tests in the utility section are typically interactive. Use the utility sections to test the DHV11 remote distribution panel cabinet kit.

To get a list of the MDM commands, enter 'help' at the MDM prompt. Refer to the MicroVAX Maintenance Guide for a detailed explanation of MDM.

After selecting '4 – Enter System Commands', press the RETURN key to start MDM. From the MDM prompt, 'MDM>>>', enter the following sequence.

| Prompt | User Response | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| MDM>>> | set p f | Set progress full |
| MDM>>> | set det on | Set detailed messages on |
| MDM>>> | set mod serv | Set MDM to service mode |
| MDM>>> | set sec util | Set section to utility |
| MDM>>> | conf | Configure the system |
| MDM>>> | sho conf | Show the configuration |
| MDM>>> | sel 4 | Select the number of the DHV11 you want to test from the displayed configuration (4 here is an example only) |
| MDM>>> | set test 1 | Select the staged loopback test |
| MDM>>> | st | Start the staged loopback test |

At this point a series of set-up questions appear. The default responses appear in brackets. Press the RETURN key (<RET>), if you want to enter the default response. The default responses are valid for the DHV11 remote distribution panel loopback test, with the following exception.

- The default response [y] of the first question (test modem control lines?) will not correctly test the remote distribution panel, since it is a data-only device. Answer NO to this question.

The set-up questions appear as follows (the replies which you should give are either underlined, or explained in parentheses).

```
Do you wish to test modem control lines? [y]  NO

Which port would you like to test (0-7)? [all connections] <RET>

Which baud rate would you like to test? (0-15)? [13] (Press RETURN to test at
                                                      9600 baud, or enter ? to
                                                      list the baud-rates)
How many data bits (5, 6, 7 or 8)? [8] <RET>

Parity enabled (Yes = 1, No = 0)? [0] <RET>

Parity sense (1 = even, 0 = odd)? [0] <RET>

Number of stop bits (1 or 2)? [1] <RET>
```

Attach the H315-B loopback connector to the port to be tested and press the RETURN key. The test will run and the results of the test will be displayed.

If you want to test another port, or restart the diagnostic program for any reason, you must reconfigure the system. To do so, begin again at the 'conf' command:

```
MDM>>>  conf
```

and continue with the remainder of the sequence listed above.

Digital Equipment Corporation • Bedford, MA 01730

EK-DHQ11-UG-002

# DHQ11
# User Guide

digital™

EK-DHQ11-UG-002

# DHQ11
# User Guide

Prepared by Educational Services
of
Digital Equipment Corporation

Second Edition, July 1987



Printed in U.S.A.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Digital Equipment Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors herein.

The following are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation:

digital™

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| DEC | MASSBUS | RT-11 |
| DECmate | PDP | UNIBUS |
| DECsystem-10 | P/OS | VAX |
| DECSYSTEM-20 | Professional | VAXBI |
| DECUS | Rainbow | VMS |
| DECwriter | RSTS | VT |
| DIBOL | RSX | Work Processor |
| FALCON | | |

# CONTENTS

## FIGURES



## TABLES

# PREFACE

The *DHQ11 User Guide* provides reference information on physical layout, system configuration, installation and testing, programming characteristics, and maintenance. There is a glossary of technical terms generally used in DIGITAL technical manuals. The manual is divided into four chapters as follows:

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION. This chapter gives a physical description of the DHQ11, explains how it can be configured, and explains how it interfaces with the system bus and serial data lines.

CHAPTER 2 INSTALLATION. Chapter 2 describes how to install a DHQ11 option, with detailed information on device and vector address selection, backplane positioning, cables and connectors, and testing after installation.

CHAPTER 3 PROGRAMMING. This chapter describes the DHQ11 registers. Some programming examples are also included.

CHAPTER 4 TROUBLESHOOTING. Chapter 4 explains maintenance strategy, and how to use diagnostic programs to locate a faulty module.

APPENDICES. These include additional information on topics discussed in this manual:

APPENDIX A — MODEM CONTROL
APPENDIX B — FLOATING ADDRESSES
APPENDIX C — AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL
APPENDIX D — GLOSSARY OF TERMS
APPENDIX E — DHQ11 BUS CONNECTIONS

This revision of the manual contains new information. The DHQ11 can operate in two different modes, making it compatible with software drivers written for either the DHV11 or the DHU11. Revision -001 of this manual contained information on DHV11 mode of operation only.

# CHAPTER 1
# INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 SCOPE

This chapter gives an overview of the DHQ11 asynchronous multiplexer, describes the features that it offers, and defines its physical parameters and electrical requirements.

## 1.2 OVERVIEW

### 1.2.1 General Description

The DHQ11 option is a serial-line interface which provides eight full-duplex serial data channels on Q-bus systems. The DHQ11 option consists of a single Q-bus module, and one of two groups of cabinet kits, depending on the communication standard supported. The cabinet kits contain the cabinet bulkhead panels and connecting cables.

The main application of the DHQ11 is for interactive terminal handling; it can also be used for data concentration and real-time processing. It has two programming modes, DHV11 and DHU11. The register sets in these modes are compatible with those of the DHV11 and DHU11 respectively. The preferred mode of operation is DHU11 mode. The main features of the DHQ11 are:

- Eight full-duplex asynchronous data channels
- For transmission: DMA transfers; or for each line, program transfers to a 1-character transmit buffer in DHV11 mode, or to a 64-character transmit FIFO in DHU11 mode
- For receive: a 256-entry FIFO buffer for received characters, dataset status changes, and diagnostic information
- It supports EIA-232-D/V.28 or DEC423, with the appropriate cabinet kit.

**NOTE**

**DEC423 is a term used in this manual to indicate a data-leads-only implementation of the RS-423-A electrical standard. DEC423 uses MMJ connectors instead of the 37-way connectors specified by RS-449.**

- It is compatible with all DIGITAL DHV11 and DHU11 device drivers
- It can auto-answer on a switched line
- The transmit and receive baud rates for each line can be individually programmed
- It has a total module throughput of 60,000 characters per second, using 8-bit characters, with all channels operating at 38.4 kbaud for both character reception and transmission

- The DHQ11 supports 16-, 18-, or 22-bit addressing, including block-mode data transfer with suitable memories
- The DHQ11 can be programmed to filter XON/XOFF characters from the received data flow
- Self-test and background monitor testing
- Dual-height module, M3107
- Switchpacks for selecting the Q-bus base address, vector address and DHV11 or DHU11 programming mode.

All other functions are selected by program.

**1.2.1.1 Modem Control Facility** – All eight channels have sufficient modem control to allow auto-answer dial-up operation over the public switched telephone network using suitable modems, such as DIGITAL's DF124, or Bell models 103, 113, 212. Equivalent modems from other manufacturers can also be used. The DHQ11 is designed to minimize software requirements for modem link control. Appendix A gives further information on modem control. Modem control can be used for driving modems over both public and private lines. Please note that, in some countries, modems must be approved by the PTT for that country for connection to the public network.

**1.2.1.2 Self-Test Facility** – The DHQ11 incorporates self-test sequencers which operate independently of the host. The result of the self-test is provided to the host system through the receive FIFO buffer. A green LED indicates GO/NO-GO status for the device. More details are given in Section 4.3.

**1.2.1.3 Diagnostic Programs** – A full range of diagnostic programs is available. These run under the MicroPDP-11 diagnostic supervisor or MicroVAX II maintenance system. Loopback test connectors are not needed when running the user-mode diagnostics. Service-mode diagnostics and loopback connectors are available from DIGITAL.

**1.2.1.4 Preventing Data Loss** – The DHQ11 can be programmed for automatic XON and XOFF operation, to prevent the loss of data at high throughput. The reporting of received XON/XOFF characters to the software driver can be enabled or disabled.

### 1.2.2 Physical Description

The DHQ11 is an M3107 dual-height Q-bus module. It is 21.6 cm (8.51 inches) long and 13.2 cm (5.19 inches) wide. Figure 1-1 shows the layout. Connectors A and B are for the Q-bus, while connectors J1 and J2 interface to the communications lines via BC05L-xx cables and distribution panels. Two distribution panels are supplied with an EIA-232-D option, and a single panel is supplied with a DEC423 option. Connector J3 provides power to the active distribution panel supplied with DEC423 options. This connector is not used with EIA-232-D options. Mixed use, that is, one EIA-232-D and one DEC423 panel connected to a single module, is not supported by DIGITAL.

**1.2.2.1 On-Board Switchpacks** – The DHQ11 has two on-board switchpacks to select the following functions.

- Switchpack E-19 (10-position)

  Switch 1 selects DHV11 programming mode when **closed,** or DHU11 programming mode when **open.**

  Switches 2 to 10 select the device address.

- Switchpack E-11 (8-position)

  Switch 1 enables the on-board oscillator. This is a manufacturing test switch, and is closed for normal operation.

  Switch 2 selects manufacturing self-test mode. This is a manufacturing test switch, and is open for normal operation.

  Switches 3 to 8 select the device vector address.

Chapter 2 gives further information about these switchpacks.

**1.2.2.2 Communications Standard** – The serial drivers on the M3107 module are compatible with EIA-232-D. However, the CK-DHQ11-W cabinet kits provide level conversion for DEC423.

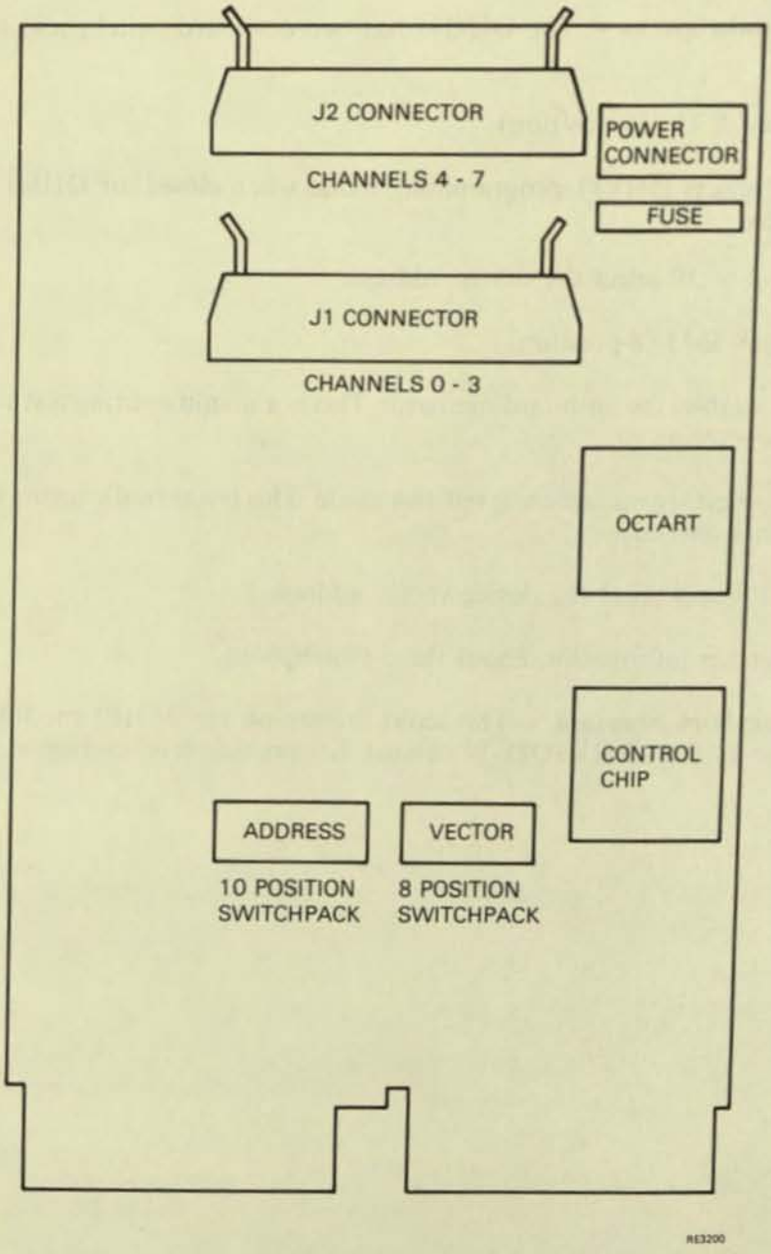



Figure 1-1 Layout of the DHQ11 Module

### 1.2.3 Versions Of The DHQ11

The DHQ11-M option consists of the M3107 Q-bus module and the *User Guide*. It can be used with one of six cabinet kits. The choice of kit depends on the type of system cabinet, and on whether a EIA-232-D or a DEC423 communication interface is needed.

The cabinet kits available for use with the DHQ11-M are:

**EIA-232-D**

- CK-DHQ11-AA for BA123/BA11-M boxes
- CK-DHQ11-AB for BA23 boxes
- CK-DHQ11-AF for H9642 cabinets

**DEC423**

- CK-DHQ11-WA for BA123/BA11-M boxes
- CK-DHQ11-WB for BA23 boxes
- CK-DHQ11-WF for H9642 cabinets

### 1.2.4 Configurations

The DHQ11 can be used in many different system configurations. Figure 1-2 shows a typical EIA-232-D application.

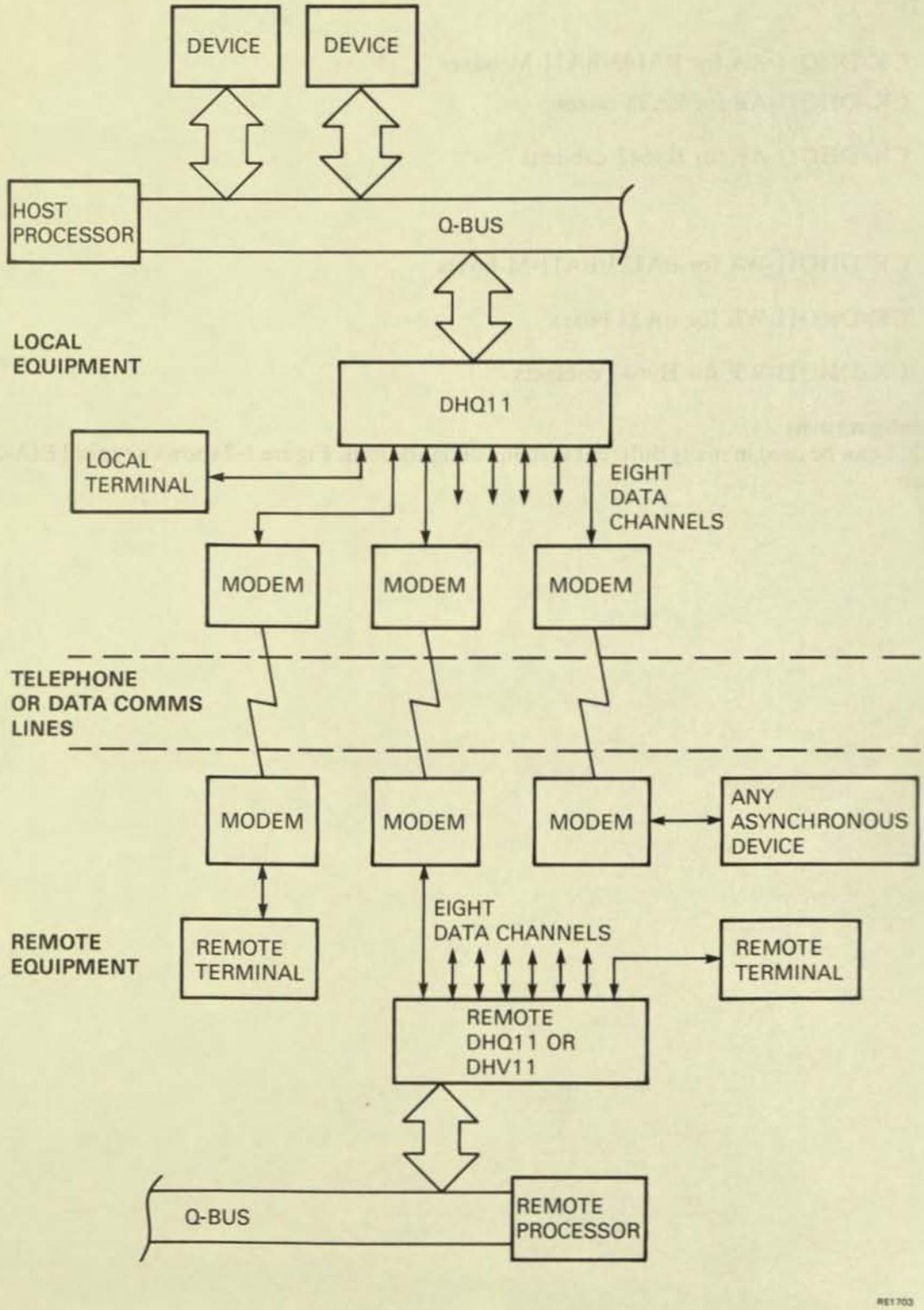
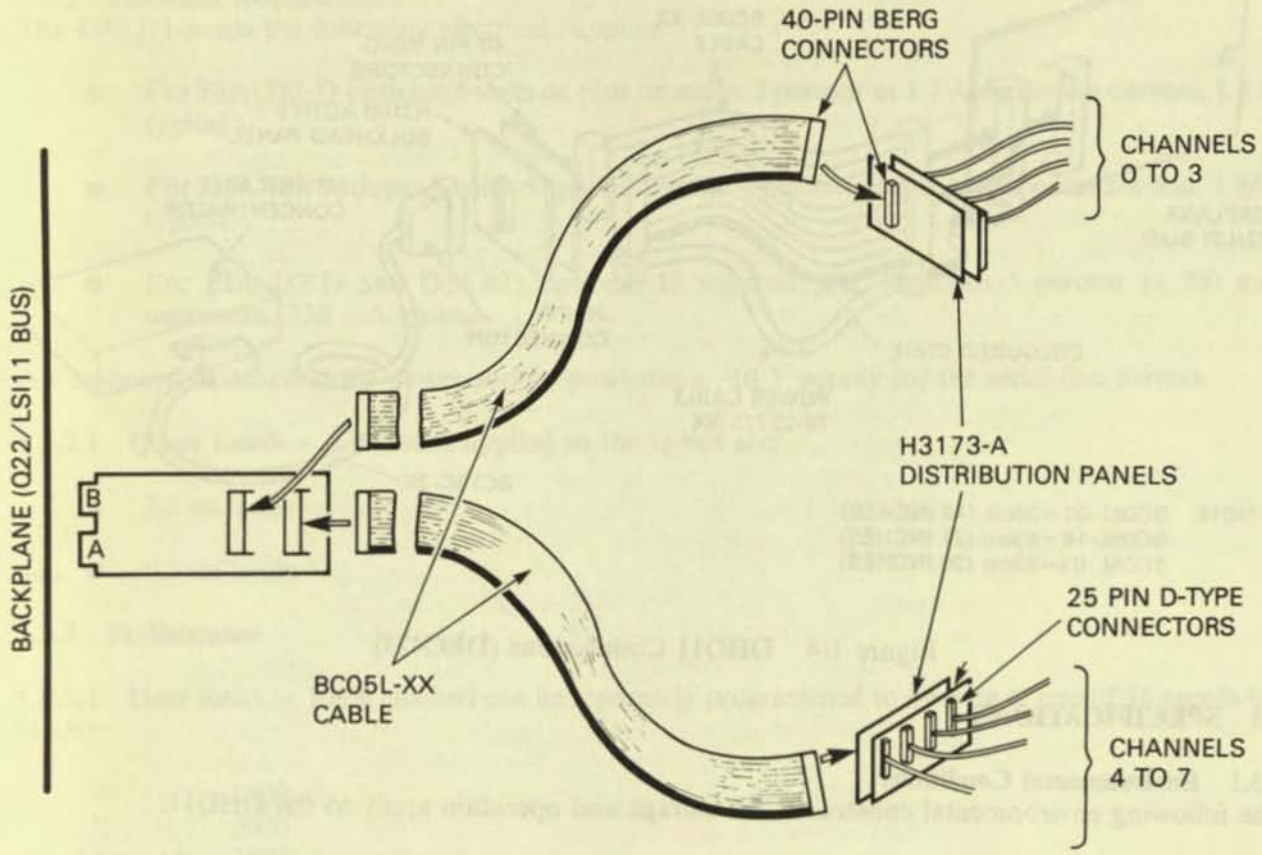



Figure 1-2 Example of a DHQ11 Configuration

### 1.2.5 Connections

The DHQ11 module is connected directly to the Q-bus by connectors A and B. Figures 1-3 and 1-4 show the interconnections for EIA-232-D and DEC423.




NOTE: BC05L-01 = 30 cm (12 INCHES)
BC05L-1K = 53 cm (21 INCHES)
BC05L-03 = 92 cm (36 INCHES)

RE3

Figure 1-3 DHQ11 Connections (EIA-232-D)

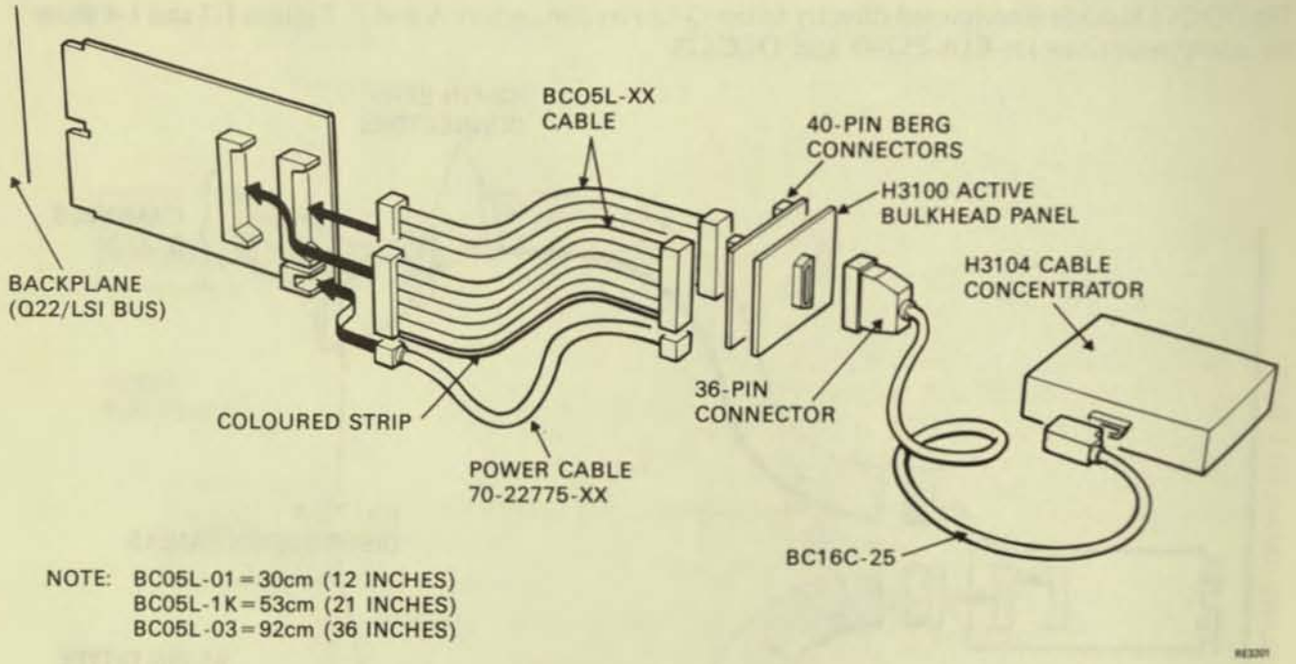



Figure 1-4 DHQ11 Connections (DEC423)

## 1.3 SPECIFICATIONS

### 1.3.1 Environmental Conditions

The following environmental constraints for storage and operation apply to the DHQ11.

- The storage temperature must be within the range –40 degrees C to 66 degrees C (–40 degrees F to 151 degrees F).
- The operating temperature must be within the range 5 degrees C to 60 degrees C (41 degrees F to 140 degrees F).
- When operating, the relative humidity must be within the range 10 percent to 95 percent, non-condensing, at a maximum wet-bulb temperature of 32 degrees C and a minimum dew point of 2 degrees C.

DIGITAL normally defines the operating temperature range for a system as 5 degrees C to 50 degrees C (41 degrees F to 122 degrees F); the 10 degrees C difference between the upper limits quoted allows for the temperature gradient within the system box.

The maximum operating temperatures must be derated by 1.8 degrees C/1000 m above sea level (1 degree F/1000 ft) for operation at high-altitude sites.

### 1.3.2 Electrical Requirements

The DHQ11 needs the following electrical supplies.

- For EIA-232-D options: 5 volts dc plus or minus 5 percent at 1.7 A maximum current, 1.4 A typical
- For DEC423 options: 5 volts dc plus or minus 5 percent at 2.2 A maximum current, 1.9 A typical
- For EIA-232-D and DEC423 options: 12 volts dc plus or minus 5 percent at 300 mA maximum, 230 mA typical

An on-board switched-mode power supply generates a –10 V supply for the serial-line drivers.

**1.3.2.1 Q-bus Loads** – The loads applied to the Q-bus are:

- 3.2 ac loads
- 0.5 dc loads

### 1.3.3 Performance

**1.3.3.1 Data Rates** – Each channel can be separately programmed to operate at one of 16 speeds (in bits/s):

| | |
|---|---|
| 50 | 1800 |
| 75 | 2000 |
| 110 | 2400 |
| 134.5 | 4800 |
| 150 | 7200 |
| 300 | 9600 |
| 600 | 19200 |
| 1200 | 38400 |

**NOTE**

**See also Section 1.4.4 (Speed and Distance Considerations).**

Chapter 3 contains further information on data rates for EIA-232-D.

**1.3.3.2 Throughput** – Each channel is capable of full-duplex operation at the maximum data rate. The following maximum throughput is obtainable:

- At 7 bits per character, with 1 start bit, 1 stop bit, and 1 parity bit, the throughput is 61440 characters per second.
- At 5 bits per character, with 1 start bit, 1 stop bit, and no parity, the throughput is 87771 characters per second.

This throughput may be limited by your driver software.

## 1.4 SERIAL INTERFACES

### 1.4.1 Interface Standards

The DHQ11 provides modem control signals which conform to EIA/CCITT standard EIA-232-D/V.24. The electrical characteristics of the data signal lines conform either to EIA-232-D/V.24 or to RS-423-A/V.28, depending on which cabinet kit is fitted. The interface is compatible with X.26/V.10 standards. The slew-rate requirements for RS-423-A/V.28 are different from the slew-rate requirements for X.26/V.10.

Connections to external equipment are made via 25-pin male subminiature D-type connectors, as specified for EIA-232-D, or 6-pin MMJ connectors for DEC423.

**NOTE**

**The H3173-A distribution panel does not support separate transmit and receive grounds.**

Table 1-1 shows how the signals in EIA-232-D, V.24, and RS-449 are related, and lists the pin connections for male subminiature D-type connectors.

**Table 1-1 EIA/CCITT Signal Relationships**

| Signal Name | | D-type Pin | EIA-232-D | Circuit CCITT V.24 | Circuit RS-449 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Signal Ground | (SIG GND) | 7 | AB | 102 | SG |
| RS-423-A Receive Common | | * | RC | 102B | |
| Transmitted Data | (TXD) | 2 | BA | 103 | SD |
| Received Data | (RXD) | 3 | BB | 104 | RD |
| Request To Send | (RTS) | 4 | CA | 105 | RS |
| Clear To Send | (CTS) | 5 | CB | 106 | CS |
| Data Set Ready | (DSR) | 6 | CC | 107 | DM |
| Data Terminal Ready | (DTR) | 20 | CD | 108/2 | TR |
| Data Carrier Detect | (DCD) | 8 | CF | 109 | RR |
| Ring Indicator | (RI) | 22 | CE | 125 | IC |

* Not Connected

### 1.4.2 Line Receivers

The DHQ11 uses octal serial-line receivers which convert line input signals to TTL levels for the OCTART. Signals are inverted by the receivers.

### 1.4.3 Line Transmitters

The DHQ11 uses EIA transmitters which convert TTL level signals from the OCTART and modem latches to line levels on the data and modem lines.

### 1.4.4 Speed And Distance Considerations

As of December 1985, the Electronics Industries Association (EIA) have replaced the "RS-" identifier for RS-232-C with "EIA". Therefore RS-232-C has been replaced by EIA-232-D. These two standards are compatible with each other. This manual uses EIA-232-D.

The RS-232-C/CCITT V.28 standard was originally designed to specify the connection between a local interface and a modem. It was not intended to be used for connecting to terminals over long distances. The maximum specified cable length is 50 feet (15 metres). Shielded cable must be used in order to meet the requirements of FCC and VDE Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) regulations.

Although cable lengths greater than 50 feet can be used with reasonable success, cable capacitance, noise and ground potential difference restrict the line speed as the distances increase. Consequently, the performance of long-distance communications to a terminal using EIA-232-D often does not meet today's requirements for terminal wiring.

DEC423 is a data-leads-only implementation of the RS-423-A/CCITT V.10 standard. RS-423-A has a different grounding and signal return path arrangement from EIA-232-D.

DEC423 uses line driver and receiver chips which have better filtering and tighter level tolerances than those specified by RS-423-A. In addition, DEC423 devices include transient suppressors for electrical overstress (EOS) and electrostatic discharge (ESD) protection. DEC423 devices may also be connected with unshielded cable.

The features provided by DEC423 devices are reliable data communication over increased distances, typically 1000 feet (300 metres) at 9600 baud. See Table 1-2 for maximum-distance guidelines.

**Table 1-2 Maximum Distance Guidelines for DHQ11**

| | Up to 4.8 Kb | 9.6 Kb | 19.2 Kb | 38.4 Kb |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DEC423 to DEC423 | 1000 ft<br>300 m | 1000 ft<br>300 m | 1000 ft<br>300 m | 500 ft<br>150 m |
| DEC423 to EIA-232-D | 250 ft<br>75 m | 200 ft<br>60 m | - | - |

The DEC423 standard is for data-leads-only connections to terminal equipment, and is not suitable for connection to modems or other Wide Area Network equipment. The standard also specifies the use of a 6-pin Modified Modular Jack (MMJ) connector, instead of the much larger 37-pin D-type connector used with RS-423-A.

DEC423 is signal-compatible with the EIA-232-D standard when used for data-leads-only interconnection, in that interconnection between devices using the different standards is possible. However, the restrictions on the speed and distance of EIA-232-D will still apply.

DEC423 should always be used in preference to EIA-232-D for direct terminal connection over extended distances.

**NOTE**

**An H3105 active terminal adapter is necessary when using an EIA-232-D terminal with a DEC 423 interface if the longer cable lengths obtainable with DEC423 are required.**

The recommended cable for DEC423 is BC16E-XX, which is available with 6-pin MMJ plugs at each end, in lengths up to 100 feet. This cable is also available without MMJ connectors in 1000-foot reels, DIGITAL part number H8220. Unshielded four-twisted-pair cable can also be used. This is available in 1000-foot reels, DIGITAL part number H8245-A.

**NOTE**

**DEC423 to EIA-232-D is intended for local communication. In general, communication devices can become non-operational or be damaged if the total cable length exceeds 300 metres (1000 feet) for DEC423 devices. The cable should not be run outside the building, and the low-voltage data wiring must be separated from ac power wiring. The installation or sites may require additional devices to correct problems in communication.**

**NOTE**

**Under ideal conditions, DEC423 devices can drive cables considerably longer than the 1000-foot maximum stated above. However, differences in**

**ground potential, pick-up from mains ac power cabling, and risk of induced interference limit the maximum distance for reliable communications in most practical situations.**

## 1.5 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

### 1.5.1 General

The DHQ11 functional blocks are shown in Figure 1-5. Most of the functions are provided by two chips: the control chip and the OCTART chip.

Q-bus buffering uses six DC021 bidirectional buffers. Serial-line interface buffering uses five octal line receivers (5180) and three octal line transmitters (5170), used for data and modem signals.

A 2k × 8 static RAM chip (2018D-45) provides the memory requirements. Switchpacks provide vector address and module address selection.

### 1.5.2 Main Functions

The main functions of the DHQ11 are:

- Transmission — Single characters (DHV11 mode) or multiple characters (DHU11 mode) can be transmitted using programmed transfers. Characters can also be transferred by DMA.

- Reception — Received characters are deserialized by the OCTART and transferred to a four-character area in the RAM (one such area per line) by the control chip's OCTART sequencer, following an interrupt from the OCTART. The control chip's OCTART sequencer later removes characters from the bottom of the 4-character FIFO, and places them in the 256 × 16 receive FIFO, which can be read by the host.

- Modem Control — The modem control latches are external to the control chip. Data is written to the latches from RAM by the OCTART interface sequencer. The sequencer also samples modem status lines every 10 milliseconds and reports on changes via the STAT register (and also via the receive FIFO, if programmed to do so).

### 1.5.3 Control Chip

The control chip contains the following functional blocks.

- Q-bus Interface — Matches addresses, generates vector addresses, and handles interrupts. It also interfaces the Q-bus signals to other functional blocks

- Data I/O Sequencer — Controls host access to device registers

- OCTART Sequencers — Transfers data between the OCTART and RAM, and handles flow control

- Self-Test/Power-Up Sequencer — This section powers-up the module to a fixed set of initial conditions, such as 9600 baud rate on all lines; it also handles self-test

- DMA Sequencer — Initiates and manages all DMA data transfers to the module

- RAM Arbitrator — Provides RAM and OCTART bus access to the various sequencers.

### 1.5.4 OCTART Chip

This chip contains eight UARTs, which perform parallel-to-serial and serial-to-parallel data conversions. It interfaces with the control chip through eight registers. Four are read-only and four are write-only. An index register is used to access individual lines. The OCTART chip shares the RAM bus with the control chip, and the RAM itself. The OCTART chip also includes:

- Receive and transmit control blocks
- Interrupt logic for interfacing with the control chip
- A 16-output baud-rate generator
- All necessary line-parameter registers
- Diagnostic loopback logic
- Modem status multiplexers.

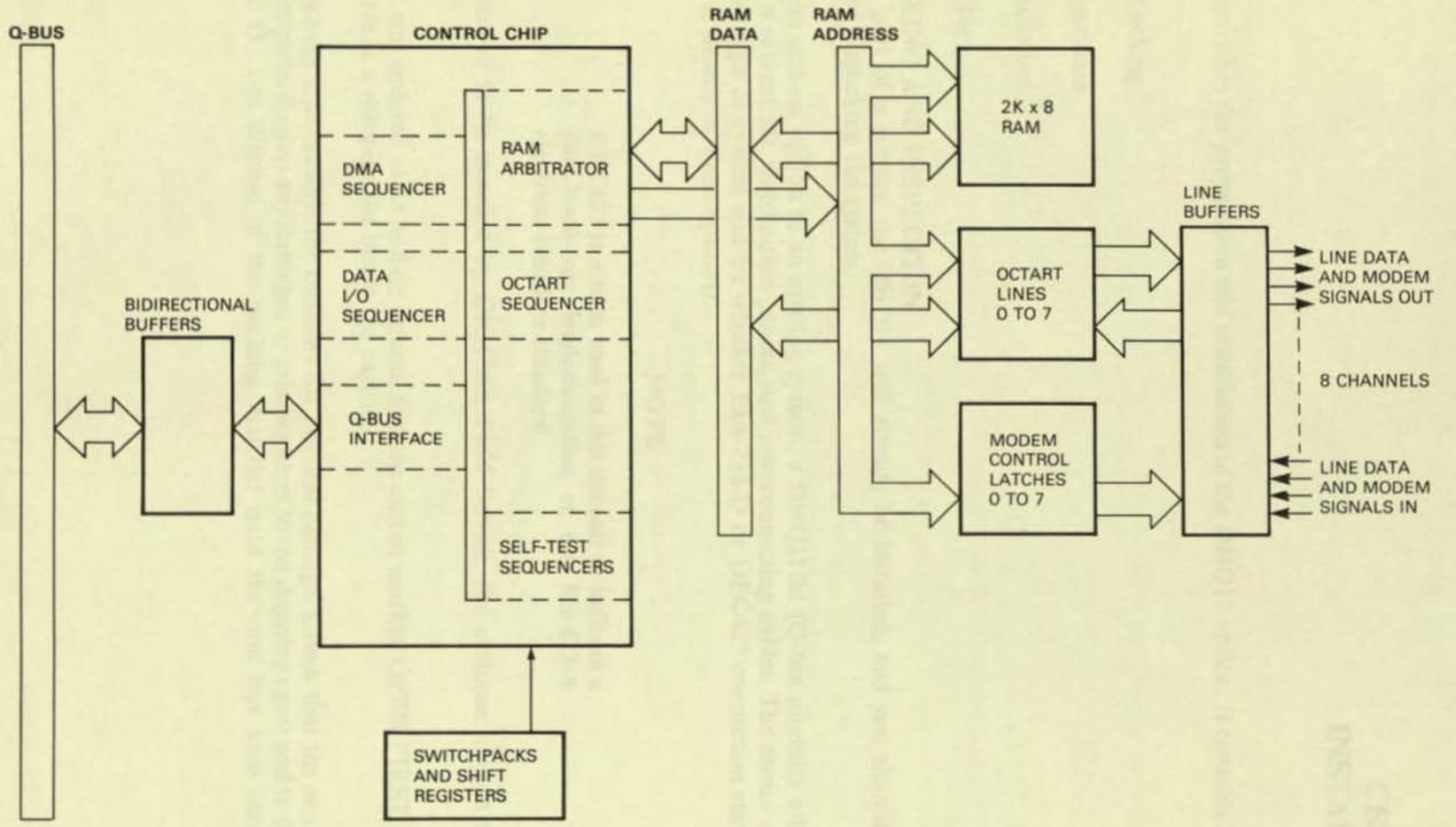



Figure 1-5 DHQ11 Functional Block Diagram

# CHAPTER 2
# INSTALLATION

## 2.1 SCOPE

This chapter describes the preparation and installation of the DHQ11 option. It contains the following sections.

- Unpacking
- Preparation
- Installation
- Testing

## 2.2 UNPACKING AND INSPECTION

If ordered as part of a system, the DHQ11 will already be installed, and you should refer to the instructions for unpacking the system.

If ordered as an add-on option to an existing system, a DHQ11-M (Q-bus module) will be supplied together with a cabinet kit, distribution panels, and interconnecting cables. The choice of cabinet kit depends on the type of system and on whether EIA-232-D or DEC423 connection standards apply (Table 2-1 gives details of these options).

**NOTE**

**DEC423 is a term used in this manual to indicate a data-leads-only implementation of the RS-423-A electrical interface standard.**

If the equipment is to be installed by DIGITAL Field Service, the customer should not open the packages.

If the DHQ11 was ordered as an add-on option, find the carton marked OPEN FIRST and carefully unpack it. There is a shipping list inside the carton.

Undo each package and examine the contents for physical damage. Check that the contents of each package are complete. Report any damaged or missing items to the shipping agent and to the DIGITAL representative. Do not dispose of the packing material until the unit has been installed and is operational.

**Table 2-1 DHQ11 Options**

| DHQ11-M | M3107 module + DHQ11 User Guide (EK-DHQ11-UG) (Base Option) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **EIA-232-D Cabinet Kits** | | | |
| CK-DHQ11-AA | BA123 boxes | | | |
| CK-DHQ11-AB | BA23 boxes | | | |
| CK-DHQ11-AF | H9624 cabinets | | | |
| Contents | | | | |
| H3173A | 4-line 25-way distribution panel | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| BC05L-1K | 40-way ribbon cable, 21 inch | | | 2 |
| BC05L-01 | 40-way ribbon cable, 12 inch | | 2 | |
| BCO5L-03 | 40-way ribbon cable, 36 inch | 2 | | |
| | **DEC423 Cabinet Kits** | | | |
| CK-DHQ11-WA | BA123 boxes | | | |
| CK-DHQ11-WB | BA23 boxes | | | |
| CK-DHQ11-WF | H9624 cabinets | | | |
| Contents | | | | |
| H3100 | Active bulkhead panel | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| BC05L-1K | Ribbon cable — 2 inch | | | 2 |
| BC05L-01 | Ribbon cable — 12 inch | | 2 | |
| BC05L-03 | Ribbon cable — 36 inch | 2 | | |
| 70-22775-1K | Bulkhead power cable | | | 1 |
| 70-22775-01 | Bulkhead power cable | | 1 | |
| 70-22775-03 | Bulkhead power cable | 1 | | |
| H3104 | Cable concentrator | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| BC16C-25 | Multiway cable | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| H3101 | Multiway cable loopback | 1 | 1 | 1 |

## 2.3 PREPARING THE DHQ11 MODULE

Please check that your system has sufficient power and bus load capacity before installing additional modules; see your system manual. Before installing the DHQ11, you must define three parameters by selecting them on the DHQ11 on-board switchpacks. The parameters are:

- Module address
- Interrupt vector
- DHV11 or DHU11 programming mode.

**NOTE**

**Ensure that you are wearing an antistatic wriststrap, part number 29-11762-00.**

### 2.3.1 Address And Vector Assignment

The DHQ11 has a floating device address and vector. It is shipped from the factory with a device address of $17760440_8$ and a vector of $300_8$. These assignments are determined by the floating address and vector rules. The factory settings are only correct if no other floating address option is installed in the system. Otherwise, the proper rules for address assignment must be applied; these are given in Appendix C.

### 2.3.2 Setting The Address Switches

The device address for the DHQ11 is set on the 10-position switchpack E19; the location of this switchpack is shown in Figure 2-1. Switch 1 on the switchpack is used to setup the module in DHU11 or DHV11 programming mode.

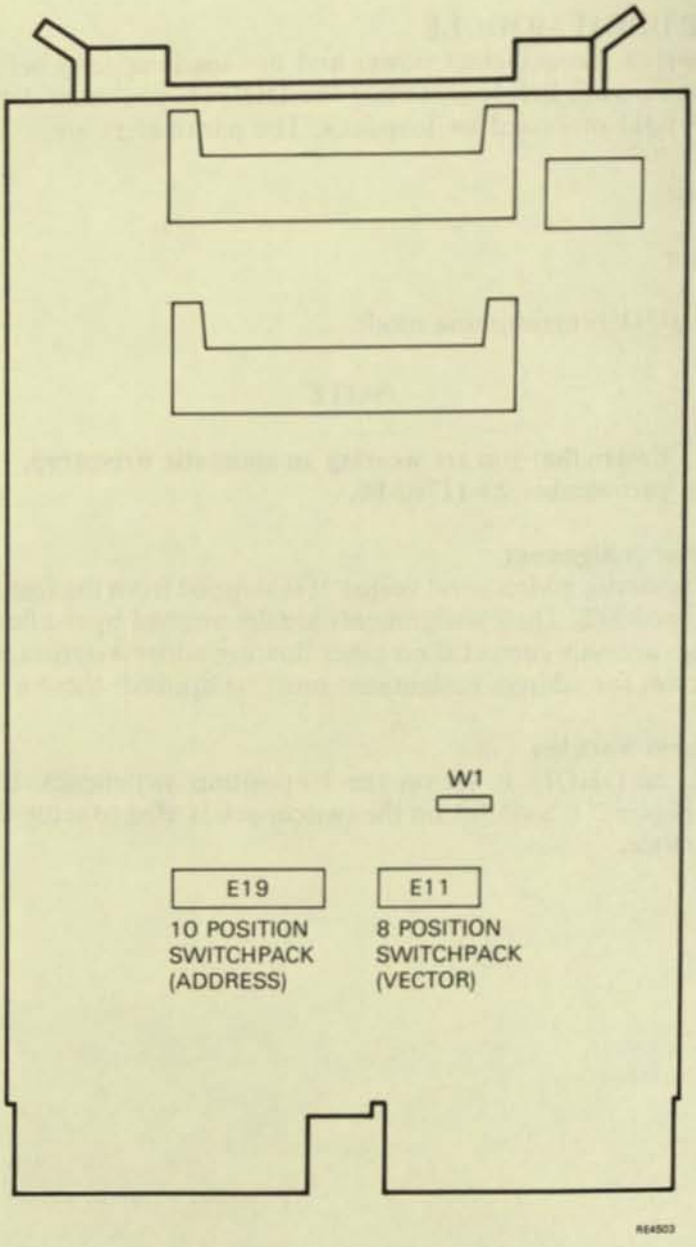



Figure 2-1 Location of Switchpacks

Figure 2-2 shows how to set the device address on the switchpack. The example shown is for the factory-set address of $17760440_8$.

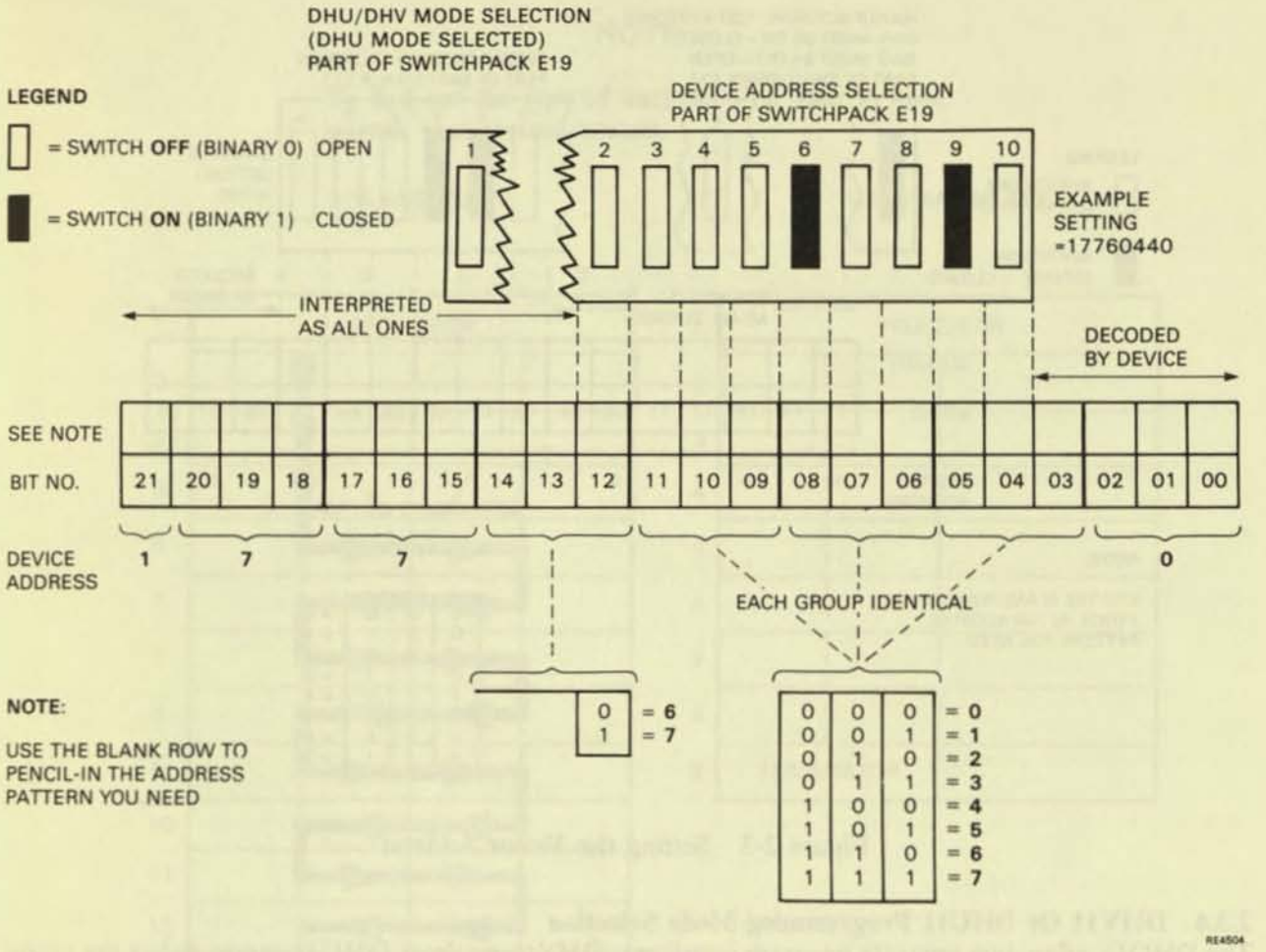



Figure 2-2 Setting the Device Address

### 2.3.3 Setting The Vector Switches

The six high-order bits of the interrupt are set on the eight-position switchpack E11. Figure 2-1 shows the location of this switchpack. Figure 2-3 shows an example of these switches set to the factory setting of 300 (octal). Switches 1 and 2 are used during manufacture, SW-1 must be set ON (closed), and SW-2 must be set OFF (open) for correct operation of the DHQ11.

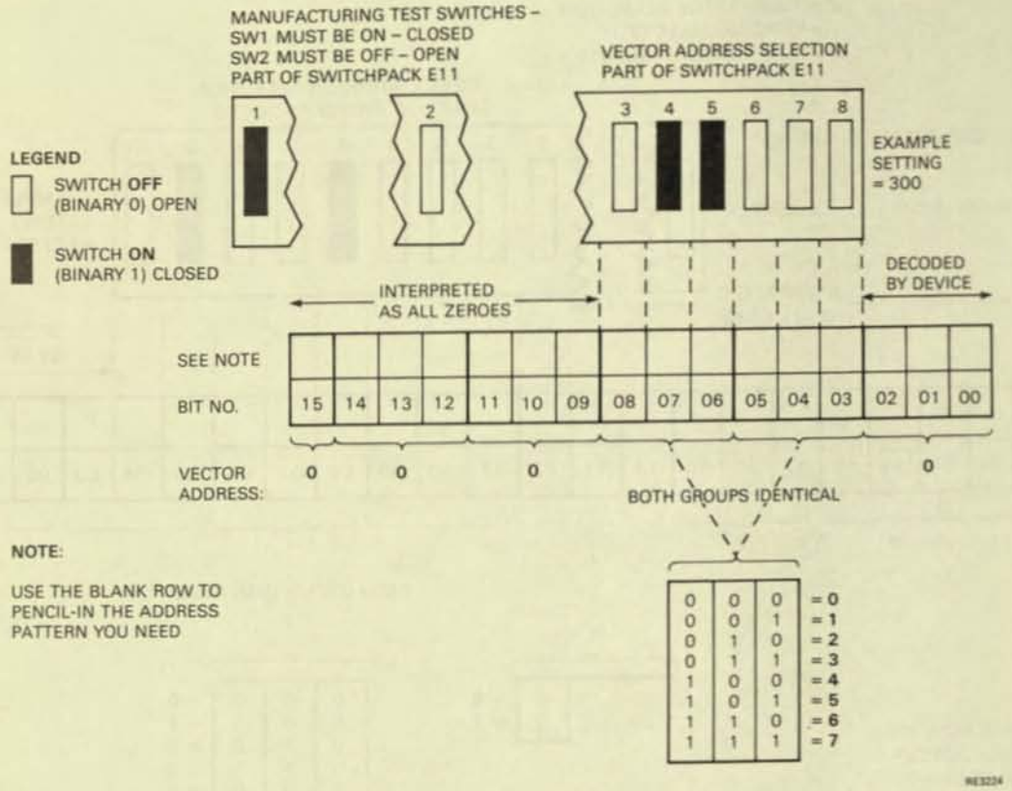



Figure 2-3 Setting the Vector Address

### 2.3.4 DHV11 Or DHU11 Programming Mode Selection

The DHQ11 offers two separate program interfaces, DHV11 mode or DHU11 mode. Select the mode appropriate to the device driver within the system, by setting switch 1 of the on-board switchpack E19 (see Figures 2-1 and 2-2).

Modules prior to revision C1 have a jumper installed (W1), which locks the module in DHV11 mode. See figure 2-1 for the position of the jumper. Remove W1 to enable selection of DHV11 or DHU11 mode by the switch.

**NOTE**

**DHU11 programming mode generally gives better performance, because of reduced CPU overhead in transferring characters to and from the device. The Software Product Description states whether the operating system supports DHU11 programming mode.**

## 2.4 BUS CONTINUITY

Bus grant continuity jumper cards (M9047) are used in vacant backplane slots to provide bus continuity (see Figure 2-4).

**NOTE**

**To find out the type of backplane on your system, consult your system manual.**

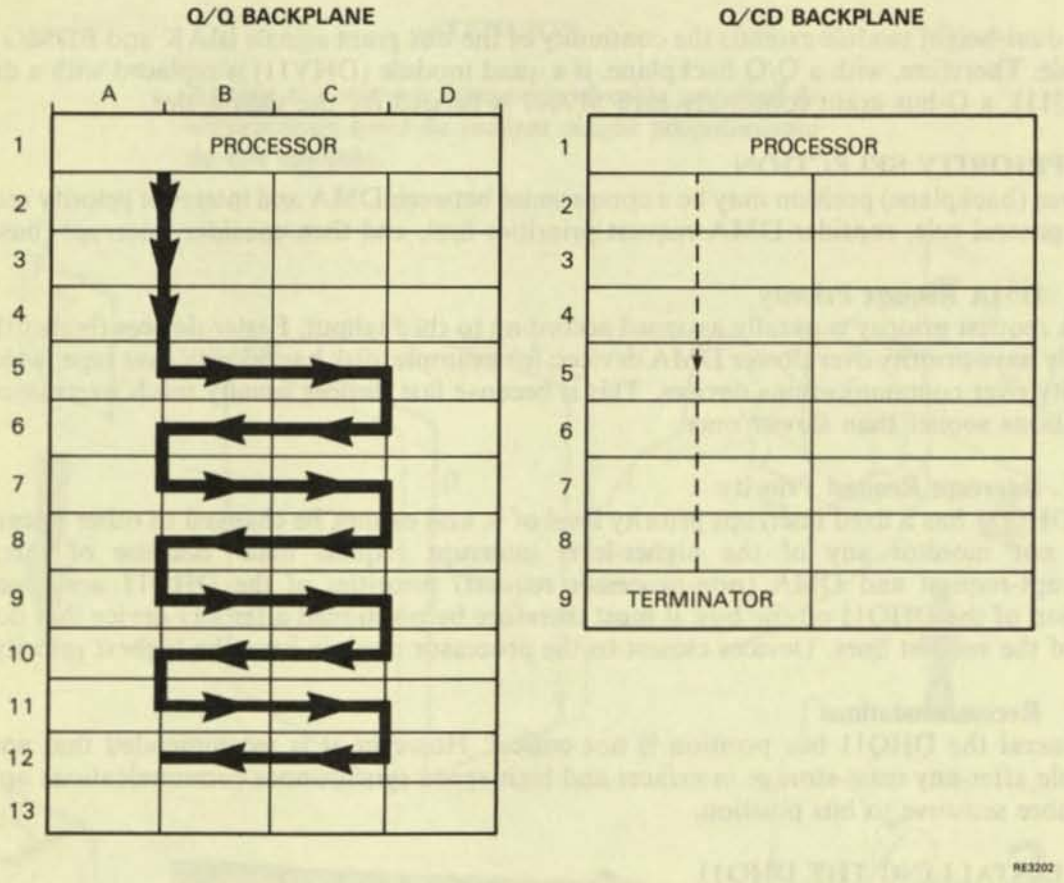



Figure 2-4 Bus Grant Continuity

### 2.4.1 Bus Grant Continuity Jumpers

Backplanes suitable for DHQ11 fall into two groups.

Q/CD — Q-bus on A and B connectors, user-defined signals on C and D

Q/Q — Q-bus on A and B, and C and D connectors.

In Q/CD backplanes, bus grant signals pass through each installed module via the A and C connectors of each bus slot.

Q/Q backplanes are designed so that two dual-height options can be installed in a quad-height bus slot. The Q-bus lines are routed as follows.

1. AB, first slot
2. CD, first slot

3. CD, second slot

4. AB, second slot

and so on.

Each dual-height module extends the continuity of the bus grant signals BIAK and BDMG to the next module. Therefore, with a Q/Q backplane, if a quad module (DHV11) is replaced with a dual module (DHQ11), a Q-bus grant continuity card M9047 is needed for the vacant slot.

## 2.5 PRIORITY SELECTION

The bus (backplane) position may be a compromise between DMA and interrupt priority requirements. As a general rule, consider DMA request priorities first, and then consider interrupt (bus) requests.

### 2.5.1 DMA Request Priority

DMA request priority is usually assigned according to throughput. Faster devices (higher throughput) usually have priority over slower DMA devices; for example, disk has priority over tape, which itself has priority over communications devices. This is because fast devices usually reach overrun or underrun conditions sooner than slower ones.

### 2.5.2 Interrupt Request Priority

The DHQ11 has a fixed interrupt priority level of 4, and cannot be changed to other priority levels. It does not monitor any of the higher-level interrupt request lines. Because of this, both the interrupt-request and DMA (non-processor request) priorities of the DHQ11 are selected by the position of the DHQ11 on the bus; it must therefore be positioned after any device that does monitor any of the request lines. Devices closest to the processor module have the highest priority.

### 2.5.3 Recommendations

In general the DHQ11 bus position is not critical. However, it is recommended that you place the module after any mass-storage interfaces and high-speed synchronous communications options; these are more sensitive to bus position.

## 2.6 INSTALLING THE DHQ11

Once you have defined the backplane position for the DHQ11, you can begin to install the DHQ11 module.

### 2.6.1 Installing The M3107 Module

**WARNING**

**Shut off the system power and disconnect the main system power cord before performing any procedure in this chapter.**

**ATTENTION**

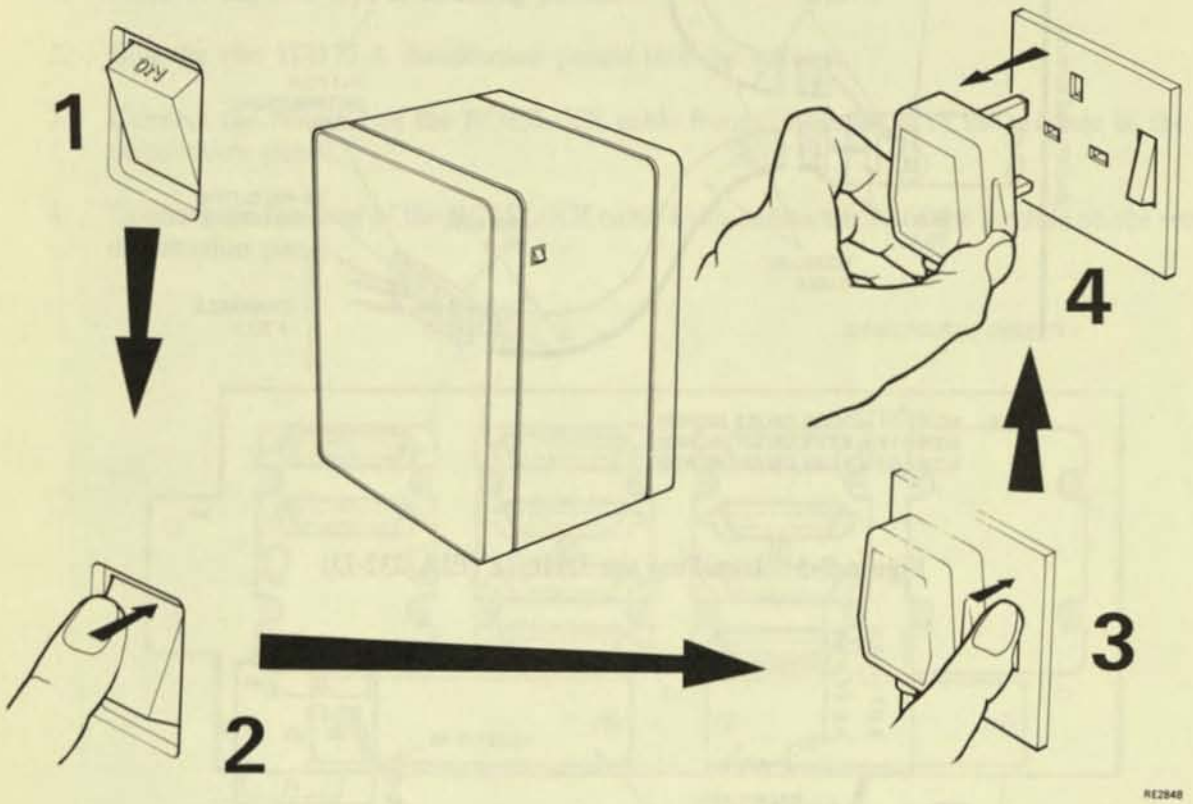
**Avant d'effectuer l'une des procédures de ce chapitre, mettez le système hors tension et débranchez le cordon d'alimentation.**

**VORSICHT!**

**Schalten Sie das System ab, und ziehen Sie das Netzkabel, bevor Sie die in diesem Kapitel beschriebenen Anweisungen ausführen.**

**ATENCION**

**Apague el sistema y desconecte el cable principal de alimentación antes de realizar ningún procedimiento de este capítulo.**




1. Connect the BC05L cables to J1 and J2. Figure 2-5 for EIA-232-D installations and Figure 2-6 for DEC423 installations show how the parts of the option connect together.

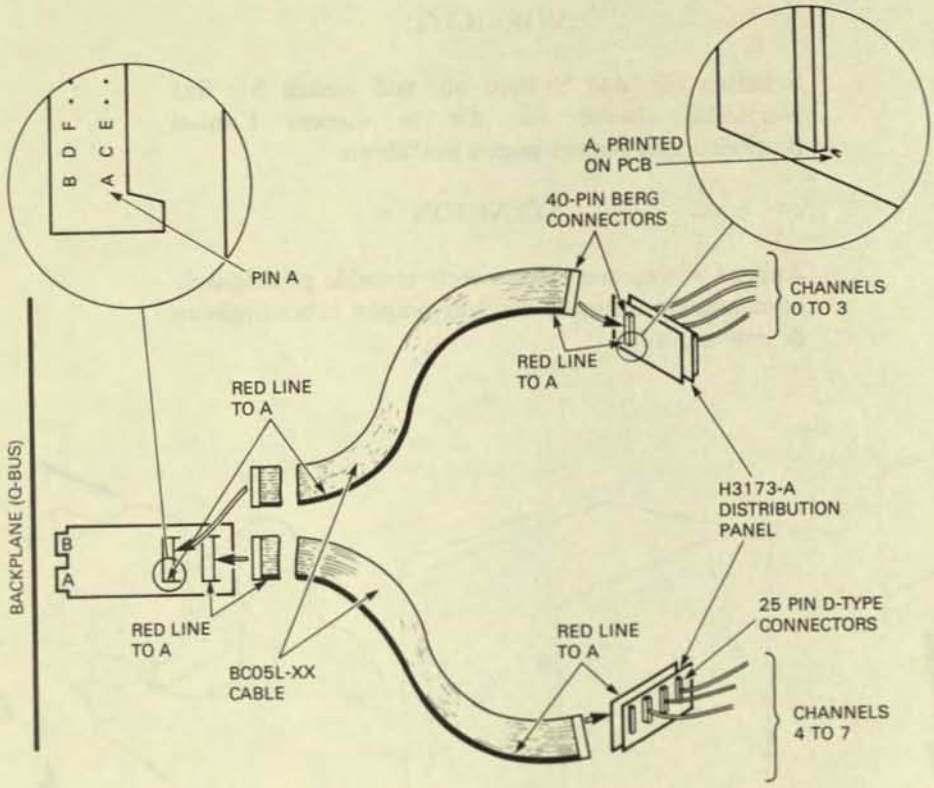
2. Install the module in its correct backplane position as previously defined.

**NOTE**

**Be careful not to snag module components on the card guides or adjacent modules.**

3. Check that bus continuity exists. If necessary, install bus grant continuity cards.

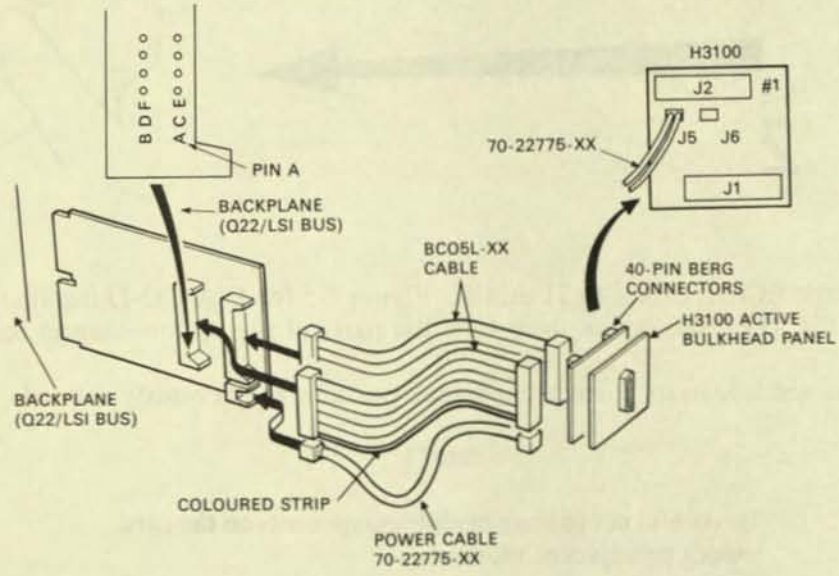
4. Do not connect the cables to the bulkhead panels.




NOTE: BC05L-01 = 30.48 CM (12 INCHES)
BC05L-1K = 53.34 CM (21 INCHES)
BC05L-03 = 91.44 CM (36 INCHES)

RE9

Figure 2-5 Installing the DHQ11 (EIA-232-D)




NOTE: BC05L-01 = 30cm (12 INCHES)
BC05L-1K = 53cm (21 INCHES)
BC05L-03 = 92cm (36 INCHES)

RE3203

Figure 2-6 Installing the DHQ11 (DEC423)

### 2.6.2 Distribution Panels

The rear I/O distribution panel has six cutouts: two type-A cutouts and four type-B cutouts. In addition, a removable bracket between the third and fourth cutout allows you to install three more type-A insert panels by mounting an adapter plate. Figure 2-7 shows typical type-A and type-B insert panels, and the adapter plate.

### 2.6.3 Installing The EIA-232-D Distribution Panels

The DHQ11 has two type-B distribution panels. Figure 2-7 shows how these are installed in a BA23 box. Installation in BA123 and H9642 cabinets is similar.

To fit the distribution panels:

1. Remove the two type-B blanking panels.
2. Bolt the two H3173-A distribution panels into the cutouts.
3. Connect the free end of the BC05L-XX cable from connector J1 of the module to the first distribution panel.
4. Connect the free end of the BC05L-XX cable from connector J2 of the module to the second distribution panel.

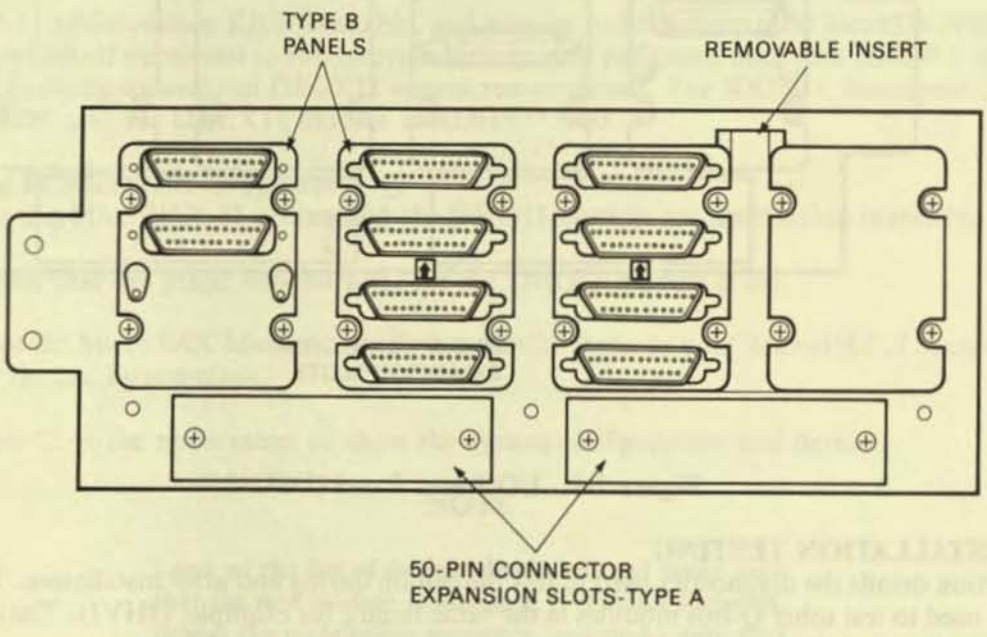



Figure 2-7 I/O Insert Panels and Adapter Plate (EIA-232-D)

### 2.6.4 Installing The DEC423 Distribution Panels

The DHQ11 has one type-B distribution panel. Figure 2-8 shows how this is installed in a BA23 box. Installation in BA123 and H9642 cabinets is similar.

To fit the distribution panels:

1. Remove a type-B blanking panel.
2. Bolt the H3100 active distribution panel into the cutout.
3. Connect the free end of the BC05L-XX cable from connector J1 of the module to the upper (J2) connector on the distribution panel.
4. Connect the free end of the BC05L-XX cable from connector J2 of the module to the lower (J1) connector on the distribution panel.
5. Connect the free end of the power cable (70-22775-XX) to the left-hand power connector (J5) on the distribution panel.

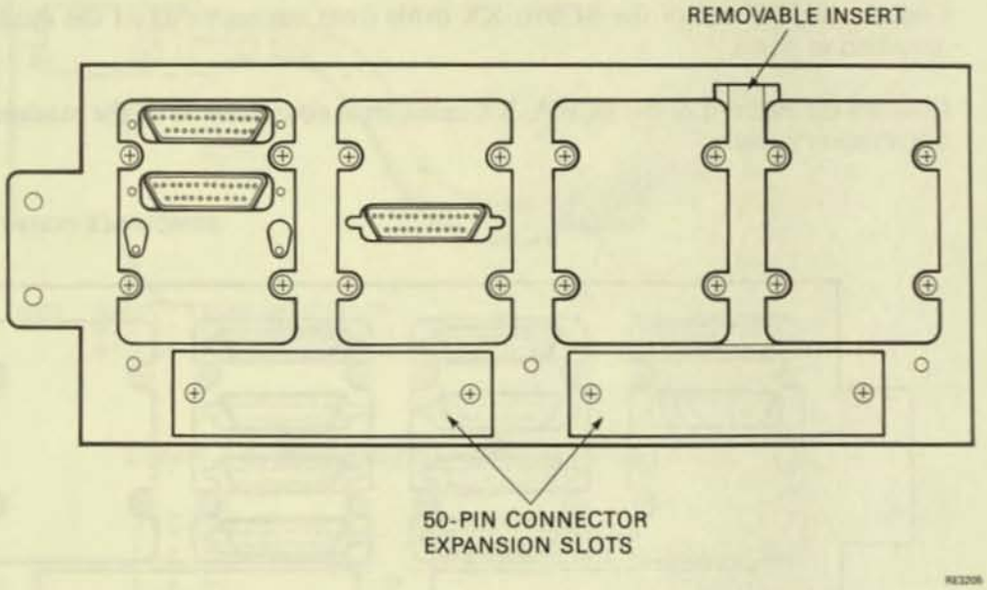



Figure 2-8 I/O Insert Panel (DEC423)

## 2.7 INSTALLATION TESTING

This section details the diagnostics used to test the option during and after installation. The diagnostics are also used to test other Q-bus modules in the same family, for example, DHV11. The diagnostics will automatically 'size' the option to determine which one is being tested.

Both MicroPDP-11 and MicroVAX II diagnostics are described. After successful completion of the appropriate system test, the DHQ11 may be connected to external equipment. Further information on the diagnostics is given in Chapter 4.

### 2.7.1 Installation Tests On MicroPDP-11 Systems

To verify that the MicroPDP-11 system and the DHQ11 module are functioning correctly:

1. Switch on the system.

2. After 2 seconds, check that the green self-test LED on the DHQ11 module is on. If it does not come on, call DIGITAL Field Service.

3. Boot the Micro-11 Customer Diagnostic media. Refer to your *MicroPDP-11 System Manual* for further information.

4. Type 'I' at the main menu to allow the diagnostics to identify the new module, and add it to the configuration file.

**NOTE**

**Look at the list of devices displayed, and make sure that the new module is included. If it is not included, repeat the installation sequence, and make sure that the module switches have been set correctly.**

5. Type 'T' at the main menu to run the system tests. These should complete without error; if an error occurs, call DIGITAL Field Service.

A MicroPDP-11 Maintenance Kit is available, and may be ordered from your local DIGITAL office. This kit allows trained personnel to run individual diagnostic programs under the XXDP+ diagnostic monitor, and to configure and run DECX11 system test programs. The XXDP+ functional diagnostic is VHQA**.BIN, and the DECX11 module is XDHV**.OBJ.

### 2.7.2 Testing In MicroVAX II Systems

To verify that the MicroVAX II system and the DHQ11 module are functioning correctly:

1. Check that the green self-test LED on the DHQ11 module is on.

2. Boot the MicroVAX Maintenance System media. Refer to your *MicroVAX II System Manual* for further information.

3. Type '2' at the main menu to show the system configuration and devices.

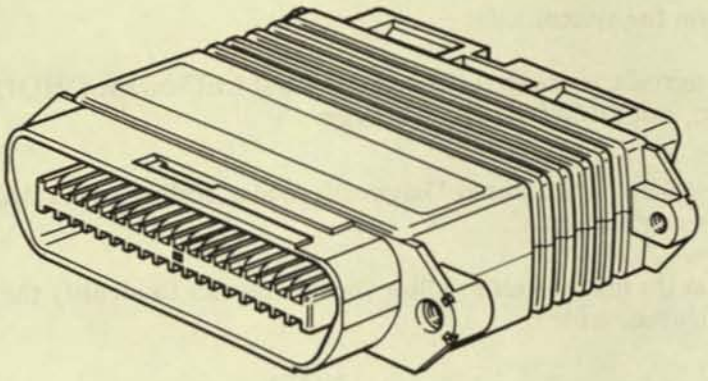
**NOTE**

**Look at the list of devices displayed, and make sure that the new module is included. If it is not included, repeat the installation sequence, and make sure that the module switches have been set correctly.**

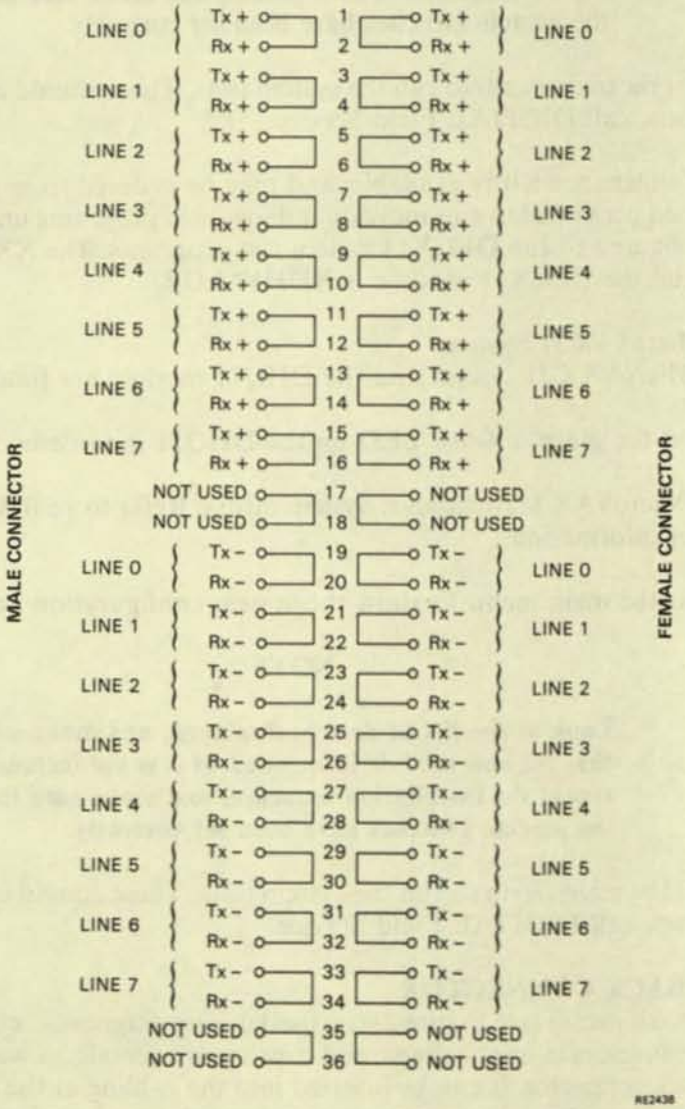
4. Type 'I' at the main menu to run the system tests. These should complete without error; if an error occurs, call DIGITAL Field Service.

## 2.8 H3101 LOOPBACK CONNECTOR

The H3101 loopback connector (see Figure 2-9) is used during diagnostic tests for DEC423 installations. It is two loopback connectors in one package, and consists of a female 36-way loopback connector and a male 36-way loopback connector. It can be inserted into the cabling at the distribution panel, or at the cable concentrator. To test the cables, type characters at the keyboard and make sure that they are echoed to the screen (refer to Chapter 4).



RE2438




RE2438

Figure 2-9 H3101 Loopback Connector

## 2.9 CABLES AND CONNECTORS — EIA-232-D

### 2.9.1 Distribution Panel

Each H3173-A distribution panel adapts one of the DHQ11 Berg connectors to four subminiature D-type EIA-232-D connectors. Noise filtering is provided on each pin of the EIA-232-D connectors. This reduces electromagnetic radiation from the cables and also provides the logic with some protection against static discharge.

Figure 2-13 shows the circuit of the H3173-A. There is no CCITT equivalent of EIA circuit AA (Protective Ground). To implement this circuit, a ground strap must be installed between the H3173-A and the system cabinet. The 0-ohm link W1 (not installed at the factory) can then be installed to connect this circuit, and removed to disconnect it, as needed.

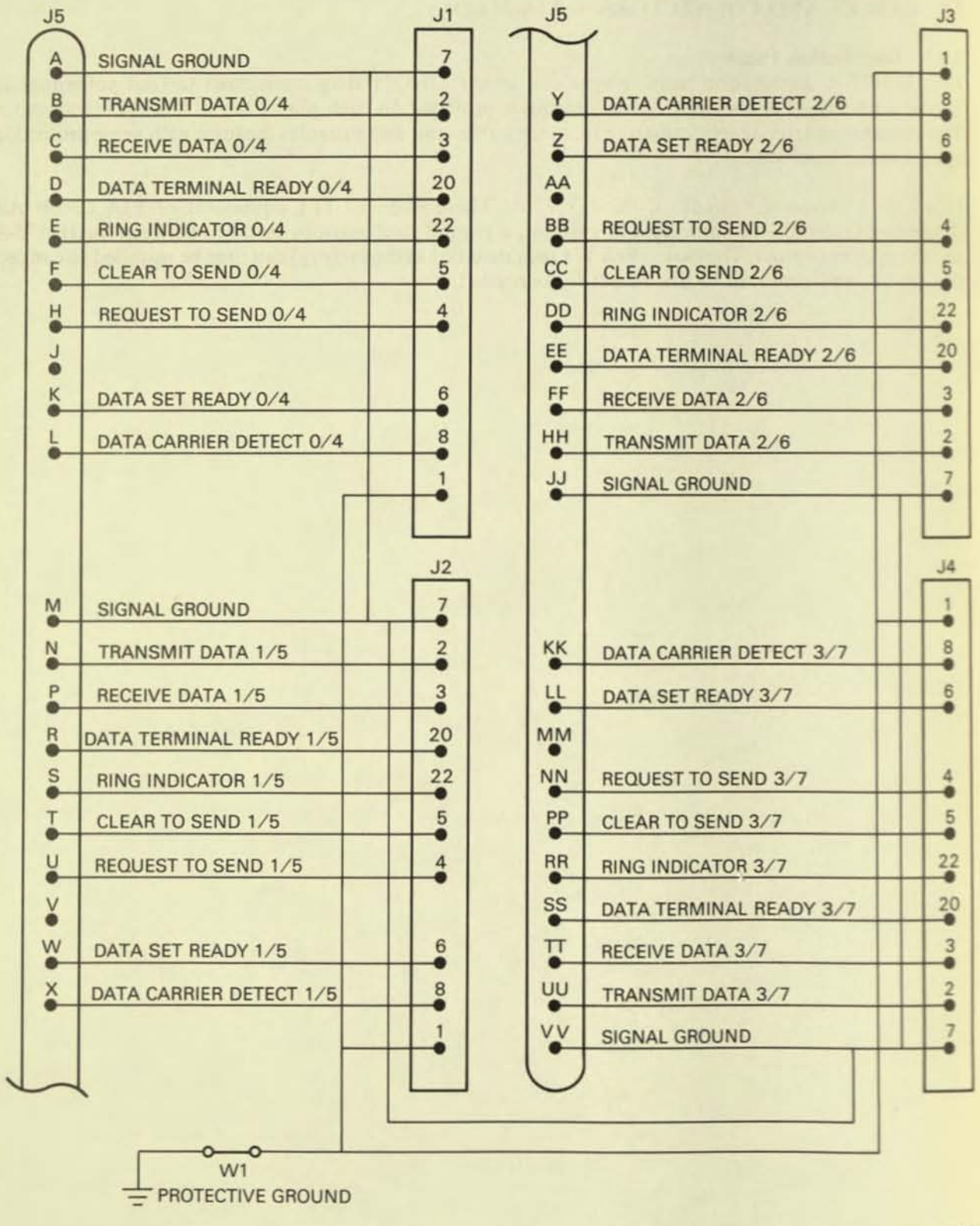



Figure 2-10 H3173-A Circuit Diagram

Table 2-2 is for two distribution panels. The numbers within parentheses apply to channels 4 to 7.

**Table 2-2 H3173-A Connections**

| Signal | Name | Circuit No. | J5 Pin No. |
|---|---|---|---|
| SIG GND 0(4) | | 102 | 1-A (2-A) |
| TXD0(4) | Transmitted Data | 103 | 1-B (2-B) |
| RXD0(4) | Received Data | 104 | 1-C (2-C) |
| DTR0(4) | Data Terminal Ready | 108/2 | 1-D (2-D) |
| RI0(4) | Ringing Indicator | 125 | 1-E (2-E) |
| CTS0(4) | Clear to Send | 106 | 1-F (2-F) |
| RTS0(4) | Request to Send | 105 | 1-H (2-H) |
| DSR0(4) | Data Set Ready | 107 | 1-K (2-K) |
| DCD0(4) | Data Carrier Detected | 109 | 1-L (2-L) |
| SIG GND 1(5) | | 102 | 1-M (2-M) |
| TXD1(5) | | 103 | 1-N (2-N) |
| RXD1(5) | | 104 | 1-P (2-P) |
| DTR1(5) | | 108/2 | 1-R (2-R) |
| RI1(5) | | 125 | 1-S (2-S) |
| CTS1(5) | | 106 | 1-T (2-T) |
| RTS1(5) | | 105 | 1-U (2-U) |
| DSR1(5) | | 107 | 1-W (2-W) |
| DCD1(5) | | 109 | 1-X (2-X) |
| DCD2(6) | | 109 | 1-Y (2-Y) |
| DSR2(6) | | 107 | 1-Z (2-Z) |
| RTS2(6) | | 105 | 1-BB (2-BB) |
| CTS2(6) | | 106 | 1-CC (2-CC) |
| RI2(6) | | 125 | 1-DD (2-DD) |
| DTR2(6) | | 108/2 | 1-EE (2-EE) |
| RXD2(6) | | 104 | 1-FF (2-FF) |
| TXD2(6) | | 103 | 1-HH (2-HH) |
| SIG GND 2(6) | | 102 | 1-JJ (2-JJ) |
| DCD3(7) | | 109 | 1-KK (2-KK) |
| DSR3(7) | | 107 | 1-LL (2-LL) |
| RTS3(7) | | 105 | 1-NN (2-NN) |
| CTS3(7) | | 106 | 1-PP (2-PP) |
| RI3(7) | | 125 | 1-RR (2-RR) |
| DTR3(7) | | 108/2 | 1-SS (2-SS) |
| RXD3(7) | | 104 | 1-TT (2-TT) |
| TXD3(7) | | 103 | 1-UU (2-UU) |
| SIG GND 3(7) | | 102 | 1-VV (2-VV) |

The following examples show how to use Table 2-2.

Signal TXD0 is the transmitted data line for channel 0; the CCITT circuit number is 103 and it is connected to J5 pin B on the first H3173-A for channels 0 to 3.

Signal TXD4 is the transmitted data line for channel 4; the CCITT circuit number is 103 and it is connected to J5 pin B on the second H3173-A for channels 4 to 7.

### 2.9.2 Null Modem Cables

Null modem cables are used for local EIA-232-D connection, when a modem is not used. Because of Federal Communications Commission (FCC) regulations, the cable specifications for the United States and Canada are different from those for non-FCC countries. Other countries may also have similar electromagnetic interference (EMI) control regulations. EMC/RFI shielded cabinets are now available for systems which conform to FCC requirements.

Recommended null modem cables are as follows.

1. BC22D (for EMC/RFI shielded cabinets)

   - Rounded 6-conductor fully shielded cable to FCC specification
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector moulded on each end
   - Lengths available:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| BC22D-10 | 3.1 m | (10 ft) |
| BC22D-25 | 7.6 m | (25 ft) |
| BC22D-35 | 10.7 m | (35 ft) |
| BC22D-50 | 15.2 m | (50 ft) |
| BC22D-75 | 22.9 m | (75 ft) |
| BC22D-A0 | 30.5 m | (100 ft) |
| BC22D-B5 | 76.2 m | (250 ft) |

2. BC03M

   - Round 6-conductor (three twisted pairs), each pair shielded
   - Cables over 30.5 m (100 ft) have a 25-pin subminiature D-type female connector at one end. The other end is unterminated, for passing through the conduit
   - Cables 30.5 m (100 ft) and less have a similar connector at each end
   - Lengths available:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| BC03M-25 | 7.6 m | (25 ft) |
| BC03M-A0 | 30.5 m | (100 ft) |
| BC03M-B5 | 76.2 m | (250 ft) |
| BC03M-E0 | 152.4 m | (500 ft) |
| BC03M-L0 | 304.8 m | (1000 ft) |

3. BC22A

   - Round 6-conductor cable
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector moulded at each end

- Lengths available:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| BC22A-10 | 3.1 m | (10 ft) |
| BC22A-25 | 7.6 m | (25 ft) |

Cables of groups 1, 2, and 3 are all connected as in Figure 2-11. The cables are not polarized. They can be connected either way round.

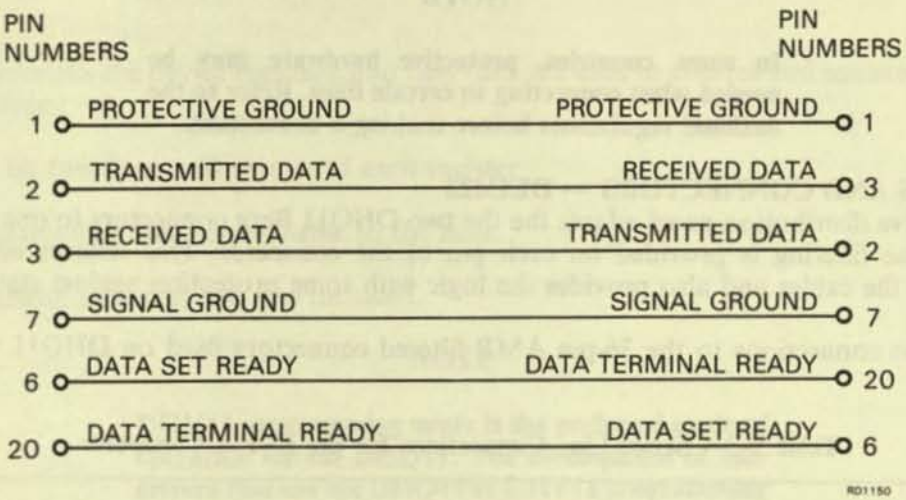



Figure 2-11 Null Modem Cable Connections

### 2.9.3 Full Modem Cables

Recommended full modem cables are as follows:

1. BC22F (for EMC/RFI-shielded cabinets)

   - Rounded 25-conductor fully shielded cable
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type female connector on one end, male connector on the other
   - Lengths available:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| BC22F-10 | 3.1 m | (10 ft) |
| BC22F-25 | 7.6 m | (25 ft) |
| BC22F-35 | 10.7 m | (35 ft) |
| BC22F-50 | 15.2 m | (50 ft) |
| BC22F-75 | 22.9 m | (75 ft) |

2. BC05D

   - Round 25-conductor cable
   - Subminiature 25-pin D-type, female connector on one end, male connector on the other

- Lengths available:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| BC05D-10 | 3.1 m | (10 ft) |
| BC05D-25 | 7.6 m | (25 ft) |
| BC05D-50 | 15.2 m | (50 ft) |
| BC05D-60 | 18.6 m | (60 ft) |
| BC05D-A0 | 30.5 m | (100 ft) |

**NOTE**

**In some countries, protective hardware may be needed when connecting to certain lines. Refer to the national regulations before making a connection.**

## 2.10 CABLES AND CONNECTORS — DEC423

The H3100 active distribution panel adapts the the two DHQ11 Berg connectors to one 36-way AMP connector. Noise filtering is provided on each pin of the connector. This reduces electromagnetic radiation from the cables and also provides the logic with some protection against static discharge.

Table 2-3 shows connections to the 36-pin AMP filtered connectors used on DHQ11 with DEC423 installations.

**Table 2-3 Serial-Line Connections for the 36-Pin Connector**

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Blu/Wht | Line 0 | Transmit + | 19 | Wht/Blu | Line 0 | Transmit – |
| 2 | Org/Wht | Line 0 | Receive + | 20 | Wht/Org | Line 0 | Receive – |
| 3 | Grn/Wht | Line 1 | Transmit + | 21 | Wht/Grn | Line 1 | Transmit – |
| 4 | Brn/Wht | Line 1 | Receive + | 22 | Wht/Brn | Line 1 | Receive – |
| 5 | Slt/Wht | Line 2 | Transmit + | 23 | Wht/Slt | Line 2 | Transmit – |
| 6 | Blu/Red | Line 2 | Receive + | 24 | Red/Blu | Line 2 | Receive – |
| 7 | Org/Red | Line 3 | Transmit + | 25 | Red/Org | Line 3 | Transmit – |
| 8 | Grn/Red | Line 3 | Receive + | 26 | Red/Grn | Line 3 | Receive – |
| 9 | Brn/Red | Line 4 | Transmit + | 27 | Red/Brn | Line 4 | Transmit – |
| 10 | Slt/Red | Line 4 | Receive + | 28 | Red/Slt | Line 4 | Receive – |
| 11 | Blu/Blk | Line 5 | Transmit + | 29 | Blk/Blu | Line 5 | Transmit – |
| 12 | Org/Blk | Line 5 | Receive + | 30 | Blk/Org | Line 5 | Receive – |
| 13 | Grn/Blk | Line 6 | Transmit + | 31 | Blk/Grn | Line 6 | Transmit – |
| 14 | Brn/Blk | Line 6 | Receive + | 32 | Blk/Brn | Line 6 | Receive – |
| 15 | Slt/Blk | Line 7 | Transmit + | 33 | Blk/Slt | Line 7 | Transmit – |
| 16 | Blu/Yel | Line 7 | Receive + | 34 | Yel/Blu | Line 7 | Receive – |
| 17 | Org/Yel | Spare | | 35 | Yel/Org | Spare | |
| 18 | Grn/Yel | Spare | | 36 | Yel/Grn | Spare | |

# CHAPTER 3
# PROGRAMMING

## 3.1 SCOPE

This chapter describes the device registers, and how they are used to control and monitor the DHQ11. The chapter covers:

- The bit functions and format of each register
- Programming features available to the host.

Some programming examples are also included.

**NOTE**

**DHU11 programming mode is the preferred mode of operation for the DHQ11. The development of user drivers that use the DHQ11 in DHV11 programming mode is not recommended.**

## 3.2 REGISTERS

The host system controls and monitors the DHQ11 module through several Q-bus-addressable registers.

Command words or bytes written to the registers are interpreted and executed by the module. Status reports and data are also transferred through the registers.

### 3.2.1 Register Access

The DHQ11 registers occupy 8 words (16 bytes) of Q-bus memory-mapped I/O space.

The base physical address of the eight DHQ11 registers is selected by using switches on the module. The address selected is in the peripheral I/O space. The term 'base' means the lowest I/O address on the module; that is to say, when the four low-order address bits = 0.

Table 3-1 and 3-2 list the DHQ11 registers and their addresses in DHV11 and DHU11 mode. The suffix (I) means that there are eight of these registers, one for each channel. When an (I) register is accessed, the contents of CSR<3:0> select which of the eight registers at that address is actually accessed.

**NOTE**

**CSR<3:0> allows up to 16 channels to be addressed. However, only the lower eight channels are used. Therefore CSR bit 3 must always be 0.**

**Table 3-1 DHQ11 Registers in DHV11 Mode**

| Register | | Address (Octal) | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Control and Status Register | (CSR) | Base | Read/Write |
| Receive Buffer | (RBUF) | Base+2 | Read Only |
| Transmit Character | (TXCHAR) | Base+2(I) | Write Only |
| Line-Parameter Register | (LPR) | Base+4(I) | Read/Write |
| Line Status | (STAT) | Base+6(I) | Read Only |
| Line Control | (LNCTRL) | Base+10(I) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Address 1 | (TBUFFAD1) | Base+12(I) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Address 2 | (TBUFFAD2) | Base+14(I) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Count | (TBUFFCT) | Base+16(I) | Read/Write |

**Table 3-2 DHQ11 Registers in DHU11 Mode**

| Register | | Address (Octal) | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Control and Status Register | (CSR) | Base | Read/Write |
| Receive Buffer | (RBUFF) | Base+2 | Read |
| Receive Timer* | (RXTIMER) | Base+2 | Write (byte) |
| Line-Parameter Register | (LPR) | Base+4(I) | Read/Write |
| FIFO Data | (FIFODATA) | Base+6(I) | Write |
| FIFO Size | (FIFOSIZE) | Base+6(I) | Read (byte) |
| Line Status | (STAT) | Base+7(I) | Read (byte) |
| Line Control | (LNCTRL) | Base+10(I) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Address 1 | (TBUFFAD1) | Base+12(I) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Address 2 | (TBUFFAD2) | Base+14(I) | Read/Write |
| Transmit Buffer Count | (TBUFFCT) | Base+16(I) | Read/Write |

* Only accessible when CSR3:0> = 0000

**NOTE**

**It is possible to write to the line-status register. However, the host should not write to this register.**

There are eight line-parameter registers, only one of which is accessed at any one time. The register which is accessed is associated with the line selected using CSR<3:0>.

For example, to read the line-parameter register of channel 3, the following I/O commands would be executed:

```
MOVB #CHAN,#BASE      ;WRITE CHANNEL NUMBER (SEE BELOW) TO CSR
MOVB #BASE+4,R0       ;READ THE LINE PARAMETER REGISTER
```

In the above example, CHAN = 0*er*00011(binary)

Where:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *e* | = | the RXIE bit of the CSR |
| *r* | = | the MASTER.RESET bit (which would be 0) |
| 0011 | = | channel number 3 |

**NOTE**

1. **Not all register bits are used. In a write action, all unused bits must be written as 0s. In a read action, unused bits are undefined.**

2. **Read-modify-write instructions may be used on all registers except CSR and RBUF.**

### 3.2.2 Register Bit Definitions

Registers which are modified by reset sequences are coded as shown in Figure 3-1.

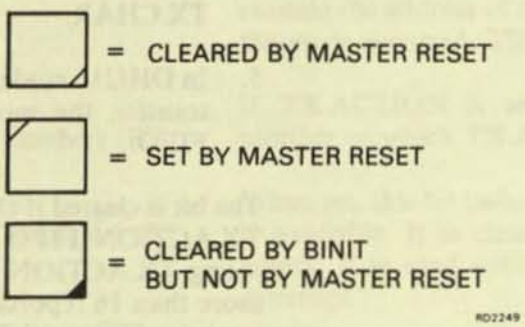
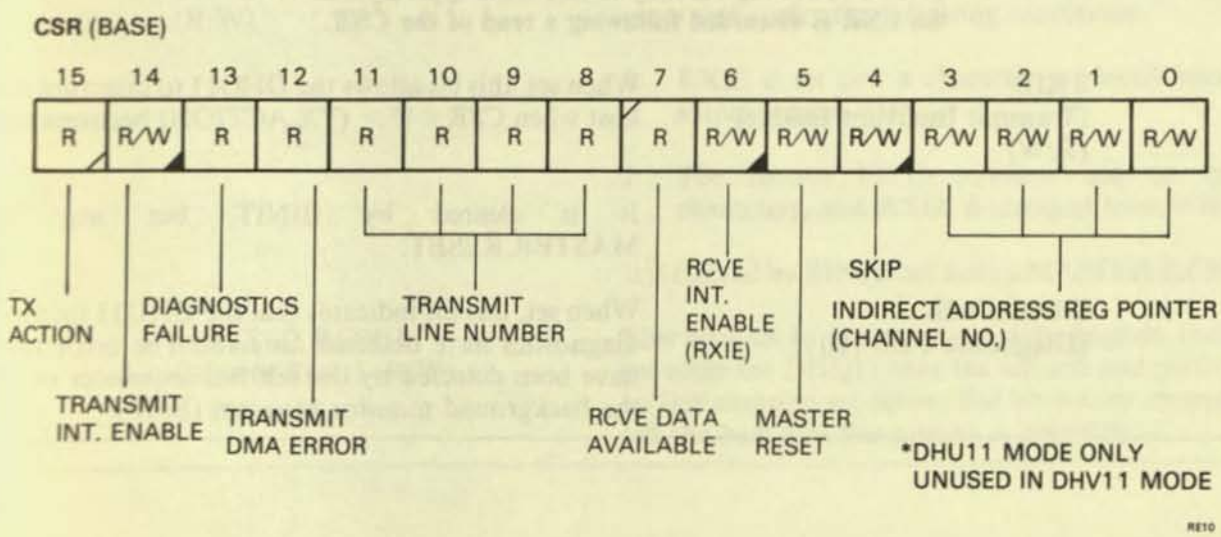



Figure 3-1 Register Coding

#### 3.2.2.1 Control And Status Register (CSR) –



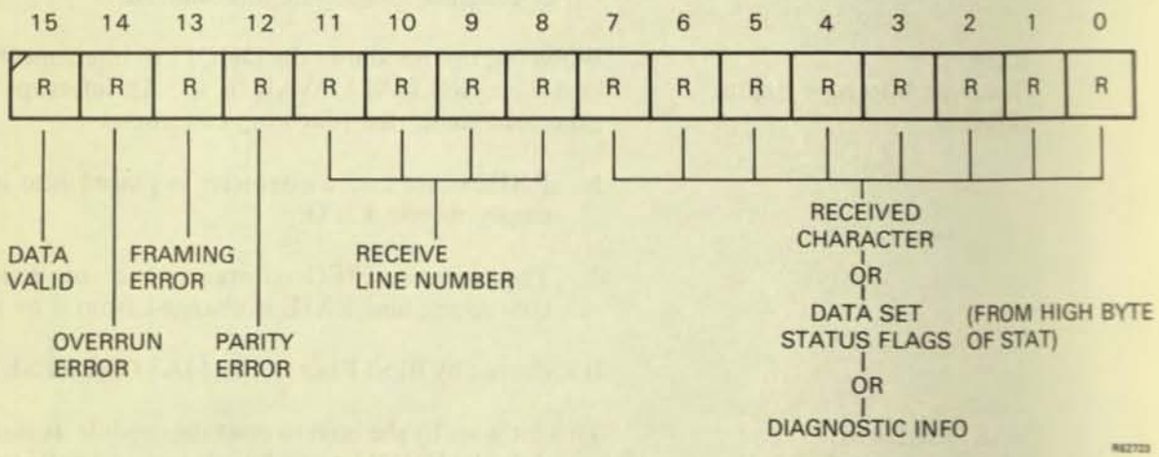
| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | TX.ACTION<br>(Transmitter Action) (R) | This bit is set by the DHQ11 when:<br><br>1. The last character of a DMA buffer has left the OCTART.<br><br>2. A DMA transfer has been aborted.<br><br>3. A DMA transfer has been terminated by the DHQ11 because non-existent memory has been addressed, or because of a host memory parity error.<br><br>4. In DHV11 mode: a single-character programmed output has been accepted; that is to say, the character has been taken from TX.CHAR.<br><br>5. In DHU11 mode, following a programmed data transfer, the module has emptied a transmit FIFO.<br><br>The bit is cleared if the host reads the CSR after the TX.ACTION FIFO has become empty. To avoid losing TX.ACTION reports, the host must not let more than 16 reports accumulate. It is advisable to read the CSR until TX.ACTION becomes clear.<br><br>**NOTE**<br><br>**TX.ACTION reports may be lost if the upper byte of the CSR is discarded following a read of the CSR.** |
| 14 | TXIE<br>(Transmit Interrupt Enable)<br>(R/W) | When set, this bit allows the DHQ11 to interrupt the host when CSR<15> (TX.ACTION) becomes set.<br><br>It is cleared by BINIT, but not by MASTER.RESET. |
| 13 | DIAG.FAIL<br>(Diagnostic Fail) (R) | When set, this bit indicates that the DHQ11 internal diagnostics have detected an error. The error may have been detected by the self-test sequencer or by the background monitor program (BMP). |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | This bit is associated with the diagnostic-passed LED. When it is set, the LED will be off. When it is cleared, the LED will be on.<br><br>The bit is set by MASTER.RESET. It is cleared after the self-test has run successfully.<br><br>Not valid if MASTER.RESET is set. |
| 12 | TX.DMA.ERROR<br>(Transmit DMA Error) (R) | If this bit is set and TX.ACTION is also set, either the channel indicated by CSR<11:8> has failed to transfer DMA data within 10 microseconds of the bus request being acknowledged, OR there is a host memory parity error.<br><br>The TBUFFAD1 and TBUFFAD2 registers will contain the address of the memory location at which the error occurred. TBUFFCT will be cleared. |
| <11:8> | TX.LINE<br>(Transmit Line Number) (R) | If TX.ACTION is set, these bits hold the line number to which TX.ACTION refers. |
| 7 | RX.DATA.AVAIL<br>(Received Data Available) (R) | When set, this bit indicates that a received character is available. It is clear when the receive FIFO is empty. It is used with RXIE to request a receive interrupt.<br><br>It is set after MASTER.RESET because the receive FIFO contains diagnostic information. |
| 6 | RXIE<br>(Receiver Interrupt Enable)<br>(R/W) | When set, this bit allows the DHQ11 to interrupt the host when RX.DATA.AVAIL is set. An interrupt is generated under the following conditions.<br><br>1. RXIE is set and a character is placed into an empty receive FIFO.<br><br>2. The receive FIFO contains one or more characters, and RXIE is changed from 0 to 1.<br><br>It is cleared by BINIT but not by MASTER.RESET. |
| 5 | MASTER.RESET<br>(Master Reset) (R/W) | This bit is set by the host to reset the module. It stays set while the DHQ11 runs the self-test and performs an initialization sequence. The bit is then cleared to tell the host that the process is complete. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | This bit can be set directly by the host, or indirectly by BINIT (bus initialization signal). |
| 4 | SKIP (Skip Self-Test) | In DHU11 mode, this bit is used (RW) to shorten the reset/initialization time to about 30 milliseconds.<br><br>The host program must only set this bit at the same time as it sets MASTER.RESET. It must then clear the bit, but must wait at least 20 microseconds before doing so. It is recommended that the host **always** set SKIP when setting MASTER.RESET. The DHQ11 will execute the full self-test, regardless of whether SKIP is set or not. The 1.7 seconds delay during MASTER.RESET is purely for DHU11 hardware compatibility. In DHV11 mode, this bit is ignored for compatibility reasons. |
| <3:0> | IND.ADDR.REG<br>(Indirect Address Register)<br>(R/W) | For indexed registers, these bits select one of sixteen channels. However, on the DHQ11 only the lower eight channels are defined. So, when writing these bits, CSR<3> must be zero. |

**3.2.2.2 Receive Buffer (RBUF)** – A read from 'base + 2' is interpreted by the DHQ11 hardware as a read from the receive FIFO. Therefore RBUF is a 256-character register with a 1-word address. The least-significant bit (LSB) of the character is in bit 0.

**RBUF** (READ BASE + 2)

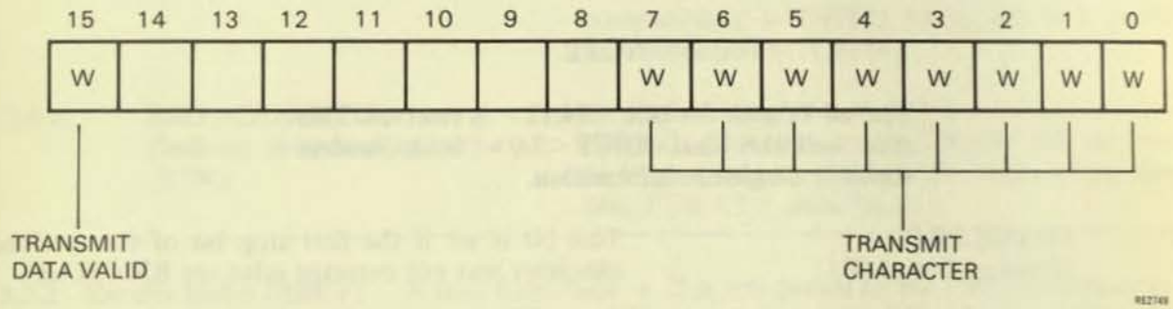


| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | DATA.VALID<br>(Data Valid) (R) | This bit is set if there is data in the receive FIFO.<br><br>When this bit is clear, the contents of RBUF<14:0> is not valid.<br><br>After self-test, diagnostic information is loaded into the receive FIFO. Therefore, this bit is always set after a successful master reset sequence. |
| 14 | OVERRUN.ERR<br>(Overrun Error) (R) | This bit is set if one or more previous characters of the channel indicated by bits <11:8> were lost because of a full receive FIFO. |
| | **NOTE**<br><br>**The 'all 1s' code for bits <14:12> is reserved. This code indicates that RBUF<7:0> holds modem status or diagnostic information.** | |
| 13 | FRAME.ERR<br>(Framing Error) (R) | This bit is set if the first stop bit of the received character was not detected (also see RX.CHAR). |
| 12 | PARITY.ERR<br>(Parity Error) (R) | This bit is set if this character has a parity error, and if parity is enabled for the channel indicated by bits <11:8> (also see RX.CHAR). |
| <11:8> | RX.LINE<br>(Receive Line Number) (R) | These bits hold the binary number of the channel on which the character of RBUF<7:0> was received, or on which a data-set change was reported. |
| <7:0> | RX.CHAR<br>(Received Character) (R) | If RBUF<14:12> = 000, these eight bits contain the oldest character in the receive FIFO. The character is good.<br><br>If RBUF<14:12> = 001, 010, or 011, these eight bits contain the oldest character in the receive FIFO. The character is bad.<br><br>If RBUF<14:12> = 111, these eight bits contain diagnostic or modem status information. In this case, RBUF<0> has the following meanings.<br><br>0 = Modem status in RBUF<7:1><br>1 = Diagnostic information in RBUF<7:1> |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | If there is an overrun condition, the four-character UART receive buffer for that channel will be cleared. This data will be lost. A null character is placed in the receive FIFO, and RBUF<14> is set.<br><br>The DHQ11 does not have a break-detect bit. A line break is indicated to the program as a null character with FRAME.ERR set, and overrun is clear. |

**3.2.2.3 Transmit Character Register (TXCHAR)** – Single-character programmed transfers are made through the transmit character register.

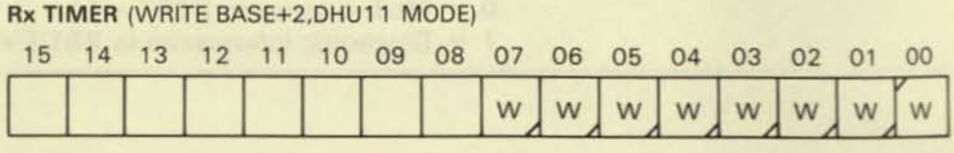
**TXCHAR** (WRITE BASE + 2,DHV11 MODE)




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | TX.DATA.VALID<br>(Transmit Data Valid) (W) | When set, this bit instructs the DHQ11 to transmit the character held in bits <7:0>. The bit is sensed by the DHQ11, which then transfers the character, clears the bit, and sets TX.ACTION.<br><br>TX.DATA.VALID and TX.CHAR can be written together, or by separate MOVB instructions. |
| <7:0> | TX.CHAR<br>(Transmit Character) (W) | This contains the character to be transmitted. The LSB is bit 0. |

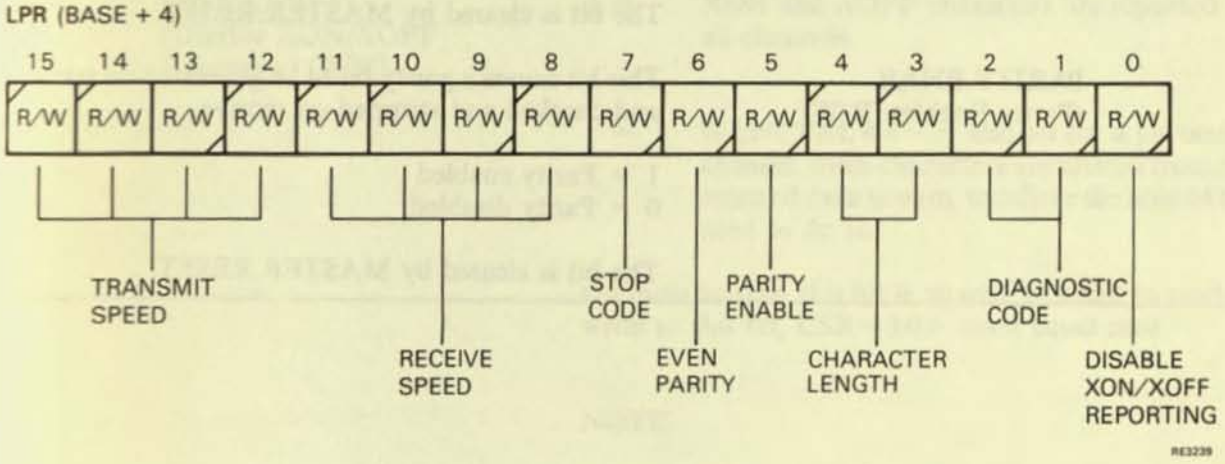
**3.2.2.4 Receive Timer Register (RXTIMER), DHU11 Mode Only** – The indirect address register (CSR<3:0>) must = 0000 in order to access the receive timer. The host can use the timer to delay the receive interrupt.

**Rx TIMER** (WRITE BASE+2,DHU11 MODE)



| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <7:0> | RX.TIMER<br>(Receive timer) | The receive interrupt is normally raised when a received character is loaded into the previously empty receive FIFO. The binary number loaded into RX.TIMER modifies this procedure as follows.<br><br>0 = Infinite timeout. This timeout will be overridden by the conditions below.<br><br>1 = No timeout. The interrupt will be raised immediately.<br><br>2 to 255 = Timer delay in milliseconds.<br><br>The timer is overriden when the receive FIFO becomes three-quarters full (critical) or when a modem status change is written to the FIFO.<br><br>This bit is set to 1 by MASTER.RESET. |

**3.2.2.5 Line-Parameter Register (LPR)** – This register is used to configure its associated channel.



| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <15:12> | TX.SPEED<br>(Transmitted Data Rate) (R/W) | This bit is set to 1101 by MASTER.RESET (9600 bits/s). It defines the transmit data rate (Table 3-2). |
| <11:8> | RX.SPEED<br>(Received Data Rate) (R/W) | This bit is set to 1101 by MASTER.RESET (9600 bits/s). It defines the receive data rate (Table 3-2). |
| 7 | STOP.CODE<br>(Stop Code) (R/W) | This bit defines the length of the transmitted stop bit.<br><br>0 = 1 stop bit for 5-, 6-, 7-, or 8-bit characters<br><br>1 = 2 stop bits for 6-, 7-, or 8-bit characters, or 1.5 stop bits for 5-bit characters<br><br>The bit is cleared by MASTER.RESET. |
| 6 | EVEN.PARITY<br>(Even Parity) (R/W) | If LPR<5> is set, this bit defines the type of parity.<br><br>1 = Even parity<br>0 = Odd parity<br><br>The bit is cleared by MASTER.RESET. |
| 5 | PARITY.ENAB<br>(Parity Enable) (R/W) | This bit causes a parity bit to be generated on transmit, and checked and stripped on receive.<br><br>1 = Parity enabled<br>0 = Parity disabled<br><br>The bit is cleared by MASTER.RESET. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <4:3> | CHAR.LGTH (Character Length) (R/W) | These two bits define the length of characters. The length does not include start, stop, and parity bits.<br><br>00 = 5 bits<br>01 = 6 bits<br>10 = 7 bits<br>11 = 8 bits<br><br>They are set to 11 by MASTER.RESET. |
| <2:1> | DIAG (Diagnostic Code) (R/W) | Diagnostic control codes are are used by the host as follows.<br><br>00 = Normal operation<br><br>01 = Causes the background monitor program (BMP) to report the DHQ11 status through the receive FIFO.<br><br>Other codes are reserved. |
| <0> | DISAB.XRPT (Disable XON/XOFF Reporting) (R/W) | 0 = XON and XOFF characters are reported on all channels.<br><br>1 = If LNCTRL<4> is also set for a particular channel, these characters are filtered from the received data stream, to relieve the host of the need to do so.<br><br>On initialization, this bit is cleared. In order to read or write to this bit, CSR<3:0> must equal zero. |

**NOTE**

**An XON code = $21_8$ = DC = CTRL/Q. An XOFF code = $23_8$ = DC3 = CTRL/S. No other codes are specified for the interface.**

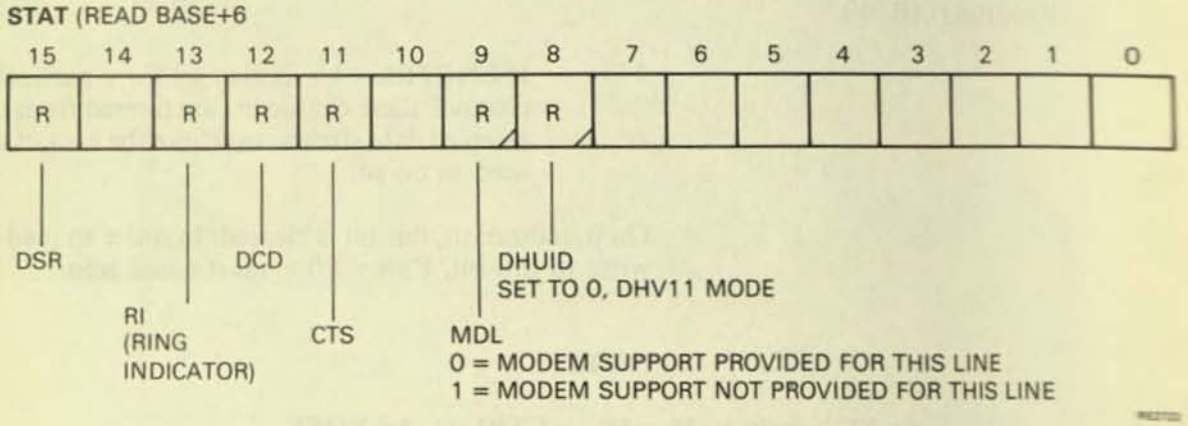
**Table 3-3 Data Rates**

| Code | Data Rate (Bits/s) | Maximum Error (%) |
|---|---|---|
| 0000 | 50 | 0.01 |
| 0001 | 75 | 0.01 |
| 0010 | 110 | 0.08 |

**Table 3-3 Data Rates (Cont.)**

| Code | Data Rate (Bits/s) | Maximum Error (%) |
|---|---|---|
| 0011 | 134.5 | 0.07 |
| 0100 | 150 | 0.01 |
| 0101 | 300 | 0.01 |
| 0110 | 600 | 0.01 |
| 0111 | 1200 | 0.01 |
| 1000 | 1800 | 0.01 |
| 1001 | 2000 | 0.19 |
| 1010 | 2400 | 0.01 |
| 1011 | 4800 | 0.01 |
| 1100 | 7200 | 0.01 |
| 1101 | 9600 | 0.01 |
| 1110 | 19200 | 0.01 |
| 1111 | 38400 | 0.01 |

**3.2.2.6 Line-Status Register (STAT)** – The high byte of this register holds modem status information. In DHV11 mode, the low byte is undefined.




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | DSR (Data Set Ready) (R) | This bit gives the present status of the Data Set Ready (DSR) signal from the modem.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | **NOTE** |
| | | **In order to report a change of modem status, the DHQ11 writes the high byte of STAT into the low byte of RBUF. RBUF<14:12> = 111 indicates to the host that RBUF<7:0> holds modem status information instead of a received character.** |
| 13 | RI (Ring Indicator) (R) | This bit gives the present status of the Ring Indicator (RI) signal from the modem.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 12 | DCD (Data Carrier Detected) (R) | This bit gives the present status of the Data Carrier Detected (DCD) signal from the modem.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 11 | CTS (Clear to Send) (R) | This bit gives the present status of the Clear To Send (CTS) signal from the modem.<br><br>1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 9 | MDL (MDL Modem Support Low) (R) | Always reads as 0 for DHQ11, to indicate that the module has modem support capability. |
| | | **NOTE** |
| | | **It is only necessary to read the modem support status for one line, since all the other lines will have the same setting.** |
| 8 | DHUID (DHU11 Identification bit) (R) | This bit allows software to distinguish between DHV11 mode and DHU11 mode.<br><br>0 = DHV11<br>1 = DHU11 |

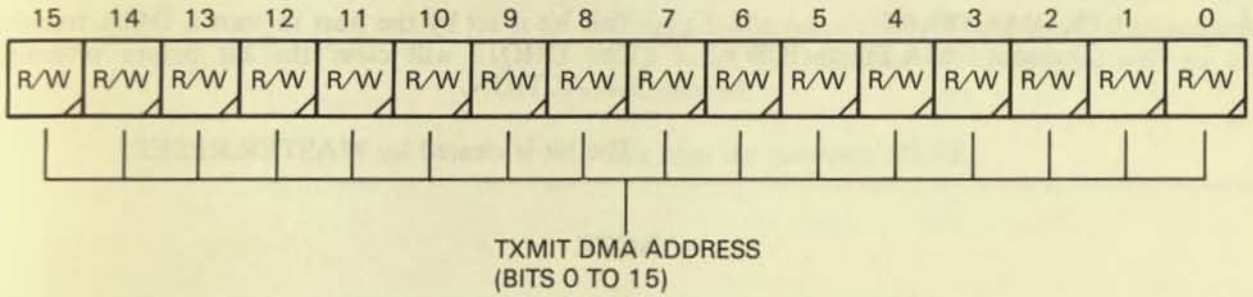
| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | 1 = ON<br>0 = OFF |
| 8 | LINK.TYPE<br>(Link Type) (R/W) | This bit must be set if the channel is to be connected to a modem. When the bit is set, any change in modem status will be reported through the receive FIFO as well as the STAT register.<br><br>If this bit is cleared, this channel becomes a 'data-leads-only' channel. Modem status information is loaded in the high byte of STAT, but is not placed in the receive FIFO. |
| <7:6> | MAINT<br>(Maintenance Mode) (R/W) | These bits can be written by the driver or test programs, in order to test the channel.<br><br>The coding is as follows:<br><br>00 = Normal operation<br><br>01 = Automatic echo mode — Received data is looped back to the terminal (regardless of the state of TX.ENA) at the data rate selected for the receiver. The received characters are processed normally and placed in the receive FIFO. Any data that the host attempts to transmit on this channel will be discarded by the OCTART. The RX.ENA bit must be set when operating in this mode.<br><br>10 = Local loopback — Data transmitted by the host is looped back to the receive buffer. Data received from the terminal is ignored, and the transmit data line to the terminal is held in the mark condition. The data rate selected for the transmitter is used for both transmission and reception. The TX.ENA bit still controls transmission in this mode. The RX.ENA bit is ignored.<br><br>11 = Remote loopback — In this mode, data received from the terminal is looped back to the terminal at a clock rate equal to the received clock rate. The data is not placed in the receive FIFO. The state of TX.ENA is ignored. The RX.ENA bit must be set on this channel. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | FORCE.XOFF<br>(Force XOFF) (R/W) | This bit can be set by the program to indicate that this channel is congested at the host system (for example, if the typeahead buffer is full). When it sees this bit set, the DHQ11 will send an XOFF code. Until the bit is cleared, XOFFs will be sent after every alternate character received on this channel. When the bit is cleared, an XON will be sent unless IAUTO is set and the receive FIFO is critical. |
| 4 | OAUTO<br>(Outgoing Auto Flow) (R/W) | This bit is the auto-flow control bit for outgoing characters. When set, if RX.ENA is also set, the DHQ11 will automatically respond to XON and XOFF codes received from a channel. The DHQ11 uses the TX.ENA bit in TBUFFAD2 to stop and start the flow. If DISAB.XRPT is also set, XON/XOFF codes are not entered in the receive FIFO. |
| 3 | BREAK<br>(Break Control) (R/W) | If set, this bit forces the transmitter of this channel to the spacing state.<br><br>If this bit is set while a character is being transmitted, transmission is completed before break is asserted on the line.<br><br>Transmission is re-enabled when the bit is cleared.<br><br>**NOTE**<br><br>**If the line is idle, there may be a delay of up to 170 microseconds between writing the bit and the channel changing state. If a character is already being transmitted by the OCTART, the BREAK signal will be transmitted immediately afterwards.** |
| 2 | RX.ENA<br>(Receiver Enable) (R/W) | If this bit is set, this receiver channel is enabled.<br><br>If this bit is cleared when this channel is assembling a character, that character is lost.<br><br>The bit is cleared by MASTER.RESET. |
| 1 | IAUTO<br>(Incoming Auto Flow) (R/W) | This is the auto-flow control bit for incoming characters. If it is set, the DHQ11 will control incoming characters by transmitting XON and XOFF codes. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | If the receive FIFO becomes more than three-quarters full, the DHQ11 will send an XOFF code to that channel, and to any other channel which receives a character and has the IAUTO bit set. When FIFO becomes less than half full, an XON will be sent to all channels which had previously been sent an XOFF. |
| 0 | TX.ABORT (Transmit Abort) (R/W) | This bit is set by the driver program to halt data transmission. If a DMA transfer was in progress, the DMA address and count registers (TBUFFAD1, TBUFFAD2, and TBUFFCT) will be updated to reflect the number of characters which have been transmitted. The transfer can be continued by clearing TX.ABORT, and then setting TX.DMA.START in TBUFFAD2. No characters will be lost.<br><br>If DMA is not in progress, the following actions will occur<br><br>DHV11 mode — no action<br><br>DHU11 mode — characters in the transmit FIFO will be discarded. Because of buffering, up to two characters could be transmitted after the TX.ABORT bit is set. The host cannot determine exactly how many characters have been lost with this operation.<br><br>When an abort sequence has been completed, the DHQ11 will set the TX.ACTION bit in the CSR. If the transmitter interrupt is enabled, the program will be interrupted at the transmit vector.<br><br>The program must make sure that TX.ABORT is clear before setting TX.DMA.START, otherwise the transfer will be aborted before any characters are transmitted.<br><br>The bit is cleared by MASTER.RESET. |

### 3.2.2.10 Transmit Buffer Address Register Number 1 (TBUFFAD1) –

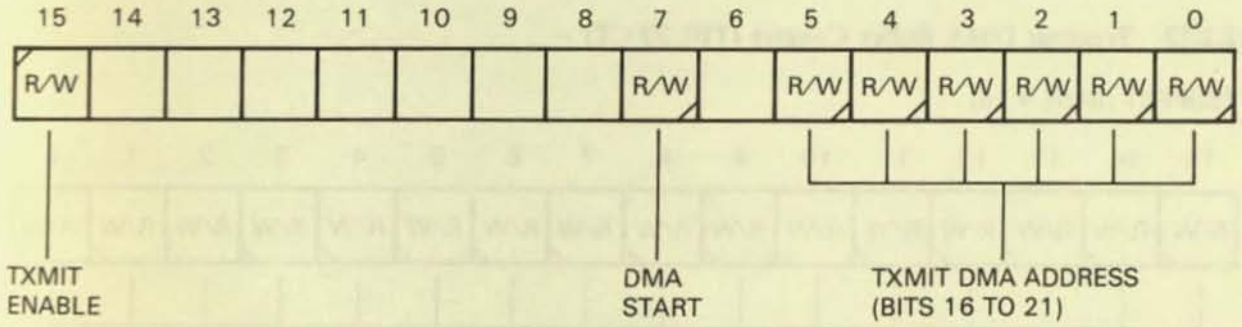
**TBUFFAD1** (BASE + 12)




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <15:0> | TBUFFAD<15:0><br>(Transmit Buffer Address [Low])<br>(R/W) | Bits <15:0> of the DMA address. |

### 3.2.2.11 Transmit Buffer Address Register Number 2 (TBUFFAD2) –

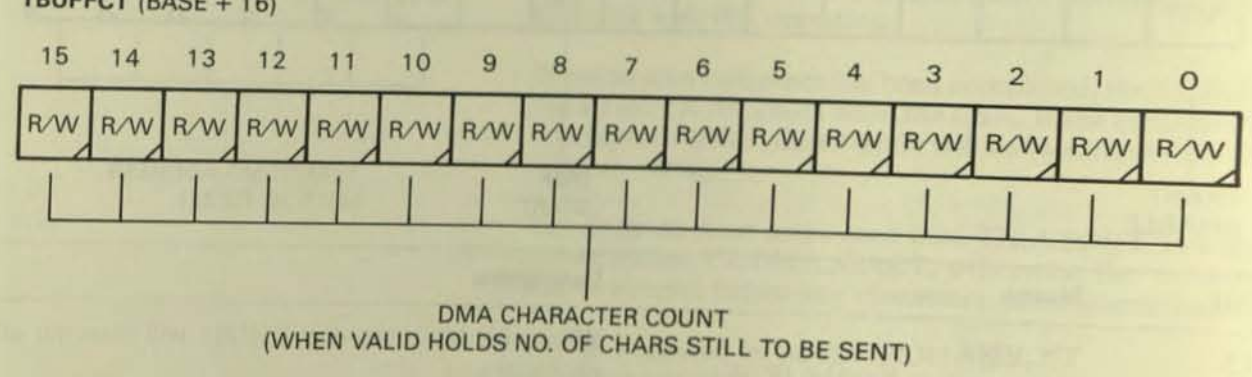
**TBUFFAD2** (BASE + 14)




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | TX.ENA<br>(Transmitter Enable) (R/W) | When this bit is set, the DHQ11 will transmit all characters.<br><br>When this bit is cleared, the DHQ11 will only transmit **internally** generated flow-control characters.<br><br>The bit is set by MASTER.RESET.<br><br>In the OAUTO mode, this bit is used by the DHQ11 to control outgoing characters. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | TX.DMA.START<br>(Transmit DMA Start) (R/W) | This bit is set by the host to start a DMA transfer. The DHQ11 will clear the bit before returning TX.ACTION.<br><br>The bit is cleared by MASTER.RESET. |
| | | **NOTE**<br><br>**After setting this bit, the host must not write to TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, or TBUFFAD2 <7:0> until the TX.ACTION report has been returned.** |
| <5:0> | TBUFFAD<21:16><br>(Transmit Buffer Address [High])<br>(R/W) | Bits <21:16> of the DMA address. Before a DMA transfer, TBUFFAD1 and the low byte of TBUFFAD2 are loaded with the start address of the DMA buffer. This address will be continuously changing during a DMA transfer and has no meaning. Once TX.ACTION has been returned, the register contains the final DMA transfer address. |

### 3.2.2.12 Transmit DMA Buffer Counter (TBUFFCT) –




| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| <15:0> | TX.CHAR.CT<br>(Transmit Character Count) (R/W) | This word is loaded with the number of characters to be transferred by DMA.<br><br>The number of characters is specified as a 16-bit unsigned integer. |

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | | After a DMA transfer has been aborted, this location will hold the number of characters still to be transferred.<br><br>See also the previous NOTE. |

## 3.3 PROGRAMMING FEATURES

### 3.3.1 Initialization

The DHQ11 is initialized by its on-board sequencers.

Initialization takes place after a bus reset sequence, or when the host sets CSR<5> (MASTER.RESET).

Before starting initialization, the on-board sequencers perform a self-test. The results of this test are reported by eight diagnostic bytes in the receive FIFO.

The DHQ11 state, after a successful self-test, is as follows.

1. Eight diagnostic codes are placed in the receive FIFO
2. The diagnostic fail bit (CSR<13>) is clear
3. All channels are set for:
   a. Send and receive 9600 bits/s
   b. Eight data bits
   c. One stop bit
   d. No parity
   e. Parity odd
   f. Auto-flow off
   g. Receive disabled
   h. Transmit enabled
   i. No break on line
   j. No loopback
   k. Link type set to data-leads-only
   l. DTR and RTS off
   m. DMA character counter zero
   n. DMA start address registers zero
   o. TX.DMA.START cleared
   p. TX.ABORT cleared
   q. Auto-flow reports enabled

The DHQ11 clears the MASTER.RESET bit (CSR<5>) when initialization and self-test are complete.

### 3.3.2 Configuration

After DHQ11 self-initialization, the driver program can configure the DHQ11 as needed. This is done through the LPR and LNCTRL registers.

The line characteristics for a channel can be set up by writing to the LPR and LNCTRL registers associated with this channel. These are:

- Transmit speed
- Receive speed
- Number of stop bits
- Parity type or parity disabled
- Character length
- Flow-control characteristics
- Normal or maintenance mode
- Receiver enable/disable
- Modem or data-leads-only

**NOTE**

**If RX.ENA is reset while a received character is being assembled, that character will be lost.**

### 3.3.3 Transmitting

Each DHQ11 channel can be set up to transfer the characters by DMA or under program control.

**3.3.3.1 DMA Transfers** – Before setting up the transfer of a DMA buffer, the program should make sure that TX.DMA.START is not set. TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2 should not be written unless TX.DMA.START is clear.

Transmission will start when the program sets TX.DMA.START. The size of the DMA buffer, and its start address, can be written to TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2 in any order, provided that the TX.DMA start bit (TBUFFAD2<7>) is not set. However, TBUFFAD2 contains TX.ENA and TX.DMA.START, so it is probably simpler to write TBUFFAD2 last. By using byte operations on this register, TX.ENA and TX.DMA.START can be separated.

The DHQ11 will perform the transfer, and set TX.ACTION when it is complete. If TXIE is set, the program will be interrupted at the transmit vector. Otherwise, TX.ACTION must be polled. TX.ACTION is not returned until the UART has completely transmitted the last character of the DMA buffer.

To abort a DMA transfer, the program must set TX.ABORT. The DHQ11 will stop transmission, and update TBUFFCT, TBUFFAD1, and TBUFFAD2<7:0> to reflect the number of characters which have been transmitted. TX.DMA.START will be cleared. If TXIE is set, TX.ACTION will interrupt the program at the transmit vector. If the program clears TX.ABORT and sets TX.DMA.START, the transfer can be continued without loss of characters.

If a DMA transfer fails because of a host memory error, the transmission will be terminated. TBUFFAD1 and TBUFFAD2 will point to the failing location. TBUFFCT will be cleared.

**3.3.3.2 Programmed I/O (DHV11 Mode)** – Single characters are transferred through the channel TX.CHAR register. The character and the DATA.VALID bit must be written as defined in Section 3.2.2.3. Note that the character and the DATA.VALID bit can be written by separate MOVB instructions.

When the DHQ11 removes the character from TX.CHAR, it returns TX.ACTION. This will generate an interrupt if TXIE is set.

**NOTE**

**In single-character mode, TX.ACTION is returned when the DHQ11 accepts the character, not when it has been transmitted. Each channel can buffer up to three characters. Therefore, if line parameters are changed immediately after the last TX.ACTION of a message, the end of the message could be lost unless three null characters are added to the end of each single-character programmed transfer message.**

**3.3.3.3 Programmed I/O (DHU11 Mode)** – Before writing a character or sequence of characters to the FIFODATA register, the program should read the FIFOSIZE register to check that there is space in the transmit FIFO.

If there is enough space, characters can be written as bytes (one character) or words (two characters) to FIFODATA. After a low-byte write, FIFODATA <7:0> is transferred to the FIFO. After a word write, FIFODATA <7:0> is transferred to the FIFO, followed by FIFODATA <15:0>. High-byte writes to FIFODATA are not allowed.

The DHQ11 returns TX.ACTION when the transmit FIFO becomes empty. An interrupt will also be generated if TXIE is set. As distinct from DMA mode, in programmed I/O mode TX.ACTION is returned when the DHQ11 transfers the last character from the transmit FIFO to the OCTART, not when it has been transmitted. Thus, if line parameters are changed immediately after the last TX.ACTION of a message, the end of the message could be lost. The program can avoid this loss by adding two null characters to the end of each programmed transfer FIFO message.

### 3.3.4 Receiving

Received characters, tagged with the channel number, error information and DATA.VALID, are placed in the receive FIFO. RX.DATA.AVAIL is clear when the receive FIFO is empty. When a character is put into the empty receive FIFO, the DHQ11 sets RX.DATA.AVAIL. A receive interrupt is generated if RXIE is set. RX.DATA.AVAIL stays set while there is valid data in the receive FIFO. It is recommended that the receive character routine continues to read characters from the receive FIFO until DATA.VALID is clear.

**NOTE**

**The interrupt is dynamic. It is raised as RX.DATA.AVAIL is set after RXIE, or as RXIE is set after RX.DATA.AVAIL. If the interrupt routine does not empty the receive FIFO, RXIE must be toggled to raise another interrupt. In DHU11 mode, the interrupt is generated after a delay (set by RX.TIMER).**

If RXIE is not set, the program must poll RBUF often enough to prevent data loss.

### 3.3.5 Interrupt Control

The DHQ11 provides one of two vector addresses during a bus interrupt sequence. The receive vector address is the address set up on the vector address switches. The transmit vector address is the receive vector address + 4.

The receive interrupt vector is generated when:

- RXIE is set and a character is placed into an empty receive FIFO
- RXIE is changed from 0 to 1, and the receive FIFO contains one or more characters.

**NOTE**

**In DHU11 mode an interrupt is generated either immediately, or after the delay set by RX.TIMER.**

The transmit interrupt vector is generated when:

- TXIE is set and TX.ACTION becomes set
- TXIE is changed from 0 to 1 while TX.ACTION is set

**NOTE**

**Up to 16 TX.ACTION reports are buffered. It is therefore recommended that your program reads the CSR until the TX.ACTION bit becomes clear, otherwise TX.ACTION will be lost.**

At the two vectors, the host must provide the addresses of suitable routines to deal with the above conditions.

In DHU11 mode, an interrupt is generated either immediately data is put into an empty receive FIFO, or after a delay set by RX.TIMER.

### 3.3.6 Auto XON And XOFF

XON and XOFF characters are commonly used to control data flow on communications channels. To use this facility, interfaces must have suitable decoding hardware or software.

A channel using flow control that receives an XOFF stops sending characters until it receives an XON.

If the receive FIFO becomes more than three-quarters full, the DHQ11 will send an XOFF code to that channel, and to any other channel which receives a character and has the IAUTO bit set. When FIFO becomes less than half full, an XON will be sent to all channels which had previously been sent an XOFF.

The DHQ11 automatically controls character flow when programmed accordingly (auto-flow). Four bits control this function:

- IAUTO — LNCTRL<1>
- FORCE.XOFF — LNCTRL<5>
- OAUTO — LNCTRL<4>
- DISAB.XRPT — LPR<0>

IAUTO and FORCE.XOFF both control incoming characters. IAUTO is an enable bit which allows the level of the receive FIFO to control the generation of XOFF and XON characters. The FORCE.XOFF bit is a direct command from the program to control the incomimg data stream.

**3.3.6.1 IAUTO** – The DHQ11 hardware recognizes when the receive FIFO is three-quarters full and half full. The logic uses these states for auto-flow control.

Each channel has a separate IAUTO bit. If there are 191 or more characters in the receive FIFO, and a character is received on a channel with IAUTO set, an XOFF character is sent. If the channel does not respond to the XOFF, the DHQ11 will send another XOFF in response to every alternate character received. An XON will be sent when the receive FIFO contains less than 128 characters, unless the FORCE.XOFF bit for that channel is set. XONs are only sent to channels to which an XOFF has previously been sent.

By inserting XON and XOFF characters into the data stream, the program can perform flow control directly. However, if the DHQ11 is in IAUTO mode, the results will be unpredictable.

In IAUTO mode, if RX.ENA is set, XON and XOFF characters will be transmitted even if TX.ENA is cleared.

**3.3.6.2 FORCE.XOFF** – When FORCE.XOFF is set, the DHQ11 sends an XOFF and then acts as if IAUTO is set and the receive FIFO is critical (was three-quarters full, and is not yet less than half full). When FORCE.XOFF is reset, an XON will be sent unless the receive FIFO is critical and IAUTO is set.

**3.3.6.3 OAUTO** – If the program sets OAUTO, the DHQ11 will automatically respond to XON and XOFF characters from the channel. It does this by clearing or setting the TX.ENA bit.

The program may also control the TX.ENA bit, so in this case it is important to keep track of received XON and XOFF characters.

Received XON and XOFF characters will always be reported through the receive FIFO, unless the DISAB.XRPT bit is set. It is possible, during read-modify-write operations by the program, for the DHQ11 to change the TX.ENA bit between the read and the write actions. For this reason, if DMA transfers are started while OAUTO is set, it is advisable to write to the low byte of TBUFFAD2 only.

**3.3.6.4 DISAB.XRPT** – If DISAB.XRPT is clear, XON and XOFF characters will be processed as normal characters and are entered into the receive FIFO. DISAB.XRPT allows the individual line OAUTO bits to control whether XON or XOFF characters received on that channel are discarded. When DISAB.XRPT is set and OAUTO is set, this filtering is enabled.

**NOTES**

1. **When checking for flow-control characters, the DHQ11 only checks characters which do not contain transmission errors. The parity bit is stripped, and the remaining bits are checked for XON ($21_8$) and XOFF ($23_8$) codes.**

2. **Auto flow-control does not absolutely guarantee that overrun errors will not occur. These errors may still occur if the transmitting devices do not respond to the XOFF immediately.**

### 3.3.7 Error Indication

Four bits inform the program of transmission and reception errors.

- TX.DMA.ERR — CSR<12>.
- PARITY.ERR — RBUF<12>.
- FRAME.ERR — RBUF<13>.
- OVERRUN.ERR — RBUF<14>.

RBUF<14:12> also identify a diagnostic or modem status code.

### 3.3.8 Modem Control

Each channel of the module provides modem control bits for RTS and DTR. Also on each channel are modem status inputs CTS, DSR, RI, and DCD. See Section 3.2.2.6 for a description of each of these signals.

CTS, DSR, and DCD are sampled every 10 ms. Therefore, for a change to be detected, these bits must stay steady for at least 10 ms. RI is also sampled every 10 ms, but a change is not reported unless the new state is held for three consecutive samples. Modem signals must be coordinated under program control; there is no hardware modem control logic. Modem status change reports are placed in the receive FIFO only if LINK.TYPE is set, but any changes are updated in STAT irrespective of the state of LINK.TYPE.

Appendix A gives more details of modem control.

By clearing LINK.TYPE, a channel is selected as a 'data-lines only' channel. Modem control and status bits can still be managed by the program, but status bits must be polled at the line-status register. Changes of modem status will **not** be reported to the program.

Status change reporting is done through the receive FIFO as follows.

- When OVERRUN.ERR, FRAME.ERR, and PARITY.ERR are all set, the eight low-order bits contain either status change or diagnostic information. In this case:
- If RBUF<0> = 0, RBUF<7:1> holds STAT<15:9> (see Section 3.2.2.6)
- If RBUF<0> = 1, RBUF<7:1> holds diagnostic information (see Section 3.3.10).

### 3.3.9 Maintenance Programming

The host can set bits 7 and 6 of LNCTRL to allow each channel to be configured in normal, automatic echo, local loopback, and remote loopback modes. These modes allow an individual data channel to be looped back to the host, or to be looped back to the terminal to assist in isolating communication problems.

The host must provide suitable software to use these modes.

### 3.3.10 Diagnostic Codes

**3.3.10.1 Self-Test Diagnostic Codes** – After bus reset or master reset, the DHQ11 executes a self-test and initialization sequence. During the sequence, eight diagnostic codes are put in the receive FIFO, and RX.DATA.AVAIL is set.

After an error-free test, DIAG.FAIL will be reset and the 'diagnostic passed' LED will be on. If an error is detected, DIAG.FAIL will be set and the LED will be off.

**3.3.10.2 Interpretation Of Self-Test Codes** – The high byte of diagnostic codes in RBUF can be interpreted as in Section 3.2.2.2, except that bits <11:8> are not the line number. They indicate the sequence of the diagnostic byte, that is to say, 0 = first byte, 1 = second byte, and so on. Table 3-3 shows the meaning of each of the error codes.

**Table 3-4 DHQ11 Self-Test Error Codes**

| Code (Octal) bits<7:0> | Explanation |
|---|---|
| 201 | Self-test null code (used as a filler) |
| 203 | Self-test skipped |
| 211 | OCTART error |
| 225 | RAM error |
| 231 | RTS-CTS-DCD error |
| 235 | DTR-RI-DSR error |

All other error codes should be treated as an undefined error.

If bit 7 = 0 and bit 0 = 1, then bits <5:2> contain circuit revision information.

**Table 3-4 DHQ11 Self-Test Error Codes (Cont.)**

| Code (Octal) bits<7:0> | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Bit 6 always reads 1 for the DHQ11, and indicates that the circuit contains control and OCTART chips.<br><br>Bit 1 indicates to which chip the information refers: 0 = Control, 1 = OCTART. | |

After self-test, the eight FIFO codes consist of six diagnostic codes and two circuit revision codes. If there are less than six errors to report, null codes (201(octal)) fill the unused places.

After an error-free test, six null codes and two circuit revision codes will be returned.

Self-test may be 'skipped' to shorten the initialization cycle (see Section 3.3.10.3).

The module is still tested, even if self-test is skipped. The reset delay is much shorter, but test coverage is not affected; therefore skipping self-test is advantageous.

After 'skip self-test' self-test, the eight FIFO codes consist of six diagnostic codes and two circuit revision codes. If there are less than six errors to report, 203(octal) codes fill the unused places.

After an error-free test, six 203(octal) codes and two circuit revision codes will be returned.

**3.3.10.3 Skipping Self-Test** – In DHU11 mode only, the method is to set SKIP (CSR bit 4) and MASTER.RESET (CSR bit 5) simultaneously, that is, write 60(octal) to the base CSR. SKIP must not be cleared until at least 20 microseconds after it was set. SKIP must be cleared by the host so that the master reset sequence can complete.

In DHV11 mode (this also works in DHU11 mode, but the previous method is preferred) the following method is used:

1. The program resets the DHQ11.
2. The program waits 10 ms (± 1 ms) after issuing reset, and then attempts to write $052525_8$ to any of the control registers, except the CSR, within the next 4 ms.
3. Following self-test, the DHQ11 hardware checks whether an attempt was made to write the skip code to the registers during the 4 ms window after reset (see step 2 above). If an attempt was made, the MASTER.RESET bit is cleared at 30 ms after issuing a reset instead of 1.2 s. The 1.2 s reset time was retained for compatibility with the DHV11.

**NOTE**

**The program must not write to the CSR, or to the control registers, during the period starting 15 ms after reset, and ending when the MASTER.RESET bit is cleared. Writing during this period could cause a diagnostic fail condition.**

**3.3.10.4 Background Monitor Program (BMP)** – The DHQ11 BMP logic performs background self-tests by checking for OCTART interrupts. One of two codes is returned to the receive FIFO:

1. 305(octal) — DHQ11 running
   307(octal) — DHQ11 defective (also LED off)

A single diagnostic word is returned to the receive FIFO. The low byte contains the diagnostic code. In the high byte, OVERRUN.ERR, FRAME.ERR, and PARITY.ERR are all set to indicate that bits<7:0> do not hold a normal character. The line number (RBUF<11:8>) = 0.

BMP normally only reports when it finds an error. However, the program can get a BMP report at any time to check the DHQ11. This is done by setting DIAG (LPR <2:1>) of any channel to 01.The line number returned is that of the LPR used to request the report.

On completing the check, BMP clears this 01 code. The host should not write to the LPR of that channel until LPR<2:1> becomes 00.

## 3.4 PROGRAMMING EXAMPLES

These programs are not presented as the only way of driving the option, and are neither guaranteed nor supported.

### 3.4.1 Resetting The DHQ11

In the following example:

- DIAGC is a routine to check the diagnostic codes. It returns with CARRY set if it detects an error code.
- The loop at 1$ takes 1.2 seconds, so the programmer could poll through a timer or poll at interrupt level zero.

```
;
; A ROUTINE TO RESET THE DHQ11 AND CHECK THAT IT IS FUNCTIONING
; CORRECTLY.
;

DHQRES::
        MOV     #40,#DHQCSR             ; SET MASTER.RESET AND
                                         ; CLEAR INTERRUPT ENABLES.
1$:     BIT     #40,#DHQCSR             ; WAIT FOR MASTER.RESET TO
        BNE     1$                       ; CLEAR.
        BIT     #20000,#DHQCSR          ; CHECK THE DIAGNOSTICS
        BNE     DIAGER                   ; FAIL BIT.
                                         ; NOTE: TEST INSTRUCTION IS
                                         ; OK BECAUSE THERE ARE
                                         ; NO TRANSMIT.ACTS PENDING.
        MOV     #8.,R5                   ; SET UP A COUNT.
                                         ;
2$:     MOV     #RBUFF,R0               ; GET NEXT DIAGNOSTIC CODE.
        JSR     PC,DIAG                  ; PROCESS IT.
        BCS     DIAGER                   ; CARRY SET - MUST HAVE
                                         ; BEEN AN ERROR.
        SOB     R5,2$                    ; GO BACK FOR NEXT CODE.

        RTS     PC                       ; RETURN - CARD IS RESET.

;
; DHQ11 HAS FAILED TO RESET PROPERLY, SO HALT AND WAIT FOR
; THE FIELD SERVICE ENGINEER.
;

DIAGER: HALT
        BR      DIAGER
```

### 3.4.2 Configuration

This routine sets the characteristics of channel 1 as follows:

1. Transmit and receive at 300 bits/s
2. Seven data bits with even parity and one stop bit
3. Transmitters and receivers enabled
4. No modem control
5. No automatic flow control.

```
SETUP::
        MOV     #1,#DHQCSR              ; LOAD INDEX REG
                                         ; WITH CHANNEL NO.
        MOV     #052560,#LPR            ; DATA RATE, STOP BITS,
                                         ; PARITY AND LENGTH.
        MOV     #4,#LNCTRL              ; ENABLE THE RECEIVER.
        MOVB    #200,#TBFAD2+1          ; ENABLE THE TRANSMITTER.

        RTS     PC                       ; RETURN - CHANNEL 1 DONE.
```

### 3.4.3 Transmitting

**3.4.3.1 Single-Character Programmed Transfer (DHU11 Mode)** – The following is a program to send a message on channel 1.

The CSR is polled for TX.ACTION reports, but a TX.ACTION interrupt could also be used.

This program would function on a DHQ11 with only this channel active. Otherwise it would lose TX.ACTION reports of other channels. However, a program to control all channels would be too big to use as an example.

```
;
; A ROUTINE TO WRITE A MESSAGE TO CHANNEL 1 USING FIFO OUTPUT
; MODE (PROGRAMMED TRANSFERS).
;

FIFOUT::
        MOV     #1,#DHQCSR              ; POINT TO CHANNEL WE WISH
                                        ; TO TALK TO.
        MOV     #MESG,R0                ; POINT TO MESSAGE.
        MOV     MESIZE,R1               ; PUT COUNT IN.
1$:
        TSTB    #FIFOSIZE               ; CHECK THAT THERE IS SPACE IN
        BEQ     1$                      ; THE FIFO.
        MOVB    (R0)+,#FIFODATA         ; MOVE CHARACTER TO TRANSMIT FIFO
        SOB     R1,1$                   ; GO BACK FOR NEXT CHARACTER.
2$:
        MOV     #DHQCSR,R2              ; WAIT FOR TX.ACT.
        BPL     2$

        BIC     #170377,R2              ; ISOLATE CHANNEL NUMBER.
        CMP     #000400,R2
        BNE     2$                      ; IGNORE THE TX.ACT IF IT IS
                                        ; NOT OURS (SHOULD NOT HAPPEN).

        RTS     PC                      ; MESSAGE SENT.

MESG: .ASCII /A TRANSMIT FIFO MESSAGE FOR CHANNEL 1/
MESIZE  =    .-MESG
      .EVEN
```

**3.4.3.2 Single-Character Programmed Transfer (DHV11 Mode)** – This is a program to send a message on channel 1. The message (MESG) is an ASCII string with a null character as terminator.

Polling is used, but a TX.ACTION interrupt could also be used.

This program would function on a DHQ11 with only this channel active. Otherwise it would lose TX.ACTION reports of other channels. However, a program to control all channels would be too big to use as an example.

```
;
; A ROUTINE TO WRITE A MESSAGE TO CHANNEL 1 USING SINGLE-CHARACTER
; MODE.
;

SINGOT::
        MOV     #1,#DHQCSR              ; LOAD INDEX REG WITH
                                        ; CHANNEL NO.
        MOV     #MESG,R0                ; POINT TO MESSAGE.
1$:
        MOVB    (R0)+,#TXCHAR           ; MOVE CHARACTER TO TRANSMIT
                                        ; BUFFER.
        BEQ     3$                      ; GO RETURN IF ALL CHARACTERS
                                        ; GONE.
        MOVB    #200,#TXCHAR+1          ; SET DATA VALID BIT TO START.
2$:
        MOV     #DHQCSR,R1              ; WAIT FOR TX.ACT
        BPL     2$

        BIC     #174377,R1              ; ISOLATE CHANNEL NUMBER.
        CMP     #000400,R1
TXI     BNE     2$                      ; IGNORE THE TX.ACT IF IT IS
                                        ; NOT OURS (SHOULD NOT HAPPEN).
        BR      1$                      ; GO BACK FOR NEXT CHARACTER.

3$:
        RTS     PC                      ; MESSAGE SENT.

MESG:   .ASCIZ /A SINGLE-CHARACTER MESSAGE FOR CHANNEL 1/
```

### 3.4.3.3 DMA Transfer –

```
;
; THIS PROGRAM SENDS A MESSAGE OUT ON EACH LINE OF  THE  DHQ11  AND
; HALTS THE MACHINE WHEN ALL TRANSMISSIONS HAVE COMPLETED.
;
; THE MESSAGES ARE TRANSMITTED USING DMA MODE,  AND INTERRUPTS  ARE
; USED TO SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPLETION.
;

DMAINT::
        MOV     #TXINT,#TXVECT  ; SET UP THE INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,#TXPSW     ; INTERRUPT PRIORITY FOUR.
        MOV     #8.,R0           ; EIGHT LINES TO START.
        CLR     R1               ; START AT LINE ZERO.
1$:
        MOVB    R1,#DHQCSR      ; SELECT THE REGISTER BANK.
        MOV     #DMASIZ,#TBFCNT ; SET LENGTH OF MESSAGE.
        MOV     #DMAMES,#TBFAD1 ; SET LOWER 16 ADDRESS BITS.
        MOV     #100200,#TBFAD2 ; START DMA WITH TRANSMITTER
                                ; ENABLED (ASSUME UPPER ADDRESS
                                ; BITS ARE ZERO).
        INC     R1               ; POINT TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$            ; REPEAT FOR ALL LINES.

        CLR     R5               ; R5 IS USED BY INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
        MOVB    #100,#DHQCSR+1  ; ENABLE TRANSMITTER INTERRUPTS.
2$:
        CMP     #8.,R5           ; WAIT FOR ALL LINES TO FINISH.
        BNE     2$
3$:
        HALT                    ; ALL DONE, SO STOP.
        BR      3$


;
; TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;
; R5 IS INCREMENTED AS EACH LINE COMPLETES.
;

TXINT::
        MOV     #DHQCSR,R0 ; GET LINE NUMBER OF FINISHED LINE.
        BIT     #100000,R0  ; CHECK FOR (ANOTHER) TX.ACTION.
        BEQ     4$          ; IF NOT, GO RETURN AND WAIT.

        INC     R5          ; FLAG THAT ANOTHER LINE HAS FINISHED.
        BR      TXINT
4$:
        RTI
5$:
        HALT                ; MEMORY PROBLEM
        BR      5$

DMAMES: .ASCII  <15><12><7><7><7>/SYSTEM CLOSING DOWN NOW/
DMASIZ  =       .-DMAMES
        .EVEN
```

### 3.4.3.4 Aborting A Transmission –

```
;
; THIS ROUTINE IS CALLED TO ABORT A  TRANSMISSION  (EITHER  DMA  OR
; FIFO)  IN  PROGRESS  ON A SPECIFIED LINE.  THIS ROUTINE MAKES THE
; (RATHER RASH) ASSUMPTION THAT THERE ARE  NO  OTHER  TRANSFERS  IN
; PROGRESS.
;
; ON ENTRY,  R0 CONTAINS THE NUMBER OF THE LINE TO BE ABORTED.
;

TXABRT::
        MOV     R0,#DHQCSR    ; POINT TO THE CHANNEL TO BE ABORTED.
        BIS     #1,#LNCTRL    ; SET THE TRANSMIT ABORT BIT.
1$:
        MOV     #DHQCSR,R1    ; WAIT FOR THE TX.ACT.
        BPL     1$
        SWAB    R1             ; CHECK IT IS OUR LINE.
        BIC     #177760,R1
        CMP     R0,R1
        BNE     1$             ; IGNORE IT IF IT IS NOT (OUR
                               ; ASSUMPTION WAS WRONG!)

        BIC      1,#LNCTRL    ; CLEAR DOWN THE ABORT FLAG
                               ; FOR NEXT TIME.

        RTS     PC             ; BUFFER COMPLETELY ABORTED.
                               ; IF A DMA WAS IN PROGRESS, THE
                               ; DMA REGISTERS REFLECT WHERE
                               ; THE DHQ11 HAD GOT TO.
```

### 3.4.4 Receiving

```
;
; THIS  ROUTINE  PROCESSES  RECEIVED  CHARACTERS  UNDER   INTERRUPT
; CONTROL.   IF  AN  XOFF  IS  RECEIVED,   THE TRANSMITTER FOR THAT
; CHANNEL IS TURNED OFF.  IF AN XON IS RECEIVED,   THE  TRANSMITTER
; IS TURNED BACK ON.  ALL OTHER CHARACTERS ARE IGNORED.
;
; THIS IS JUST AN EXAMPLE.  A BETTER WAY TO PERFORM FLOW CONTROL IS
; TO USE THE AUTOMATIC CAPABILITIES OF THE DHQ11.
;

RXAUTO::
        MOV     #RXINT,#RXVECT  ; SET UP THE INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,#RXPSW     ; INTERRUPT PRIORITY FOUR.
        MOV     #8.,R0           ; ENABLE ALL THE RECEIVERS,
        CLR     R1               ; STARTING AT CHANNEL ZERO,
1$:
        MOVB    R1,#DHQCSR      ; SELECT THE LINE.
        BIS     #4,#LNCTRL      ; ENABLE THIS RECEIVER.
        INC     R1               ; SET POINTER TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$

        MOVB    #100,#DHQCSR    ; ENABLE THE RECEIVER INTERRUPTS.

        RTS     PC               ; RETURN - INTERRUPTS DO THE RESET.
```

```
;
; INTERRUPT ROUTINE TO DO THE MAIN TASK.
;

RXINT::
        MOV     R0,-(SP)        ; SAVE CALLER'S REGISTERS.
RXNXTC:
        MOV     #RBUFF,R0       ; GET THE CHARACTER.
        BPL     RXIEND          ; IF NO DATA VALID, WE HAVE FINISHED.
        MOV     R0,-(SP)        ; CHECK FOR ERRORS, MODEM AND
        BIC     #107777,(SP)+   ; DIAGNOSTICS CODES.
        BNE     RXNXTC          ;  - JUST IGNORE THEM (BAD PRACTICE).

        BIC     #170200,R0      ; REMOVE UNNECESSARY BITS.
        SWAB    R0              ; POINT TO THIS CHARACTER'S LINE.
        BIS     #100,R0         ; (ADD THE INTERRUPT ENABLE BIT.)
        MOVB    R0,#DHQCSR
        SWAB    R0              ; PUT CHARACTER BACK IN LOWER BYTE.
        CMPB    #21,R0          ; WAS IT AN "XON"?
        BNE     1$              ; NO - GO CHECK FOR AN "XOFF"

        BISB    #200,#TBFAD2+1  ; ENABLE THE TRANSMITTER.
        BR      RXNXTC          ; GO CHECK FOR MORE CHARACTERS.
1$:
        CMPB    #23,R0          ; WAS IT AN "XOFF"?
        BNE     RXNXTC          ; NO - GO CHECK FOR MORE CHARACTERS.

        BICB    #200,#TBFAD2+1  ; DISABLE THE TRANSMITTER.
        BR      RXNXTC          ; GO CHECK FOR MORE CHARACTERS.

RXIEND:
        MOV     (SP)+,R0        ; RESTORE THE DESTROYED REGISTER.
        RTI
```

### 3.4.5 Auto XON And XOFF

```
;
; THIS PROGRAM SENDS A MESSAGE OUT ON EACH LINE OF THE DHQ11 AND
; HALTS THE MACHINE WHEN ALL TRANSMISSIONS HAVE COMPLETED.
;
; THE MESSAGES ARE TRANSMITTED USING DMA MODE, AND INTERRUPTS ARE
; USED TO SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPLETION.
;
; AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL IS ENABLED ON THE OUTGOING DATA.
;

TXAUTO::
        MOV     #ATOINT,#TXVECT ; SET UP THE INTERRUPT VECTORS.
        MOV     #200,#TXPSW     ; INTERRUPT PRIORITY FOUR.
        MOV     #8.,R0           ; EIGHT LINES TO START.
        CLR     R1               ; START AT LINE ZERO.
1$:
        MOVB    R1,#DHQCSR      ; SELECT THE REGISTER BANK.
        BIS     #24,#LNCTRL     ; ENABLE AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL
                                 ; ON THE TRANSMITTED DATA.
        MOV     #AUTOSZ,#TBFCNT ; SET LENGTH OF MESSAGE.
        MOV     #AUTOMS,#TBFAD1 ; SET LOWER 16 ADDRESS BITS.
        MOV     #100200,#TBFAD2 ; START DMA WITH TRANSMITTER
                                 ; ENABLED (ASSUME UPPER ADDRESS
                                 ; BITS ARE ZERO).
        INC     R1               ; POINT TO NEXT CHANNEL.
        SOB     R0,1$            ; REPEAT FOR ALL LINES.

        CLR     R5               ; R5 IS USED BY INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
        MOVB    #100,#DHQCSR+1  ; ENABLE TRANSMITTER INTERRUPTS.
2$:
        CMP     #8.,R5           ; WAIT FOR ALL LINES TO FINISH.
        BNE     2$
3$:
        HALT                     ; ALL DONE, SO STOP.
        BR      3$
```

```
;
; TRANSMITTER INTERRUPT ROUTINE.
;
; R5 IS INCREMENTED AS EACH LINE COMPLETES.
;

ATOINT::
        MOV     #DHQCSR,R0    ; GET LINE NUMBER OF FINISHED LINE.

        BIT     #10000,R0     ; CHECK FOR DMA FAILURE.
        BNE     4$            ; GO HALT - MEMORY PROBLEM.

        INC     R5            ; FLAG THAT ANOTHER LINE HAS FINISHED.

2$:
        RTI
4$:
        HALT                  ; MEMORY PROBLEM
        BR      4$

AUTOMS: .ASCII  <15><12><7><7><7>/SYSTEM CLOSING DOWN NOW/
AUTOSZ  =       .-AUTOMS
        .EVEN
```

### 3.4.6 Checking Diagnostic Codes

```
;
; THIS ROUTINE CHECKS  THE  DIAGNOSTICS  CODES  RETURNED  FROM  THE
; DHQ11.   ON  ENTRY,   R0 CONTAINS THE CHARACTER RECEIVED FROM THE
; DHQ11.  ON EXIT,  THE CARRY BIT WILL BE CLEAR FOR  SUCCESS,   SET
; FOR FAILURE.
;

DIAG::
        MOV     R0,-(SP)        ; SAVE THE CODE FOR LATER.

        BIC     #107776,R0      ; CHECK THAT IT IS A DIAG. CODE.
        CMP     #070001,R0
        BNE     DIAGEX          ; IF NOT, JUST EXIT NORMALLY.

        MOV     (SP),R0         ; GET THE CODE BACK.

        BITB    #200,R0         ; CHECK FOR CHIP VERSION NUMBER.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
        CMPB    #201,R0         ; SELF-TEST NULL CODE.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
        CMPB    #203,R0         ; SELF-TEST SKIPPED CODE.
        BEQ     DIAGEX

        CMPB    #305,R0         ; DHQ RUNNING CODE.
        BEQ     DIAGEX
                                ; ALL THE REST ARE ERROR CODES.

        SEC                     ; AN ERROR CODE WAS RECEIVED, SO
        BR      DIAGXX          ; SET THE CARRY FLAG.

DIAGEX:
        CLC                     ; EVERYTHING OK, SO CLEAR CARRY.
DIAGXX:
        MOV     (SP)+,R0        ; RESTORE THE CHARACTER/INFO.
        RTS     PC
```

# CHAPTER 4
# TROUBLESHOOTING

## 4.1 SCOPE

This chapter explains how to isolate the cause of a communications problem between the DHQ11 and the equipment to which it is connected.

## 4.2 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

No preventive maintenance is needed for this option. However, you should always ensure that all cables are clear of danger, and that all the connectors are secure.

Make sure that all cables are clearly labelled, so that you can easily identify which channel number and which DHQ11 module are associated with each terminal.

## 4.3 TROUBLESHOOTING PROCEDURES

Troubleshooting procedures are to identify whether the problem is caused by:

- The module
- A terminal
- The cabling and distribution panels.

First decide whether the problem is associated with one channel, a group of four channels, or all eight channels.

If all channels are faulty, run the user diagnostics to test the module. Also check whether your software has a driver for the DHQ11.

If a group of four channels are faulty, check the BC05L-xx cable connected to the module.

For single-channel problems (EIA-232-D):

1. Check for loose cables and connectors.
2. Verify that the terminal is working correctly. If necessary, swap it with another one.
3. When a modem line is suspect, check that the modem is correctly configured for modem signals supported by the DHQ11. Also check that the software driver has the correct baud-rate setting and that modem support is enabled for that line.
4. If the problem cannot be solved, call DIGITAL Field Service.

For single-channel problems (DEC423)

1. Check for loose cables and connectors.

2. Verify that the terminal is working correctly. If necessary, swap it with another one.

3. Disconnect the BC16C-XX cable from the distribution panel, and connect it to the H3101 loopback connector.

4. Type characters at the terminal connected to the suspect line. If characters are echoed back when the H3101 is connected, the cables and terminal are working. If characters are not echoed back, the fault lies with the cable connection to the terminal, or with the terminal itself.

5. Rectify the cable or terminal fault, if there is one. If not, make sure that the user diagnostics for the module run correctly.

6. If the problem cannot be solved, call DIGITAL Field Service.

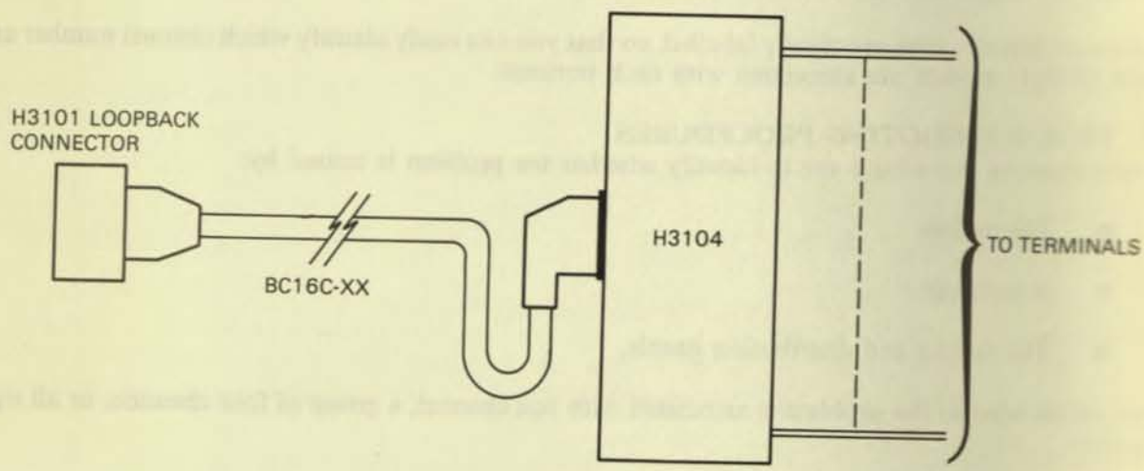



Figure 4-1 Troubleshooting DEC423 Installations

## 4.4 INTERNAL DIAGNOSTICS

Internal diagnostics run without intervention from the operator. There are two tests: the self-test and the background monitor program (BMP).

### 4.4.1 Self-Test

The self-test starts immediately after the Q-bus or module has been reset. It performs a comprehensive internal logic test but does not test the Q-bus interface. The DIAG.FAIL bit and the 'diagnostics passed' LED on the module give an indication of a successful self-test. The self-test also reports error or status information to the host via the receive FIFO.

The self-test has completed successfully if the LED is on 1.7 seconds after the self-test has been initiated. The self-test is started by setting the MASTER.RESET bit in the CSR, either by resetting the module through the program interface or by a Q-bus initialisation sequence. The LED is turned off when the self-test starts, and the test completes after 30ms. The self-test then finishes in one of three ways:

- If skip self-test was used, the LED turns on and the MASTER.RESET is cleared

- If the board is in DHV11 mode, the LED flickers, and the end of self-test is delayed for 1.2 seconds to maintain compatibility with DHV11. At the end of the delay period the LED turns on and the MASTER.RESET is cleared

- If the board is in DHU11 mode, the LED flickers, and the end of self-test is delayed for 1.7 seconds to maintain compatibility with DHU11. At the end of the delay period the LED turns on and the MASTER.RESET is cleared.

In all three cases, if the self-test encounters a failure, the LED will be off after the self-test (and delay) has completed.

**NOTE**

**The DIAG.FAIL bit controls the LED; when the DIAG.FAIL bit is set, the LED is off, and when it is clear, the LED is off.**

Self-test provides a high level of confidence that the majority of the module logic is working. The user diagnostics must also be used to test the Q-bus interface and verify that the switch settings on the module switchpacks are correct.

### 4.4.2 Background Monitor Program (BMP)

When the DHQ11 is not doing other tasks, the BMP carries out tests on the module. If an error is detected, the BMP reports to the host via the FIFO, and also switches OFF the 'diagnostics passed' LED.

By writing codes to the line-parameter register, the host can cause the BMP to report the status of the device, even if an error has not been detected. This facility is used if the host suspects that the option is faulty. More information on the self-test and BMP diagnostics is given in Chapter 3 of this manual.

## 4.5 MicroPDP-11 DIAGNOSTICS

### 4.5.1 User-Mode Diagnostics

These tests can be used by an untrained operator to verify the basic operation of the option. User-mode tests do not cause any disruption to data networks or devices to which the DHQ11 may be connected. Such networks and devices do not have to be disconnected from the DHQ11 during the tests. The MicroPDP-11 system manuals describe how to load and run these diagnostics.

**4.5.1.1 Running User-Mode Tests** – All user-mode tests are run by selection from the test menu displayed when the user diagnostics are booted. See Chapter 2 for more details.

A MicroPDP-11 Maintenance Kit is available, which allows trained personnel to run individual diagnostic programs under the XXDP+ diagnostic monitor, and to configure and run DECX11 system test programs. The XXDP+ functional diagnostic is VHQA**.BIN, and the DECX11 module is XDHV**.OBJ.

## 4.6 MicroVAX II DIAGNOSTICS

Diagnostics for MicroVAX II systems all run under the MicroVAX Maintenance System (MMS). The MicroVAX II system manuals describe how to load the MMS into the MicroVAX II, and how to run MMS diagnostics. All the tests can be run by selection from the test menus displayed when MMS is booted.

### 4.6.1 User-Mode Tests

These tests can be used by an untrained operator to verify the basic operation of the option. User-mode tests do not cause any disruption to data networks or devices to which the DHQ11 may be connected. Such networks and devices do not have to be disconnected from the DHQ11 during the tests. See Chapter 2 for more details.

## 4.7 FIELD-REPLACEABLE UNITS (FRUs)

The FRUs are:

| Reference No. | Item |
|---|---|
| M3107 | Dual-height DHQ11 module |
| BC05L-xx | Flat cable, 40 conductor |
| **For EIA-232-D Installations** | |
| H3173-A | Distribution panel |
| **For DEC423 Installations** | |
| H3100 | Active distribution panel |
| BC16C-25 | Multiway cable |
| H3104 | Cable concentrator |
| 70-22775-XX | Power cable |

# APPENDIX A
# MODEM CONTROL

## A.1 SCOPE

This appendix contains information useful to both the programmer and the engineer. It defines control signals, describes typical modem control methods, and warns against likely network faults. A detailed example of auto-answer operation is included.

## A.2 MODEM CONTROL

The DHQ11 supports sufficient modem control to permit full-duplex operation over the public switched telephone network (PSTN) and over private telephone lines. Table A-1 lists the control leads supported by the DHQ11, together with an explanation of their use and purpose. In this appendix, the terms **modem** and **dataset** have the same meaning. They refer to the device which is used to modulate and demodulate the signals transmitted over the communications circuits.

**Table A-1 Modem Control Leads**

| Name | EIA-232-D | V.24 | 25-Pin | Definition |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| GND | AB | 102 | 7 | Signal Ground. This is a reference level for the data and control signals used at the line interface. |
| TXD | BA | 103 | 2 | From DHQ11 to modem. This signal contains the serial bit stream to be transmitted to the remote station. |
| RXD | BB | 104 | 3 | From modem to DHQ11. This signal is the serial bit stream received by the modem from the remote station. |
| RTS | CA | 105 | 4 | From DHQ11 to modem. Causes the modem's carrier to be placed on the line. |
| CTS | CB | 106 | 5 | From modem to DHQ11. Indicates that the modem has successfully placed its carrier on the line, and that data presented on circuit BA will be transmitted to the communication channel. |
| DSR | CC | 107 | 6 | From modem to DHQ11. Indicates that the modem has completed all call establishment functions and is successfully connected to a communications channel. |

**Table A-1 Modem Control Leads (Cont.)**

| Name | EIA-232-D | V.24 | 25-Pin | Definition |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DTR | CD | 108/2 | 20 | From DHQ11 to modem. Indicates to the modem that the DHQ11 is powered up and ready to answer an incoming call. |
| DCD | CF | 109 | 8 | From modem to DHQ11. Indicates to the DHQ11 that the remote station's carrier signal has been detected and is within appropriate limits. |
| RI | CE | 125 | 22 | From modem to DHQ11. Indicates that a new incoming call is being received by the modem. |

The DHQ11 modem control interface can be used in many applications. These include control of serial line printers, terminal cluster controllers, and industrial I/O equipment, in addition to the more usual applications in telephone networks. The use of the control leads described in Table A-1 is therefore completely dependent on the application, although there are international standards which telephone network applications should obey. There are no hardware interlocks between the modem control logic and the transmitter and receiver logic. Program control manages these actions, as necessary.

A subset of the leads listed in Table A-1 could be used to establish a communications link using modems connected to the switched telephone network. Ring Indicator (RI), Data Terminal Ready (DTR), and Data Carrier Detected (DCD) are the absolute minimum requirements. In some countries Dataset Ready (DSR) is also needed. It is usually desirable, however, to implement modem control protocols which will operate over most telephone systems in the world. Also, some protection should be included to guard against network faults, particularly in applications such as dial-up timesharing systems. Such faults include:

- Making a channel permanently busy (hung) because of a misdialed connection from a non-data station
- Connecting a new incoming call on an in-use channel. This fault might occur, for example, after a temporary carrier loss, if the host system assumed that the carrier was reasserted by the original caller.

Modem control with some protection against common faults, and which is compatible with the telephone networks in most geographic areas, can be implemented by using all the signals listed in Table A-1, in the way described by the CCITT V.24 recommendations. Section A.2.1 describes a method of implementing a full-duplex auto-answer communications link through modems over the PSTN. It is provided here only to show the operation and interaction of DHQ11 modem control leads in a typical application.

### A.2.1 Example Of Auto-Answer Modem Control For The PSTN

The system operator determines which DHQ11 channels should be configured for either local or remote operation. Local operation implies control of data-leads-only, while remote operation implies that modem control will be supported. The host software will assert DTR and RTS together with the LINK.TYPE bit in the LNCTRL register for all DHQ11 channels configured for remote operation. DTR informs the modem that the DHQ11 is powered up and ready to acknowledge control signals from

the modem. RTS is asserted for the full-duplex mode of operation, and causes the modem to place its carrier on the telephone line when the modem answers a call. Link Type (LNCTRL<8>) enables modem status information to be placed in the receive character FIFO, where it will be handled by an interrupt service routine. Modem status changes are always reported in the STAT register regardless of the state of LNCTRL<8>. The modem is now prepared to auto-answer an incoming call.

Dialing the modem's number causes RI to be asserted at the line interface. This informs the DHQ11 that a new call is being received. RI has to be in a stable state for at least 30 ms, or the change will not be reported by the DHQ11. Since DTR is already asserted, the modem will auto-answer the incoming call and start its handshaking sequence with the calling station. The time needed to complete the handshaking sequence can be in the order of tens of seconds if fallback-mode speed selection and satellite links are involved. The modem will assert DSR to indicate to the DHQ11 that the call has been successfully answered and a connection established.

**NOTE**

**On some older types of modem used on the PSTN, the opposite effect is also true. The RI signal may be very short, or it may not even occur if DTR was previously asserted. When this type of modem answers an incoming call, it asserts DSR almost immediately and deasserts RI at the line interface. Programs must therefore expect RI or DSR or DCD as the first dataset status change received from the modem when establishing a connection.**

As RTS was previously asserted, the modem's carrier will be placed on the line when DSR is asserted. When the modem has successfully placed its carrier on the line it will assert CTS. This indicates to the DHQ11 that it can start to transmit data. If the incoming call is the result of a misdialed number, a carrier signal may never be received. To guard against this, the host starts a timer when it detects RI or DSR. This is usually in the range 15 to 40 seconds, within which time the carrier must be detected. When the modem detects the remote modem's carrier signal on the line, it will assert DCD. This indicates to the DHQ11 that data is valid on the RXD line.

The modem can now exchange data between the DHQ11 and the calling station for as long as DCD, DSR, and CTS stay asserted. If any of these three signals disappears, or if RI is detected during normal transmission, a fault condition is indicated. A change of state of any of these signals causes an interrupt through the receive FIFO.

The handling of the fault conditions now becomes country-specific, since some telephone systems tolerate a transient carrier loss, while others do not. In the USA it is usual to proceed with a call if carrier resumes within two seconds. In non-USA areas it is possible for telephone supervisory signals, such as dial-tone, to be misinterpreted by the modem as a resumption of carrier. In this case the host program would assume that the connection had been re-established to the original caller and would cause a 'hung' channel. To prevent this, DTR should be deasserted immediately after the loss of DCD, CTS, or DSR, to abort the connection. DTR should stay deasserted for at least two seconds, after which time a new call could be answered.

# APPENDIX B
# FLOATING ADDRESSES

## B.1 FLOATING DEVICE ADDRESSES

On Q-bus systems a block of addresses in the top 4K words of address space is reserved for options with floating device addresses. This range is from $17760010_8$ to $17763776_8$.

Options which can be assigned floating device addresses are listed in Table B-1. This table gives the sequence of addresses for both UNIBUS and Q-bus options. For example, the address sequences could be:

DJ11
DH11
DQ11
DU11/DUV11 and so on.

Having one list allows us to use one set of configuration rules and one configuration program.

**Table B-1 Floating Device Address Assignments**

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) | Address |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | DJ11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760010 |
| 2 | DH11 gap | 8 | 20 | 17760020 |
| 3 | DQ11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760030 |
| 4 | DU11, DUV11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760040 |
| 5 | DUP11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760050 |
| 6 | LK11A gap | 4 | 10 | 17760060 |
| 7 | DMC11/DMR11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760070 |
| 8 | DZ11/DZV11/DZS11/DZ32 gap | 4 | 10 *** | 17760100 |
| 9 | KMC11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760110 |
| 10 | LPP11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760120 |
| 11 | VMV21 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760130 |
| 12 | VMV31 gap | 8 | 20 | 17760140 |
| 13 | DWR70 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760150 |
| 14 | RL11, RLV11 gap | 4 | 10 * | 17760160 |
| 15 | LPA11-K gap | 8 | 20 * | 17760200 |
| 16 | KW11-C gap | 4 | 10 | 17760210 |
| 17 | VSV21 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760220 |
| 18 | RX11/RX211/RXV11/RXV21 gap | 4 | 10 * | 17760230 |

**Table B-1 Floating Device Address Assignments (Cont.)**

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) | Address |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 19 | DR11-W gap | 4 | 10 | 17760240 |
| 20 | DR11-B gap | 4 | 10 ** | 17760250 |
| 21 | DMP11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760260 |
| 22 | DPV11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760270 |
| 23 | ISB11 gap | 4 | 10 | 17760300 |
| 24 | DMV11 gap | 8 | 20 | 17760320 |
| 25 | DEUNA gap | 4 | 10 * | 17760330 |
| 26 | KDA50/UDA50/RQDX3 gap | 2 | 4 * | 17760334 |
| 27 | DMF32 gap | 16 | 40 | 17760340 |
| 28 | KMS11 gap | 6 | 20 | 17760360 |
| 29 | VS100 gap | 8 | 20 | 17760400 |
| 30 | TU81 gap | 2 | 4 | 17760404 |
| 31 | KMV11 gap | 8 | 20 | 17760420 |
| 32 | DHV11/DHU11/DHQ11 gap | 8 | 20 | 17760440 |

* The first device of this type has a fixed address. Any extra devices have a floating address.

** The first two devices of this type have a fixed address. Any extra devices have a floating address.

*** The DZ11-E and DZ11-F are treated as two DZ11s.

The address assignment rules are as follows.

1. Addresses, starting at $17760010_8$ for Q-bus systems, are assigned according to the sequence of Table B-1.

2. Option and gap addresses are assigned according to the octal modulus as follows.

   - Devices with an octal modulus of 4 are assigned an address on a $4_8$ boundary (the two lowest-order address bits = 0)

   - Devices with an octal modulus of 10 are assigned an address on a $10_8$ boundary (the three lowest-order address bits = 0)

   - Devices with an octal modulus of 20 are assigned an address on a $20_8$) boundary (the four lowest-order address bits = 0)

   - Devices with an octal modulus of 40 are assigned an address on a $40_8$ boundary (the five lowest-order address bits = 0)

3. Address space equal to the device's modulus must be allowed for each device which is connected to the bus.

4. A 1-word gap, assigned according to rule 2, must be allowed after the last device of each type. This gap could be bigger when rule 2 is applied to the following rank.

5. A 1-word gap, assigned according to rule 2, must be allowed for each unused rank on the list if a device with a higher address is used. This gap could be bigger when rule 2 is applied to the following rank.

If extra devices are added to a system, the floating addresses may have to be reassigned in agreement with these rules.

## B.2 FLOATING VECTORS

Each device needs two 16-bit locations for each vector. For example, a device with one receive and one transmit vector needs four words of vector space.

The vector assignment rules are as follows:

1. Each device occupies vector address space equal to 'Size' words. For example, the DLV11-J occupies 16 words of vector space. If its vector were $300_8$, the next available vector would be at $340_8$.

2. There are no gaps, except those needed to align an octal modulus.

**Table B-2 Floating Vector Address Assignments**

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | DC11 | 4 | 10 |
| 1 | TU58 | 4 | 10 |
| 2 | KL11 | 4 | 10 ** |
| 2 | DL11-A | 4 | 10 ** |
| 2 | DL11-B | 4 | 10 ** |
| 2 | DLV11-J | 16 | 10 |
| 2 | DLV11, DLV11-F | 4 | 10 |
| 3 | DP11 | 4 | 10 |
| 4 | DM11-A | 4 | 10 |
| 5 | DN11 | 2 | 4 |
| 6 | DM11-BB/BA | 2 | 4 |
| 7 | DH11 modem control | 2 | 4 |
| 8 | DR11-A, DRV11-B | 4 | 10 |
| 9 | DR11-C, DRV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 10 | PA611 (reader + punch) | 8 | 10 |
| 11 | LPD11 | 4 | 10 |
| 12 | DT07 | 4 | 10 |
| 13 | DX11 | 4 | 10 |
| 14 | DL11-C to DLV11-E | 4 | 10 |
| 15 | DJ11 | 4 | 10 |
| 16 | DH11 | 4 | 10 |
| 17 | VT40 | 8 | 10 |
| 17 | VSV11 | 8 | 10 |
| 18 | LPS11 | 12 | 10 |

**Table B-2 Floating Vector Address Assignments (Cont.)**

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 19 | DQ11 | 4 | 10 |
| 20 | KW11-W, KWV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 21 | DU11, DUV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 22 | DUP11 | 4 | 10 |
| 23 | DV11 + modem control | 6 | 10 |
| 24 | LK11-A | 4 | 10 |
| 25 | DWUN | 4 | 10 |
| 26 | DMC11/DMR11 | 4 | 10 |
| 27 | DZ11/DZS11/DZV11, DZ32 | 4 | 10 |
| 28 | KMC11 | 4 | 10 |
| 29 | LPP11 | 4 | 10 |
| 30 | VMV21 | 4 | 10 |
| 31 | VMV31 | 4 | 10 |
| 32 | VTV01 | 4 | 10 |
| 33 | DWR70 | 4 | 10 |
| 34 | RL11/RLV11 | 2 | 4 * |
| 35 | TS11, TU80 | 2 | 4 * |
| 36 | LPA11-K | 4 | 10 |
| 37 | IP11/IP300 | 2 | 4 * |
| 38 | KW11-C | 4 | 10 |
| 39 | RX11/RX211 RXV11/RXV21 | 2 | 4 * |
| 40 | DR11-W | 2 | 4 |
| 41 | DR11-B | 2 | 4 * |
| 42 | DMP11 | 4 | 10 |
| 43 | DPV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 44 | ML11 | 2 | 4 *** |
| 45 | ISB11 | 4 | 10 |
| 46 | DMV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 47 | DEUNA | 2 | 4 * |
| 48 | KDA50/RQDX3 | 2 | 4 * |
| 49 | DMF32 | 16 | 4 |
| 50 | KMS11 | 6 | 10 |
| 51 | PCL11-B | 4 | 10 |
| 52 | VS100 | 2 | 4 |
| 53 | TU81 | 2 | 4 |
| 54 | KMV11 | 4 | 10 |
| 55 | KCT32 | 4 | 10 |
| 56 | IEX | 4 | 10 |
| 57 | DHV11/DHU11/DHQ11 | 4 | 10 |

**Table B-2 Floating Vector Address Assignments (Cont.)**

| Rank | Device | Size (Decimal) | Modulus (Octal) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 58 | DMZ32/CPI32(async) | 12 | 4 |
| 59 | CPI32(sync) | 12 | 4 |
| 60 | QNA | 12 | 4 |
| 61 | QVSS | 4 | 10 |
| 62 | VS31 | 2 | 4 |
| 63 | LNV11 | 2 | 4 |
| 64 | QPSS | 2 | 4 |
| 65 | QTA | 2 | 4 |
| 66 | DSV11 | 2 | 4 |

* The first device of this type has a fixed vector. Any extra devices have a floating vector.

** If a KL11 or DL11 is used as the console, it has a fixed vector.

*** ML11 is a MASSBUS device which can connect to UNIBUS via a bus adapter.

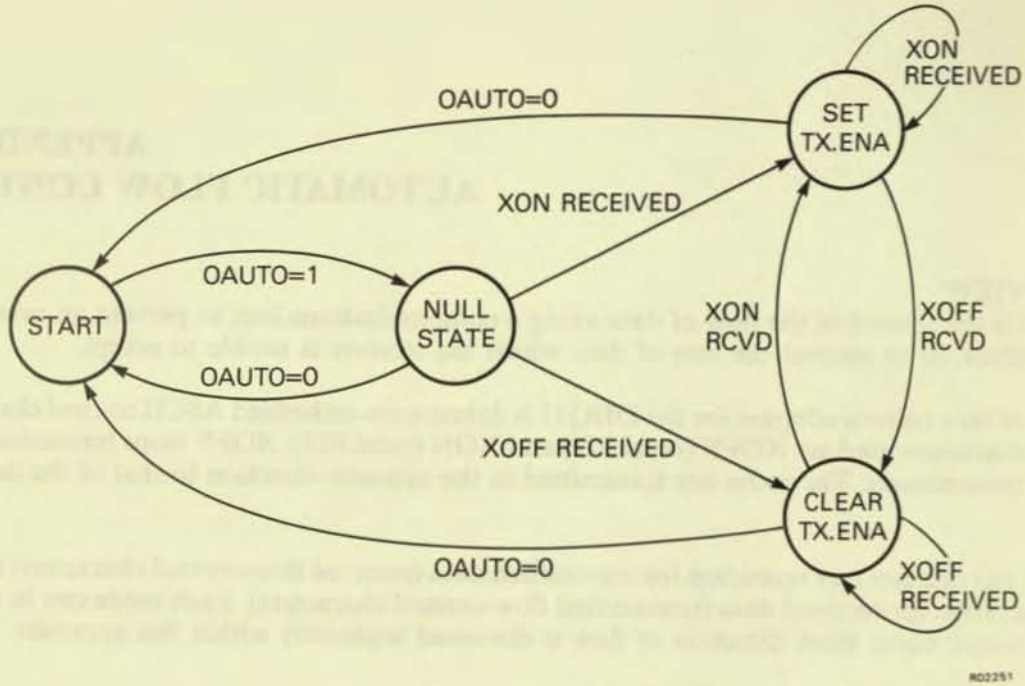



Figure C-1 Transmitted Data Flow Control

Only characters without transmission errors are checked for XON and XOFF codes. The characters have their parity bit stripped before comparison.

**NOTE**

**For the automatic flow control to operate correctly, the terminal must also recognize and respond to flow-control characters.**

The transmitted-data mode of flow control is enabled by setting OAUTO (bit 4 of the line control register), and is disabled by clearing it. The default for this mode is disabled.

Received flow-control characters are processed in the same way as normal characters, and are placed into the receive FIFO. This is not affected by OAUTO, but these characters can be filtered out by setting DISAB.XRPT. If DISAB.XRPT is set, you do not need a routine in your software driver to filter flow-control characters from the data stream.

## C.3 CONTROL OF RECEIVED DATA

Received-data flow control is slightly more complicated than transmitted-data flow control. Therefore the two modes of received-data flow control are described separately.

### C.3.1 Flow Control By The Level Of The Receive FIFO

Occasionally, the program may not be able to empty the receive FIFO as fast as the received data is filling it. Because the program does not know how full the receive FIFO is, it cannot take action to prevent data loss. To overcome this problem, the DHQ11 can be programmed on a 'per channel' basis. When the receive FIFO becomes three-quarters full, an XOFF is sent to the channels from which data is

received. An XOFF character is then sent in response to every second received character, until the receive FIFO level drops below half full. An XON character is then transmitted. The operation of receive FIFO-level flow control is shown in Figure C-2.

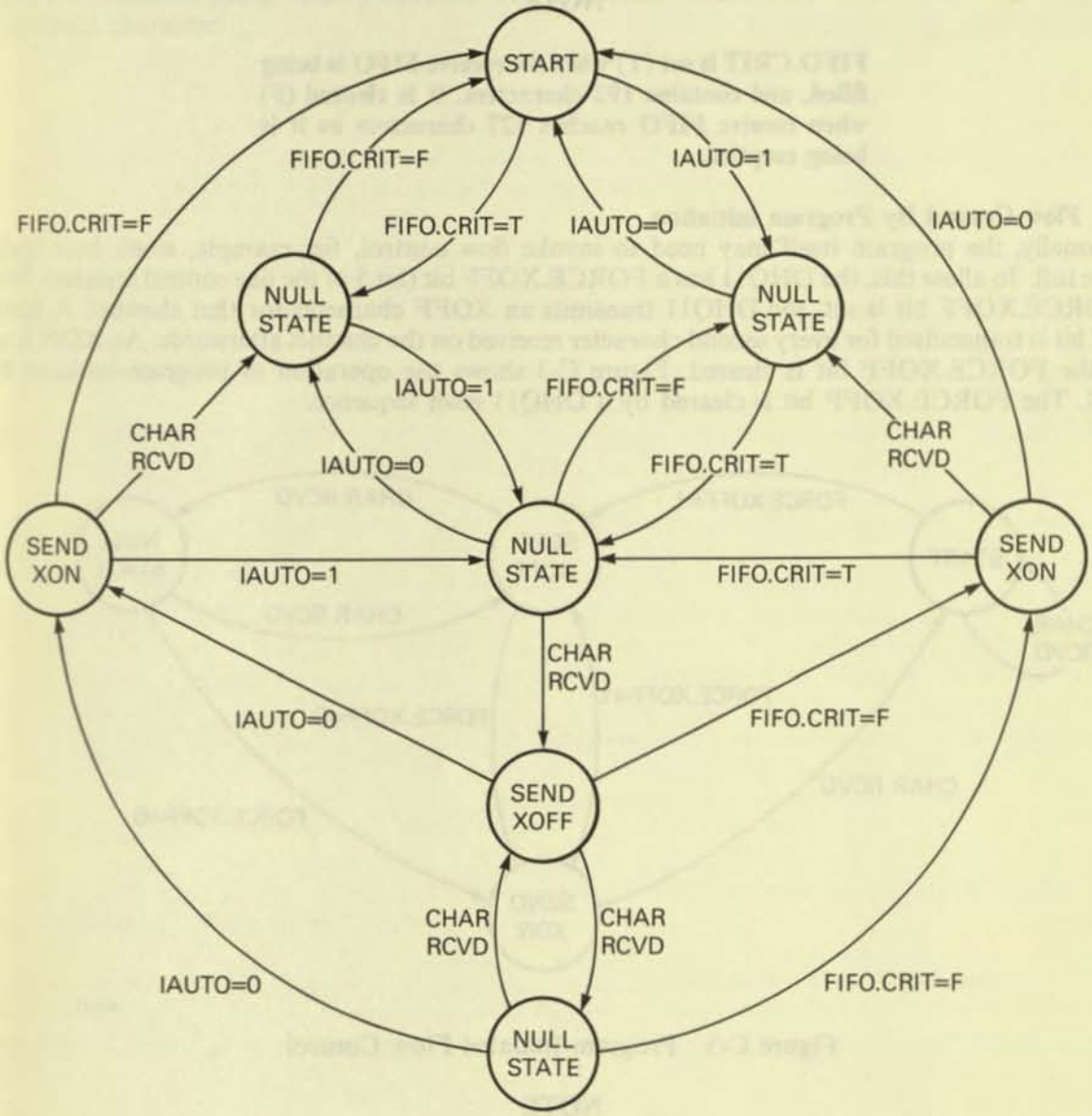



Figure C-2 Receive FIFO-Level Flow Control

The receive FIFO-level flow-control mode is enabled by setting IAUTO (bit 1 of the line control register), and disabled by clearing the bit. The default for this mode is disabled. If IAUTO is cleared after an XOFF is sent, but before the receive FIFO level drops below half full, an XON is still sent.

**NOTE**

**FIFO.CRIT is set (T) when the receive FIFO is being filled, and contains 192 characters. It is cleared (F) when receive FIFO reaches 127 characters as it is being emptied.**

### C.3.2 Flow Control By Program Initiation

Occasionally, the program itself may need to invoke flow control, for example, when host buffers become full. To allow this, the DHQ11 has a FORCE.XOFF bit (bit 5 of the line control register). When the FORCE.XOFF bit is set, the DHQ11 transmits an XOFF character for that channel. A further XOFF bit is transmitted for every second character received on the channel afterwards. An XON is sent when the FORCE.XOFF bit is cleared. Figure C-3 shows the operation of program-initiated flow control. The FORCE.XOFF bit is cleared by a DHQ11 reset sequence.

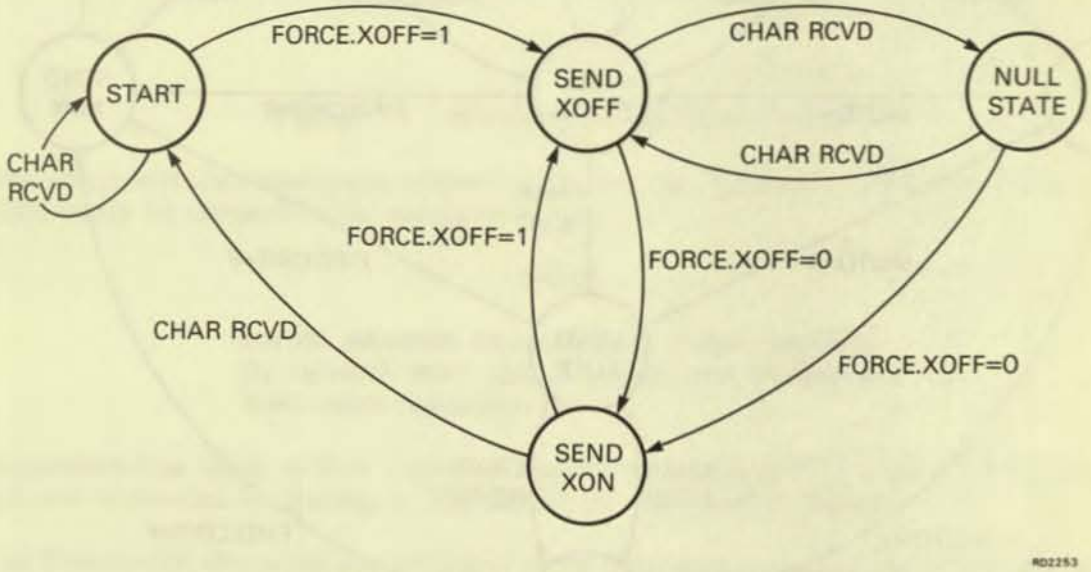



Figure C-3 Program-Initiated Flow Control

**NOTE**

**If the program sets the FORCE.XOFF bit and then immediately clears it, the XOFF code may not be transmitted. This is because there is a delay of up to 350 microseconds before the DHQ11 detects the need to send an XOFF. If the conditions for sending an XOFF clear before within this time delay, no XOFF code will be sent.**

### C.3.3 Mixing The Two Types Of Received-Data Flow Control

To calculate the effect of using the two modes, they should be logically ORed together; an XON will not be sent until both sources are inactive. An XOFF will be sent when FORCE.XOFF is set, even if FIFO-critical mode is active and an XOFF has already been sent on that channel. If the receive FIFO critical mode becomes active whilst FORCE.XOFF is set, then another XOFF is sent in response to the next received character.

# APPENDIX D
# GLOSSARY OF TERMS

## D.1 SCOPE

This appendix contains a glossary of terms used in this manual and in other DIGITAL technical manuals in this series. The terms are in alphabetical order for easy reference.

## D.2 GLOSSARY

**Asynchronous.** A method of serial transmission in which data is preceded by a start bit and followed by a stop bit. The receiver provides the intermediate timing to identify the data bits.

**Auto-answer.** A facility of a **modem** or terminal to answer a call automaticallly.

**Auto-flow.** Automatic flow control. A method by which the DHQ11 controls the flow of data by means of special characters within the data stream.

**Backward channel.** A channel which transmits in the opposite direction to the usual data flow. Normally used for supervisory or control signals.

**Base address.** The Q-bus address of the first (lowest) device register (CSR).

**BMP.** Background Monitor Program.

**CCITT.** Comité Consultatif International de Téléphonie et de Télégraphie. An international standards committee for telephone, telegraph, and data communications networks.

**Dataset.** See **modem**.

**DMA.** Direct Memory Access. A method which allows a bus master to transfer data to or from system memory without using the host CPU.

**Duplex.** A method of transmitting and receiving on the same channel at the same time.

**EIA.** Electrical Industries Association. An American organization with the same function as the CCITT.

**FCC.** Federal Communications Commission. An American organization which regulates and licenses communications equipment.

**FIFO.** First In First Out. The term describes a register or memory from which the oldest data is removed first.

**Floating address.** An address assigned to an option which does not have a fixed address allocated. The address is dependent on other floating address devices connected to the bus.

**Floating vector.** An interrupt vector assigned to an option which does not have a fixed vector allocated. The vector is dependent on other floating vector devices connected to the bus.

**FRU.** Field-Replaceable Unit.

**IC.** Integrated Circuit.

**I/O.** Input/Output.

**LSB.** Least-Significant Bit.

**MMJ.** Modified Modular Jack.

**Modem.** The word is a contraction of MOdulator DEModulator. A modem interfaces a terminal to a transmission line. A modem is sometimes called a **dataset**.

**MSB.** Most Significant Bit.

**Multiplexer.** A device which allows a number of inputs to share one common output.

**Null modem.** A cable which allows two terminals which use **modem** control signals to be connected together directly. It is only possible over short distances.

**OCTART.** A single **IC** containing eight **UARTs**.

**PCB.** Printed Circuit Board.

**Protocol.** A set of rules which define the control and flow of data in a communications system.

**PSTN.** Public Switched Telephone Network.

**Q-bus.** A global term for a specific DIGITAL bus on which the address and data are multiplexed.

**RAM.** Random Access Memory.

**RFI.** Radio Frequency Interference.

**ROM.** Read Only Memory.

**Split-speed.** A facility of a data communications channel which can transmit data at a different speed from the received data.

**UART.** Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter. A device which converts between serial and parallel data, used for transmission and reception of serial **asynchronous** data on a channel.

**XOFF.** A control code ($23_8$) used to disable a transmitter. Special hardware or software is needed for this function.

**XON.** A control code ($21_8$) used to enable a transmitter which has been disabled by an **XOFF** code.

# APPENDIX E
# DHQ11 Q-BUS CONNECTIONS

**Table E-1 DHQ11 Q-Bus Connections**

| Category | Signal | Function | Pin Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Data/Address | BDAL0.L — 1.L | Data/Address Lines | AU2 — AV2 |
| | BDAL2.L — 15.L | | BE2 — BV2 |
| | BDAL16.L — 17.L | | AC1 — AD1 |
| | BDAL18.L — 21.L | | BC1 — BF1 |
| Data Control | BDOUT.L | Data Output Strobe | AE2 |
| | BRPLY.L | Reply Handshake | AF2 |
| | BDIN.L | Data Input Strobe | AH2 |
| | BSYNC.L | Synchronize Strobe | AJ2 |
| | BWTBT.L | Write Byte Control | AK2 |
| | BBS7.L | I/O Page Select | AP2 |
| Interrupt Control | BIRQ.L | Int. Req. Level 4 | AL2 |
| | BIAKI.L | Int. Ack. Input | AM2 |
| | BIAKO.L | Int. Ack. Output | AN2 |
| DMA Control | BDMR.L | DMA Request | AN1 |
| | BDMGI.L | DMA Grant Input | AR2 |
| | BDMGO.L | DMA Grant Output | AS2 |
| | BSACK.L | Bus Grant Acknowledge | BN1 |
| | BREF.L | Refresh and Block Mode | AR1 |
| System Control | BINIT.L | Initialization Strobe | AT2 |
| Power Supplies | +5 V | Dc volts | AA2 — DA2 |
| | +12 V | Dc volts | AD2, BD2 |
| Grounds | GND | Ground Connections | AC2 — DC2 |
| | GND | Ground Connections | AT1 — DT1 |
| | GND | Ground Connections | AJ1 — BJ1 |
| | GND | Ground Connections | AM1 — BM1 |

# INDEX

Digital Equipment Corporation • Bedford, MA 01730